

KARL-RUPRECHTS UNIVERSITÄT HEIDELBERG

DOCTORAL THESIS

---

**Non-linear structure formation in models  
of Dark Energy and Modified Gravity**

---

*Author:*

Santiago CASAS CASTRO

*Supervisor:*

Dr. Valeria PETTORINO

*A thesis submitted in fulfillment of the requirements  
for the degree of Doctor of Natural Sciences*

*in the*

Fakultät für Physik und Astronomie  
Institute for Theoretical Physics

April 2, 2017



## Declaration of Authorship

I, Santiago CASAS CASTRO, declare that this thesis titled, "Non-linear structure formation in models of Dark Energy and Modified Gravity" and the work presented in it are my own. I confirm that:

- This work was done wholly or mainly while in candidature for a research degree at this University.
- Where any part of this thesis has previously been submitted for a degree or any other qualification at this University or any other institution, this has been clearly stated.
- Where I have consulted the published work of others, this is always clearly attributed.
- Where I have quoted from the work of others, the source is always given. With the exception of such quotations, this thesis is entirely my own work.
- Parts of this dissertation have been published in the following articles:
  - Casas, S., Amendola, L., Baldi, M., Pettorino, V. and Vollmer, A. Fitting and forecasting coupled dark energy in the non-linear regime. *JCAP*, 2016, 045 (2016).
  - Casas, S., Pettorino, V. and Wetterich, C. Dynamics of neutrino lumps in growing neutrino quintessence. *Phys. Rev. D* 94, 103518 (2016).
  - Casas, S., Kunz, M., Martinelli, M. and Pettorino, V. Linear and non-linear Modified Gravity forecasts with future surveys. Preprint: arXiv:1703.01271 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc] (2017). Submitted to the Journal: Physics of the Dark Universe, Elsevier.

Signed:

---

Date:

---

*"Thanks to my solid academic training, today I can write hundreds of words on virtually any topic without possessing a shred of information, which is how I got a good job in journalism."*

Dave Barry

KARL-RUPRECHTS UNIVERSITÄT HEIDELBERG

## *Abstract*

Fakultät für Physik und Astronomie  
Institute for Theoretical Physics

Doctor of Natural Sciences

### **Non-linear structure formation in models of Dark Energy and Modified Gravity**

by Santiago CASAS CASTRO

We investigate in this thesis the importance of non-linear structure formation on the determination of cosmological parameters for models beyond the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM scenario. A major motivation therefore is the ability of future galaxy surveys to measure the positions and shapes of approximately  $10^7$  galaxies and precisely determine their two-point correlation function, or its equivalent in wavevector space, the galaxy power spectrum. If one is able to extract the information encoded in the power spectrum at small scales, one can gain a substantial constraining power on the cosmological parameters of the model. This dissertation considers different models beyond  $\Lambda$ CDM: Coupled Dark Energy, Growing Neutrino Quintessence, Effective Field Theory, Horndeski theory, and general phenomenological parameterizations of Modified Gravity. In this work we study non-linear structure formation with a variety of different methodologies: fitting formulae, semi-analytic prescriptions based on the Halo model, resummation methods in cosmological perturbation theory and specialized N-body simulations. In order to constrain the model parameters and to forecast the errors measured by future surveys, we use the Bayesian Fisher matrix formalism, for which the author developed a code to deal with Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing observables. We present the first forecasts on Coupled Dark Energy done with fitting formulae obtained from simulations and new results on linear and non-linear forecasts for Modified Gravity parameterizations. We also find the best combination of Modified Gravity parameters constrained by future surveys. For Growing Neutrino Quintessence we show for the first time different oscillation regimes for neutrino lumps depending on their masses and we find a heating of the neutrino fluid, using special N-body simulations. In the case of Horndeski models, we apply for the first time a resummation method valid in the quasistatic regime. The main message of this work is that non-linear structure formation has a significant impact on cosmology and if in the future we want to discriminate between competing cosmological models, we need to understand and take non-linearities into account.



# Contents

<b>Declaration of Authorship</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>Abstract</b>	<b>v</b>
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 Dark Energy and Modified Gravity</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 The framework of General Relativity . . . . .	3
1.2 The standard cosmological model . . . . .	5
1.2.1 The Friedmann equations . . . . .	5
1.2.2 The $\Lambda$ CDM model . . . . .	6
1.2.3 The cosmological constant problem . . . . .	8
1.2.4 Linearized Einstein Equations . . . . .	9
1.3 Dark Energy and Modified Gravity . . . . .	11
1.4 The Einstein and the Jordan frames . . . . .	13
1.5 Universal coupling to matter . . . . .	14
1.5.1 Quintessence . . . . .	15
1.5.2 Coupled Quintessence . . . . .	16
1.5.3 Effective Field Theory of Dark Energy and Horndeski Theory . . . . .	17
1.5.4 Parameterizing Modified Gravity . . . . .	19
1.6 Non-universal coupling . . . . .	21
1.6.1 Coupled Dark Energy . . . . .	22
1.6.2 Growing Neutrino Quintessence . . . . .	24
<b>2 Statistics in Cosmology</b>	<b>29</b>
2.1 The relation between Gaussianity, linearity and homogeneity . . . . .	29
2.1.1 Gaussian random fields . . . . .	29
2.1.2 The two-point correlation function . . . . .	30
2.1.3 The data covariance matrix . . . . .	30
2.1.4 The power spectrum . . . . .	31
2.1.5 Final remarks on linearity, Gaussianity and homogeneity . . . . .	32
2.2 Likelihood and the Bayesian approach . . . . .	32
2.3 Fisher Matrix formalism . . . . .	34
2.3.1 The Fisher matrix for a galaxy power spectrum . . . . .	35
2.4 Fisher Matrix forecasts . . . . .	36
2.4.1 Fisher matrix for Galaxy Clustering . . . . .	37
2.4.2 The observed galaxy power spectrum . . . . .	37
2.4.3 Weak Gravitational Lensing . . . . .	39
2.4.4 Future large scale galaxy redshift surveys . . . . .	40
2.4.5 Covariance and correlation matrix and the Figure of Merit . . . . .	42
2.4.6 The Kullback-Leibler divergence . . . . .	43
2.4.7 Systematic bias on cosmological parameters . . . . .	44
2.5 The equations and structure of the FISHERTOOLS code . . . . .	45
2.5.1 The structure of FISHERTOOLS . . . . .	45

2.5.2	The interface COSMOMATHICA . . . . .	46
2.5.3	Derivatives of the observed power spectrum . . . . .	46
2.5.4	Equations for the power spectrum . . . . .	49
2.5.5	The Alcock-Paczynski Effect . . . . .	50
2.5.6	Fisher matrix operations . . . . .	51
2.5.7	Extensions of the Fisher matrix approach . . . . .	52
<b>3</b>	<b>Linear and non-linear Modified Gravity forecasts</b>	<b>55</b>
3.1	Introduction . . . . .	55
3.2	The power spectrum in Modified Gravity . . . . .	57
3.2.1	The linear power spectrum . . . . .	57
3.2.2	Non-linear power spectra . . . . .	58
3.2.3	CMB <i>Planck</i> priors . . . . .	60
3.3	Results: Euclid forecasts for redshift binned parameters . . . . .	62
3.3.1	Euclid Galaxy Clustering Survey . . . . .	62
3.3.2	Euclid Weak Lensing Survey . . . . .	64
3.3.3	Combining Euclid Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing, with <i>Planck</i> data . . . . .	65
3.3.4	Decorrelation of covariance matrices and the Zero-phase Component Analysis . . . . .	66
3.4	Weight matrices coefficients . . . . .	73
3.5	Other Decorrelation Methods . . . . .	74
3.5.1	Kullback-Leibler divergence measure . . . . .	76
3.6	Modified gravity with simple smooth functions of the scale factor . . . . .	77
3.6.1	Modified Gravity in the late-time parameterization . . . . .	78
3.6.2	Modified Gravity in the early-time parameterization . . . . .	87
3.6.3	Testing the effect of the Hu-Sawicki non-linear prescription on parameter estimation . . . . .	89
3.7	Conclusions . . . . .	92
<b>4</b>	<b>Forecasts for coupled dark energy in the non-linear regime</b>	<b>95</b>
4.1	Introduction . . . . .	95
4.2	Coupled Dark Energy . . . . .	97
4.3	The CoDECS simulations . . . . .	97
4.4	Extracting the power spectrum at small scales . . . . .	98
4.5	Fitting functions . . . . .	99
4.5.1	The net effect of the DM-DE coupling at non-linear scales . . . . .	99
4.5.2	Generating the fitting functions . . . . .	100
4.5.3	Fitting functions and cosmological parameters . . . . .	101
4.6	Non-linear power spectrum and error estimation . . . . .	101
4.6.1	Adding non-linear corrections to the power spectrum . . . . .	106
4.7	Results . . . . .	107
4.7.1	Galaxy clustering . . . . .	108
4.7.2	Weak lensing . . . . .	109
4.7.3	Combined results . . . . .	111
4.8	Conclusions . . . . .	112
<b>5</b>	<b>Non-linear power spectra: Resummation for Horndeski models</b>	<b>115</b>
5.1	Growth of perturbations for a Dark Matter component . . . . .	116
5.2	The non-linear fluid equations . . . . .	119
5.3	The field notation . . . . .	121

5.4	The linear propagator . . . . .	124
5.4.1	The linear propagator in the general case . . . . .	124
5.4.2	The linear propagator in the Horndeski case . . . . .	126
5.5	The Evolution Equation for the Power Spectrum . . . . .	128
5.6	The 1-loop integrals in the Horndeski $\mu \neq 1$ case . . . . .	129
5.7	Preliminary Results . . . . .	132
5.8	Summary . . . . .	133
5.9	Excursion into other computational techniques: N-body simulations . . . . .	134
<b>6</b>	<b>Growing Neutrino Quintessence</b>	<b>139</b>
6.1	Introduction . . . . .	139
6.2	Numerical treatment of growing neutrino cosmologies . . . . .	139
6.2.1	Modified Boltzmann code . . . . .	139
6.2.2	N-body simulation . . . . .	140
6.3	Lump dynamics and the low mass - high mass divide . . . . .	143
6.4	Cosmological evolution in the light neutrino regime . . . . .	146
6.5	Heating of the neutrino fluid . . . . .	149
6.6	Gravitational Potentials of Neutrino Lumps . . . . .	151
6.7	Conclusions of Dynamics of Neutrino Lumps . . . . .	154
6.8	Initial parameters for generating the models in nuCMB and in the N-Body simulation . . . . .	155
6.9	The effective and observed equation of state of dark energy . . . . .	155
<b>Conclusions</b>		<b>159</b>
<b>A To Do Appendix</b>		<b>169</b>
<b>Bibliography</b>		<b>173</b>



# List of Figures

1.1	Dark Energy - Modified Gravity Flowchart . . . . .	12
3.1	Modified Gravity functions $\eta$ and $\mu$ . . . . .	57
3.2	MGCAMB power spectra, late-time parametrization. . . . .	59
3.3	Effect of the non-linear Hu& Sawicki prescription . . . . .	61
3.4	Correlation matrices for a Euclid Galaxy Clustering forecast. . . . .	63
3.5	Correlation matrices for a WL Euclid forecast. . . . .	65
3.6	Weight matrix for ZCA decorrelation in a Euclid GC case. . . . .	68
3.7	$1\sigma$ forecasted errors on the primary and decorrelated parameters for Euclid GC. . . . .	68
3.8	Best constrained modes for Euclid GC applying ZCA. . . . .	69
3.9	Weight matrix for ZCA decorrelation in a Euclid WL case. . . . .	70
3.10	$1\sigma$ forecasted errors on the primary and decorrelated parameters for Euclid WL. . . . .	70
3.11	Best constrained modes for Euclid GC applying ZCA. . . . .	71
3.12	Correlation and Weight matrix for a Euclid GC+WL forecast. . . . .	72
3.13	$1\sigma$ forecasted errors and best constrained modes for a Euclid GC+WL forecast. . . . .	73
3.14	PCA decorrelation: Weight matrix and uncorrelated errors. . . . .	75
3.15	Cholesky decorrelation: Weight matrix and uncorrelated errors. . . . .	76
3.16	Kullback-Leibler divergence matrices for Euclid forecasts. . . . .	77
3.17	Fisher confidence contours for a Euclid GC and WL forecast. . . . .	83
3.18	Derivatives of the power spectrum in the late-time parameterization. . . . .	84
3.19	Derivatives of the power spectrum in the early-time parameterization. . . . .	84
3.20	Comparison of $1\sigma$ errors on cosmological parameters for GC, WL and Planck for future surveys in the late-time parametrization. . . . .	86
3.21	Fisher confidence contours for future surveys in the late- and early-time parameterizations. . . . .	87
3.22	$1\sigma$ marginalized confidence contours for Euclid GC, WL and Planck in the eraly-time parameterization. . . . .	88
3.23	Comparison of $1\sigma$ errors on cosmological parameters for GC, WL and Planck for future surveys in the late-time parametrization. . . . .	90
3.24	Effect of the HS non-linear prescription on parameter estimation for GC in MG. . . . .	91
3.25	Effect of the HS non-linear prescription on parameter estimation for WL in MG. . . . .	91
4.1	Ratios to $\Lambda$ CDM of the non-linear matter power spectra in the CoDECS simulations . . . . .	99
4.2	Error contour plot for two distinct fitting models in CDE. . . . .	102
4.3	Relative error of the fitting functions Halofit and CosmicEmulator with respect to the CoDECS $\Lambda$ CDM N-body power spectra. . . . .	102

4.4	Sources of errors affecting the power spectrum from a CoDECS simulation. . . . .	103
4.5	Effect of non-linear scales on the $1\sigma$ errors on cosmological parameters. . . . .	109
4.6	Fisher confidence contour regions for $\beta^2$ and $h$ in CDE using GC and WL surveys. . . . .	109
4.7	Effect on the $1\sigma$ errors for the CDE model as a function of sampled scale in a WL forecast. . . . .	111
4.8	Fisher confidence regions for GC and WL in the CDE model. . . . .	113
5.1	Growth rate comparison for CDM . . . . .	118
5.2	MG function $\mu(k)$ . . . . .	121
5.3	Growth factor in Horndeski. . . . .	132
5.4	$f\sigma_8$ in Horndeski. . . . .	133
5.5	$f\sigma_8$ in Horndeski. . . . .	134
6.1	Snapshots of the number density contrast of neutrinos for two GNQ models: M2 and M4. . . . .	144
6.2	Snapshots of the neutrino overdensity field for GNQ models M4 and M6. . . . .	145
6.3	Evolution of $\Omega_{\phi+\nu}$ and $\Omega_\nu$ for Model M2 in GNQ. . . . .	147
6.4	Equation of state of the combined neutrino-cosmon fluid and of the neutrinos in GNQ. . . . .	148
6.5	Neutrino mass $\bar{m}_\nu$ in model M2 and M1 of GNQ. . . . .	149
6.6	Histogram of neutrino momenta from simulations against the Fermi-Dirac distribution. . . . .	151
6.7	Gravitational potential $\Phi$ for models of GNQ. . . . .	152
6.8	Power spectra of the matter gravitational potential $\Phi_m$ and of the neutrino contribution $\Phi_\nu$ for GNQ. . . . .	152
6.9	Line plot of the gravitational potential and snapshot for model M2 in GNQ. . . . .	153
6.10	Different $w(z)$ curves in the case of model M1 computed with the N-body simulation and compared to linear theory in GNQ. . . . .	157

# List of Tables

2.1	Specifications for future WL surveys . . . . .	41
2.2	Specifications for future GC surveys . . . . .	42
3.1	Modified Gravity fiducials in three parametrizations . . . . .	56
3.2	$1\sigma$ marginalized errors for a Euclid GC and WL survey in a redshift binned scenario of MG . . . . .	74
3.3	$1\sigma$ marginalized errors for a Euclid GC and WL forecast in the late-time parameterization . . . . .	79
3.4	$1\sigma$ marginalized errors for a Euclid GC and WL forecast in the late-time parameterization . . . . .	80
3.5	$1\sigma$ marginalized errors for Euclid, DESI-ELG, SKA1 and SKA2 forecasts in the late-time parameterization . . . . .	80
3.6	$1\sigma$ marginalized errors for Euclid, DESI-ELG, SKA1 and SKA2 forecasts in the early-time parameterization . . . . .	81
3.7	$1\sigma$ forecasted errors on the cosmological parameters for a Euclid GC and WL survey, marginalizing over the HS non-linear prescription parameters . . . . .	92
4.1	Parameters of the coupled DE models with constant coupling . . . . .	97
4.2	The set of cosmological parameters used in all CoDECS simulations, consistent with the WMAP7 results . . . . .	98
4.3	Fitting models M2 and M7 with their corresponding number of fitting coefficients and their $R^2$ -value . . . . .	101
4.4	Systematic bias on the $\Lambda$ CDM cosmological parameters . . . . .	105
4.5	Specifications for a Euclid GC survey forecast . . . . .	108
4.6	$1\sigma$ marginalized errors for Euclid GC in the CDE model . . . . .	108
4.7	Redshift bin specifications for a Euclid WL Fisher forecast . . . . .	110
4.8	$1\sigma$ fully marginalized errors for a WL Fisher forecast with Euclid in CDE . . . . .	110
4.9	$1\sigma$ fully marginalized errors for the CDE model, using WL, GC and the combined Fisher matrix WL+GC, for three different power spectra .	112
6.1	Parameters for the GNQ models considered in this work . . . . .	142
6.2	Table of initial values for nuCAMB used in GNQ simulations . . . . .	155
6.3	Table of numerical parameters for each N-body simulation run in GNQ . . . . .	155



# List of Abbreviations

<b>GR</b>	General Relativity
<b>CC</b>	Cosmological Constant
<b>LSS</b>	Large Scale Structure
<b>BAO</b>	Baryon Acoustic Oscillations
<b>RSD</b>	Redshift Space Distortions
<b>SPT</b>	Standard Perturbation Theory
<b>RPT</b>	Renormalized Perturbation Theory
<b>eRPT</b>	eikonal Renormalized Perturbation Theory
<b>EFT</b>	Effective Field Theory
<b>CDM</b>	Cold Dark Matter
<b>GNQ</b>	Growing Neutrino Quintessence
<b>RDE</b>	Radiation Dominated Era
<b>MDE</b>	Matter Dominated Era
<b>EdS</b>	Einstein-de Sitter
<b>MG</b>	Modified Gravity
<b>DE</b>	Dark Energy
<b>WL</b>	Weak Lensing
<b>GC</b>	Galaxy Clustering



# Physical Constants

Speed of Light  $c = 2.997\,924\,58 \times 10^8 \text{ m s}^{-1}$  (exact)



# List of Symbols

$a$	scale factor	
$H_0$	Hubble parameter	(km s <sup>-1</sup> Mpc <sup>-1</sup> )
$z$	redshift	
$\Omega_b$	Fraction of energy density in baryons	
$\Omega_c$	Fraction of energy density in CDM	
$\Omega_m$	Fraction of energy density in non-relativistic matter	
$\Omega_\nu$	Fraction of energy density in neutrinos	
$\Omega_r$	Fraction of energy density in radiation	



*Dedicated to ...*

To do (2)



# Introduction

Cosmology is a relatively new science, with less than 100 years of theoretical and observational development. At the beginning, it was a very inexact discipline in physics, compared to other more established and observationally tested fields of research, like electromagnetism or statistical mechanics. In the first years after Einstein crafted his theory of General Relativity (GR), other important theoretical and experimental physicists like Hubble, Slipher, Lemaître and Friedmann (for just naming a few) gave the first steps into discovering that the Universe is a dynamical entity and that time and space might have had a well-defined beginning.

To do (3)

After that, the advances during the 20th century were exceptional. Many more galaxies, with many different morphologies were discovered, and it was found that they were not just randomly located in space, but that they clustered into large and coherent structures. The Cosmic Microwave Background (CMB) radiation was discovered, which gave us a picture of the early Universe and settled finally the question of the existence of a hot "Big Bang". Later on, galaxy rotation curves and galaxy cluster dynamics hinted strongly at the existence of a cold "Dark Matter" (CDM) component that interacts only gravitationally with common matter. Finally, towards the end of the century, Supernova observations confirmed that the Universe is experiencing an accelerated rate of expansion today, which might be explained by introducing a Cosmological Constant ( $\Lambda$ ) into Einstein's equations. By the turn of the century, the standard concordance model of cosmology, also known as  $\Lambda$ CDM, was already a well established theory.

In the last decade, cosmology has entered the so-called *precision era*, and it is now a field of science that is driven by large amounts of data, which are able to constrain with very high precision the parameters of the cosmological model. In cosmology we are just able to observe electromagnetic radiation and how its wavelength is redshifted with time and space, plus the positions in the sky and the shapes of galaxies. Moreover we are not able to construct controlled laboratory experiments. Despite this limited window, we are able to measure very small effects that just few years ago were thought to be too difficult to be realized in practice, like Weak Lensing (WL), Baryon Acoustic Oscillations (BAO), Redshift Space Distortions (RSD), CMB polarization and many more. Now with the newly discovered detection of gravitational waves a new window of gravitational wave astronomy has been opened and cosmologists are already thinking on how to use it to constrain even more the parameters of the Universe.

In this thesis we will deal with two topics in cosmology that have gained a lot of attention in recent years, the first one is the investigation of the possible extensions to the  $\Lambda$ CDM model or the modifications of standard Einstein's General Relativity. The second is the study of non-linear formation of large scale structures in the Universe. The first one has earned a lot of interest, since there is yet no successful explanation of the Cosmological Constant problem —its measured value does not match the expectations from the particle physics point of view. The second topic is now of great importance, since present and future observations are capable of measuring more deeply into the non-linear regime of small scales. These scales contain a lot of information about the underlying cosmology and might hint at physics

beyond the concordance model. Cosmological many-particle simulations and perturbation theory have confirmed that these scales contain valuable information, but that extracting it is a very difficult task.

In the first half of chapter 1, we promptly review the needed formalism of General Relativity and the standard cosmological  $\Lambda$ CDM scenario. We will explain why the Cosmological Constant is not completely satisfactory and finally we will derive the linearized Einstein equations, which form the basis of cosmological structure formation theory.

In the second half of chapter 1 we introduce the concepts of Dark Energy and Modified Gravity driven by a scalar field. We will divide the models into those in which the scalar field is coupled universally to all particles in the Universe and models in which the scalar field is only coupled to specific particles, like Dark Matter or neutrinos. The models for which we will show results in this work are: Coupled Dark Energy, Growing Neutrino Quintessence, Effective Field Theories and Horndeski models. We will also deal with parameterizations of Modified Gravity which are not connected to any specific model.

In chapter 2 we explain the underlying concepts in statistics that will help us make sense of the observations of galaxy surveys and non-linear structures in the Universe. We detail the Bayesian approach to statistical inference and how we can forecast the results of future experiments using the Fisher Matrix formalism. This chapter includes details on the implementation of a Fisher Matrix forecasting code developed by the author, which was used in the author's publications.

Chapter 3 is a chapter based on a publication by the author with other collaborators, in which we study the effects of including or not, non-linear prescriptions on the constraints obtained for Modified Gravity parameterizations, by using future surveys. We also test the effect of changing the parameterization of the deviations to GR and we explore redshift-binned scenarios and the correlation between redshift-binned parameters.

The next investigation, detailed on chapter 4, is also based on a publication and its purpose is to use results from N-body simulations in a specific model, namely Coupled Dark Energy, to improve previous forecasts on the coupling parameter governing a "fifth-force" interaction between CDM and the scalar field.

In chapter 5 we elaborate on a technique called "eikonal Renormalized Perturbation Theory" which is capable of yielding the non-linear matter power spectrum at mildly non-linear scales, by using resummation methods borrowed from Quantum Field Theory. We apply this method to a very general theory of gravity plus a scalar field, called Horndeski's theory, but we restrict ourselves to some special limiting cases, in order to simplify the calculations. This method is be very promising, because it can improve the actual constraints on these Horndeski theories, which are based on just linear quantities.

Finally, in chapter 6 we present a quite different model of Dark Energy, called Growing Neutrino Quintessence. In this scenario, the masses of neutrinos are varying as a function of time and space, and are driven by the value of the Dark Energy scalar field. This yields very interesting phenomenological predictions, but also complicates the equations, such that a non-linear treatment including backreaction is needed. We perform our own (non-Newtonian) N-body simulations and find some interesting regions in parameter space, in which the evolution of the cosmological background is very similar to the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM scenario, but in which neutrinos form very large structures, so-called "lumps". This project has also been published by the author and two collaborators in a scientific journal.

# Chapter 1

# Dark Energy and Modified Gravity

The theoretical framework to describe gravity and space-time in cosmology is Einstein's General Relativity which is one of the cornerstones of modern physics. Einstein formulated this theory more than 100 years ago, without the purpose of explaining cosmology, but mostly to solve the theoretical challenges posed by his relativistic mechanics under the influence of a gravitational field. Besides maybe the perihelion shift of Mercury there was no experimental need for it. It was more than a decade later, thanks to observations by Hubble and Slipher, that physicists were convinced that there were objects much farther away from our galaxy and that these objects were receding away from us.

One century later, General Relativity has passed numerous very stringent tests; from laboratory experiments ([cite](#)), to low orbit tests ([cite](#)) and solar system tests ([cite](#)), to pulsar timing tests and the recent exciting first detection of gravitational waves ([cite](#)). It is impressive that a theory that was formulated on the grounds of some very basic principles, has proven to be so accurate across several orders of magnitude in scales.

In section [1.1](#) we will review the main principles and the mathematical formulation of General Relativity, its field equations and its linearized Newtonian limit. In section [1.2](#) we will deal with the composition of the Universe, its evolution and the standard cosmological scenario. To explain the accelerated expansion of the Universe, which was observationally verified almost 20 years ago, ([cite; supernova; 1998](#)), Einstein's General Relativity needs to be supplemented with a Cosmological Constant (known as CC or  $\Lambda$ ). Despite the fact that  $\Lambda$  is allowed by the classical theory, as was proven by Lovelock in the 1970's (see section [1.1](#)) and it fits very well present cosmological observations ([\(cite Planck 2015\)](#)), it possesses many unsatisfactory properties from the theoretical point of view. We will review the Cosmological Constant problem in section [1.2.3](#) below.

A popular alternative to the cosmological constant is to introduce an extra dynamical degree of freedom, which is able to explain the present acceleration of the Universe and its apparent dominance at late cosmological times, but which can lead to modifications of gravitational structure formation at small and large scales. This will be the main topic of this chapter and will be covered in sections [1.3](#) to [1.6](#).

## 1.1 The framework of General Relativity

Einstein based its construction of General Relativity on considerations of the *Equivalence Principle* and relativity of inertial frames, but, in more modern terms, we can say that General Relativity is a theory of a dynamical tensor field, the metric  $g_{\mu\nu}$ ,

which defines the lengths of space-time intervals  $ds^2 = g_{\mu\nu}dx^\mu dx^\nu$  and which is covariant under diffeomorphisms. All particles and fields couple to the metric  $g$  in a universal way. This means that the equations of motion and all the physical properties do not depend on the chosen coordinates. This metric lives on a generally curved 4-dimensional manifold, which by definition, can be transformed locally into Euclidean  $\mathbb{R}^n$  space —the mathematical description of Einstein's Equivalence Principle.

### The Einstein-Hilbert action and the field equations

Although Einstein postulated the field equations of General Relativity in a heuristic form, they can be obtained by varying the so-called Einstein-Hilbert action

$$S = \frac{1}{16\pi G} \int dx^4 \sqrt{-g} (R - 2\Lambda + \mathcal{L}_m) \quad (1.1)$$

with respect to the metric  $g_{\mu\nu}$ . Here,  $R = R_\nu^\mu$  is the Ricci scalar and  $R^{\mu\nu}$  is the Riemann tensor (see standard GR textbooks like **wald** for its definition), which are functions of derivatives of the metric. The volume element is defined as  $dx^4 \sqrt{-g}$ , where  $\sqrt{-g}$  is the square root of the determinant of the metric. Furthermore, the cosmological constant is  $\Lambda$ , the gravitational constant is  $G$  and  $\mathcal{L}_m$  is the Lagrangian of matter and radiation species. Then the variation ( $\delta S / \delta g_{\mu\nu} = 0$ ), yields the field equations:

$$G_{\mu\nu} + g_{\mu\nu}\Lambda = 8\pi GT_{\mu\nu} , \quad (1.2)$$

where the Einstein tensor is defined as  $G_{\mu\nu} \equiv R_{\mu\nu} - \frac{1}{2}g_{\mu\nu}R$  and the energy-momentum tensor is defined as:

$$T_{\mu\nu} = -\frac{2}{\sqrt{-g}} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}_m}{\delta g_{\mu\nu}} . \quad (1.3)$$

What eq. (1.2) expresses is that geometry (and therefore the dynamics of the metric) is sourced by the energy and momentum of the fields living on this manifold. As it was famously expressed by **Misner; Wheeler; Gravitation** "Matter tells space-time how to curve and space-time tells geometry how to move".

Another important property of these field equations, is that due to a purely geometric property called the Bianchi identity, which states that the covariant divergence of the Einstein tensor is identically zero,  $\nabla_\mu G^{\mu\nu} = 0$ , we can ensure that the energy-momentum tensor is locally conserved:

$$\nabla_\mu T^{\mu\nu} = 0 , \quad (1.4)$$

therefore one recovers all the properties of classical and fluid mechanics.

### Lovelock's theorem and the uniqueness of General Relativity

One might then ask if these field equations are unique, especially if as in our case, we are interested in testing these equations at the very largest scales of the Universe and we might be interested in modifying General Relativity in order to match current observations. Thanks to a theorem by Vermeil and Cartan (**cite Vermeil; Cartan; 1921**) and further simplified by Lovelock (1970; **Lovelock**) we can state that in 4 dimensions, the only divergence-free, rank-2 tensor  $\mathcal{G}$ , which depends on

at most second derivatives of the metric must be of the form:

$$\mathcal{G} = \alpha R_{\mu\nu} + \left( \Lambda - \frac{\alpha}{2} R \right) g_{\mu\nu} . \quad (1.5)$$

Therefore, to ensure the correct Newtonian limit of the theory (Newtonian Poisson equation), we must set  $\alpha \equiv 1$  and the proportionality constant between the Einstein tensor  $G_{\mu\nu}$  and the energy-momentum tensor  $T_{\mu\nu}$  has to be set to  $8\pi G$ . This theorem has fundamental implications for cosmology, which we will comment in the following sections, when needed.

## 1.2 The standard cosmological model

The cosmological principle states that no observer in the Universe is special and that each observer sees the Universe in the same way independently of spatial rotations, therefore space-time has to be described by a homogeneous and isotropic metric  $g_{\mu\nu}$ . If furthermore, we can define a foliation of space-time, in which there is a preferred timelike direction, orthogonal to the spatial hypersurfaces, we end up with a metric which solves the Einstein's field equations 1.2; the so-called Friedmann-Lemaître-Robertson-Walker (FLRW) metric:

$$ds^2 = g_{\mu\nu} dx^\mu dx^\nu = -dt^2 + a^2(t) d\varsigma^2 , \quad (1.6)$$

where  $a$  is the scale factor,  $t$  the cosmic time coordinate, and  $d\varsigma^2$  is the time-independent spatial metric:

$$d\varsigma^2 = \gamma_{ij} dx^i dx^j = \frac{dr^2}{1 - kr^2} + r^2(d\theta^2 + \sin^2 \theta d\phi^2) , \quad (1.7)$$

where  $r$  is the radial coordinate,  $\theta$  the polar angle and  $\phi$  the azimuthal angle. The curvature  $k$  which can be 0, 1 or -1, corresponds to Universes which are flat, closed or open, respectively. Due to the stringent constraints on  $k$  given by recent observations, we will use for the rest of this work only a flat geometry with  $k = 0$ . Also we will use the convention that "Greek" indices run from 0 to 3, as in eq. (1.6), while "Latin" indices run from 1 to 3 as in equations involving only spatial coordinates, like eq. (1.7).

### 1.2.1 The Friedmann equations

The FLRW metric eq. (1.6) due to its scale factor, which is dependent on time, implies immediately that the Universe can expand in its spatial coordinates. The equations describing the evolution of the scale factor are called the *Friedmann* equations. To derive them, we need to introduce in the right hand side of Einstein's equations eq. (1.2) an energy-momentum tensor of a perfect fluid:

$$T^{\mu\nu} = (\rho + p) u^\mu u^\nu + p g^{\mu\nu} , \quad (1.8)$$

which is justified since at cosmological scales, we expect the background matter in the Universe to be absent of dissipative and viscous forces. The density  $\rho$  and the pressure  $p$  are the sum of the densities and pressure terms of all matter and radiation species in the universe. If we write down now the (00) and (ii) components of the Einstein's field equations eq. (1.2), computing the Riemann and Ricci tensors of a FLRW metric, we end up with two ordinary differential equations for the scale

factor  $a(t)$ :

$$\left(\frac{\dot{a}}{a}\right)^2 = \frac{8\pi G}{3}\rho + \frac{\Lambda}{3} \quad (1.9)$$

$$\frac{\ddot{a}}{a} = -\frac{4\pi G}{3}(\rho + 3p) + \frac{\Lambda}{3} \quad (1.10)$$

These are the so-called Friedmann equations, which determine the evolution of the Hubble function defined as:

$$H(t) \equiv \frac{\dot{a}(t)}{a(t)} . \quad (1.11)$$

The critical density of the Universe is defined as:

$$\rho_{cr} = \frac{3H^2}{8\pi G} , \quad (1.12)$$

which is the critical density that an Universe with zero curvature  $k = 0$  would have according to the observed value of the Hubble function. So, for each species in the Universe, with energy density  $\rho_i$ , we can define the energy density fraction as:

$$\Omega_i(t) = \frac{\rho_i(t)}{\rho_{cr}(t)} , \quad (1.13)$$

so that the first Friedmann equation eq. (1.9) (for a flat Universe) can be written as:

$$\sum_i \Omega_i(t) = 1 . \quad (1.14)$$

Another important quantity for each matter species is its equation of state:

$$w \equiv \frac{p}{\rho} , \quad (1.15)$$

which enters in its cosmological evolution equation.

### 1.2.2 The $\Lambda$ CDM model

As we have seen before, the field of cosmology is relatively new, with less than 100 years of theoretical development and even much less time of observational progress. However, in the last few decades, with the precise measurements of the Cosmic Microwave Background (CMB) radiation, the rapid progress in galaxy surveys and the impressive development of cosmological simulations, an observationally very successful standard model has emerged, the so-called  $\Lambda$ CDM model.

In this model, and according to the latest observations (see Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016a), almost 70% of the energy density of the Universe is composed by vacuum energy, attributed to the Cosmological Constant  $\Lambda$ , 25% by Cold Dark Matter and less than 5% by baryons. The remaining components are photons—which are basically negligible today, despite the amount of light and radiation in the Universe—and massive neutrinos, whose mass and therefore its contribution to the "cosmic pie" has not been measured precisely enough yet.

This special mixture of cosmological ingredients in the Universe, leads to a well defined background evolution of the Hubble function  $H(z)$ . However, as we will see below, the Cosmological Constant is not very satisfactory from the theoretical

point of view. Therefore if we leave open the possibility that the accelerated expansion of the Universe is caused by a "Dark Energy" component, with an unknown equation of state  $w_{DE}(z)$  (where  $w_{DE}(z) = -1$  would correspond to the Cosmological Constant), then together with the "standard" matter species (with  $w = 0$  for CDM and baryons and  $w = 1/3$  for radiation), we can write down the evolution of the Hubble parameter as a function of redshift  $z \equiv 1/a - 1$ :

$$H^2(z) = H_0 \left( \Omega_c (1+z)^3 + \Omega_b (1+z)^3 + \Omega_r (1+z)^4 + \Omega_{DE} \exp \left[ \int_0^z d\tilde{z} \frac{3(1+w_{DE}(\tilde{z}))}{1+\tilde{z}} \right] \right) \quad (1.16)$$

where we have left out neutrinos, since their evolution at high and low redshifts is not so straightforward to write, due to their changing from relativistic to non-relativistic particles in the history of the Universe. If we assume a constant  $w$  and a single matter species, one can analytically solve eqs. (1.9) to (1.10) and find that the scale factor behaves as:

$$a \propto t^{\frac{2}{3(1+w)}} . \quad (1.17)$$

Since each species evolves with a different power of the scale factor, there were three different epochs in the evolution of the Universe, the radiation dominated era (RDE) in which  $a \propto t^{1/2}$ , the matter domination era (MDE) in which  $a \propto t^{2/3}$  (also called the Einstein-de Sitter Universe) and finally the future dark energy dominated era, also called the de Sitter regime, in which the total energy density is constant and therefore  $a \propto \exp(Ht)$ . From the Hubble function, one can obtain measurable cosmological distances to astrophysical objects and the age and the size of the observable Universe.

Since the Universe is expanding and we measure astrophysical objects using mainly electromagnetic radiation (except after 2016 **cite LIGO** where Gravitational Wave Astronomy was born), it is important to define certain distances that can be measured in cosmological observations. Light follows null-geodesics, so that under an FLRW metric as in eq. (1.6), light satisfies the equation:

$$-cdt^2 + a^2(t)d\varsigma^2 = 0 , \quad (1.18)$$

where we have recovered the speed of light  $c$  to avoid confusion. Solving for  $\varsigma$  and therefore integrating this equation, defines the comoving distance  $d_c$ :

$$d_c \equiv \int_0^{\varsigma_1} d\varsigma = - \int_{t_0}^{t^1} \frac{c}{a(t)} dt . \quad (1.19)$$

Since  $H = (da/dt)/a = (d(1/(1+z))/dt)/(1/(1+z))$ , then  $dt = -dz/((1+z)H)$ , so that the comoving distance can be defined as:

$$d_c(z) = \int_0^z \frac{dz}{H(z)} . \quad (1.20)$$

Making similar geometrical considerations (which we will not detail here, see Amendola and Tsujikawa, 2010), one can find the luminosity distance:

$$d_L = (1+z)d_c , \quad (1.21)$$

and the angular diameter distance:

$$d_A = \frac{d_c}{1+z} , \quad (1.22)$$

where we have set the curvature  $k$  a priori to zero.

### 1.2.3 The cosmological constant problem

After more than two decades of intensive experimental and observational searches, physicists are still not clear about what constitutes almost 95% of the energy budget of the Universe. These are the so-called Dark Matter and Dark Energy problems.

#### The fine-tuning problem

While a Cosmological Constant can explain very well observations so far, the Cosmological Constant (CC) problem is a more profound one, since it involves a missing understanding of both Quantum Field Theory and General Relativity, as we will see now in more detail. From eq. (1.9), we see that under dark energy domination, the CC is of the order of the square of the Hubble parameter today:

$$\Lambda \approx H_0^2 = (2.1h \times 10^{-42} \text{GeV})^2 . \quad (1.23)$$

so that as an energy density  $\rho_\Lambda = \Lambda/8\pi G$  we would obtain:

$$\rho_\Lambda \approx 10^{-47} \text{GeV}^4 , \quad (1.24)$$

where we have used  $1/G = m_{Pl}$  and the Planck mass is equal to  $m_{Pl} = 10^{19} \text{GeV}$ . Making a very rough quantum field theory calculation, one can see that if the vacuum energy density comes from the zero point energy of a single field with mass  $m$  and momentum  $k$ , with energy  $E = \sqrt{k^2 + m^2}/2$ , then one can sum all contributions from all momenta up to a cut-off scale  $k_{\max}$ :

$$\langle \rho_{\text{vac}} \rangle = \int_0^{k_{\max}} \frac{4\pi k^2 dk}{(2\pi)^3} \frac{\sqrt{k^2 + m^2}}{2} \approx \frac{k_{\max}^4}{16\pi^2} , \quad (1.25)$$

where we have used the fact that the integral will be dominated by large modes ( $k \gg m$ ). If we take this cut-off scale to be of the order of the Planck mass  $m_{Pl}$ , which is a scale up to which we believe GR might be still valid, then we find

$$\langle \rho_{\text{vac}} \rangle \simeq 10^{74} \text{GeV}^4 , \quad (1.26)$$

which is  $10^{121}$  larger than the value found above in eq. (1.24). This is the famous "fine-tuning" problem: If we want to reconcile the measured value of  $\Lambda$  with the expected vacuum energy provided by quantum fields, there has to be a cancellation which is exact to 120 orders of magnitude.

However, we must stress here again that the result in eq. (1.26) is a very rough calculation that does not consider the symmetries of the problem and does not respect the equation of state of vacuum energy: doing the above rough calculation also for the pressure would yield  $\langle p_{\text{vac}} \rangle / \langle \rho_{\text{vac}} \rangle = 1/3$ , instead of the expected  $w = -1$  (see (cite Jerome; Martin)). Therefore, under a proper regularization scheme, the vacuum energy density is calculated to be  $\langle \rho_{\text{vac}} \rangle \approx 10^{10} \text{GeV}^4$ , which is more or less "just" 50 orders of magnitude larger than  $\rho_\Lambda$  (see (cite Jerome; Martin)).

Though this cancellation could be realized by different mechanisms, the problem is worse than that; the fine-tuning has to be performed at each subsequent order in quantum field perturbation theory (see the comprehensive review by ([cite Jerome; Martin](#))). One has to find a powerful symmetry that "screens" the vacuum energy from gravitating and affecting the Einstein's field equations.

### The coincidence problem

Apart from the unsatisfactory discrepancy between the Cosmological Constant and the expected vacuum energy density, the value of  $\Omega_\Lambda$  today is suspiciously close to the value of  $\Omega_m$ , for no apparent reason, and this has been the case only very recently in cosmological time scales. The redshift at which both energy densities coincide ( $z_{co}$ ) is:

$$z_{co} = \left( \frac{\Omega_\Lambda}{1 - \Omega_\Lambda} \right)^{\frac{1}{3}} - 1 . \quad (1.27)$$

(see ([cite Luca; book](#))). Therefore, for a value today of  $\Omega_\Lambda = 0.7$ , the coincidence redshift is  $z_{co} \approx 0.3$ . This is indeed a very recent time and depends strongly on the ratio of  $\Omega_\Lambda/\Omega_m$ : if this ratio was just 10 times smaller or larger, we as observers would not measure accelerated expansion today.

Several models have been proposed so far to deal with this apparent coincidence, for example Dark Energy models with tracker and scaling solutions (see ([cite Luca; book](#))) in which  $\rho_{DE}$  catches the trend of  $\rho_m$  no matter which initial conditions have been chosen or where one constructs an equation of state for DE that changes just very recently in time. Other models try to link the onset of acceleration by connecting it with the evolution of non-linear structure formation, for example with backreaction effects (([cite Buchert](#))), but these models have not been so successful so far.

In section 1.6.2 we will see how a coupling of the scalar field to the mass of neutrinos could link the onset of acceleration to the neutrinos becoming non-relativistic and therefore it can alleviate the coincidence problem.

Other scientists resort to the anthropic principle (([cite Luca; book; Weinberg](#))) and claim that for us observers to exist in a Universe with galaxies, stars and planets and to have evolved sufficiently to develop advanced civilizations, the Cosmological Constant can only have certain precise range of values ([cite Weinberg](#)). While it is true that these constraints are applicable to our case, this explanation is not widely accepted as a "physical" solution of the problem.

### 1.2.4 Linearized Einstein Equations

Since we observe non-homogeneities in the Universe around us, we need to go beyond the background description of General Relativity given by the Friedmann equation ???. Observations of the CMB tell us that the initial fluctuations are small —of the order of  $10^{-5}$ — and therefore we can split the metric  $g_{\mu\nu}$  in a background part  $\bar{g}_{\mu\nu}$  and a perturbation part  $\delta g_{\mu\nu}$ .

Introducing the conformal time  $d\tau = dt/a$  and using the FLRW metric eq. (1.6) as the background one, the perturbed metric can be written as:

$$\begin{aligned} ds^2 = a^2(\tau) & \left( -(1 + 2\Psi)d\tau^2 + (B_{,i} + S_i)d\tau dx^i \right. \\ & \left. - (-2\Phi\delta_{ij} + 2E_{,ij} + F_{i,j} + F_{j,i} + h_{ij}) \right) \end{aligned} \quad (1.28)$$

where we have decomposed the metric into 4 scalar functions  $\Phi, \Psi, E$  and  $B$ , two To do (5)

vectors  $F_i$  and  $S_i$  and a tensor  $h_{ij}$  perturbation. Moreover the vector perturbations satisfy the constraints  $F_{,i}^i = 0$  and  $S_{,i}^i = 0$  (divergence-free) and the tensor perturbation satisfies the traceless and transverse constraints  $h_i^i = 0$ ,  $h_{j,i}^i = 0$ . Therefore, counting the total number of degrees of freedom, we end up with 10 independent components, which are the same independent components that a (symmetric) metric  $g_{\mu\nu}$  has.

Vector perturbations decay very quickly and therefore are uninteresting in standard cosmology. Tensor perturbations describe gravitational waves, and though there is an increased interest in them due to gravitational wave detection (**cite LIGO**) and B-mode polarization in the CMB (**cite Planck; BICEP**), we will not treat them in this work.

Moreover, it can be shown that under a change of coordinates  $x^\mu \rightarrow x^\mu + \xi^\mu$ , there is still a gauge freedom that can be fixed and therefore only 6 degrees of freedom are really independent. In the following we will choose the *conformal Newtonian gauge*, which is defined by  $E_i = B_i = 0$ .

Therefore, in linear perturbation theory, only the scalar perturbations of the metric are important for studying structure formation in the Universe. In our chosen Newtonian gauge, we end up with:

$$ds^2 = -(1 + 2\Psi)dt^2 + a^2(1 - 2\Phi)dx^2 , \quad (1.29)$$

where the potentials  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  are functions of time and agree with the gauge invariant “Bardeen” potentials, since in this gauge:  $E = B = 0$  (**cite Mukhanov Book**). Let us now decompose the energy-momentum tensor  $T_{\mu\nu}$  also into a background ( $\bar{T}$ ) and a perturbation part ( $\delta T$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} T_0^0 &= -(\bar{\rho} + \delta\rho) \\ T_i^0 &= (\bar{\rho} + \bar{p})v_i \\ T_j^i &= (\bar{p} + \delta p)\delta_j^i + \Sigma_j^i , \end{aligned} \quad (1.30)$$

where  $\Sigma_j^i \equiv T_j^i - \delta_j^i T_k^k / 3$  is the traceless part of the energy momentum tensor and  $\Sigma_i^i = 0$ . Introducing eq. (1.29) and eq. (1.30) into the Einstein equations 1.2, we find to linear order:

$$\nabla^2\Phi - 3\mathcal{H}\left(\dot{\Phi} + \mathcal{H}\Psi\right) = 4\pi G a^2 \delta\rho \quad (1.31)$$

$$\nabla^2\left(\dot{\Phi} + \mathcal{H}\Psi\right) = -4\pi G a^2(\bar{\rho} + \bar{p})\theta \quad (1.32)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \ddot{\Phi} + \mathcal{H}\left(\dot{\Phi} + 2\dot{\Psi}\right) + \left(2\ddot{\mathcal{H}} + \mathcal{H}^2\right)\Psi \\ + \frac{1}{3}\nabla^2(\Psi - \Phi) = 4\pi G a^2 \delta p \end{aligned} \quad (1.33)$$

$$\nabla^2(\Psi - \Phi) = 12\pi G a^2(\bar{\rho} + \bar{p})\sigma \quad (1.34)$$

with the peculiar velocity gradient  $\theta \equiv \partial_i v^i$  and the anisotropic stress perturbation  $\sigma$  defined through  $(\bar{p} + \bar{\rho})\nabla^2\sigma = -(\partial_i\partial^j - \frac{1}{3}\delta_i^j\nabla^2)\Sigma_j^i$ . Additionally to eqs. (1.31) to (1.34), we still have the covariant conservation of the energy-momentum tensor:  $\nabla_\mu T^{\mu\nu}$ , which yields:

$$\dot{\delta} = -(1 + w)(\theta - 3\dot{\Phi}) - 3\mathcal{H}(c_s^2 - w)\delta \quad (1.35)$$

$$\dot{\theta} = -\mathcal{H}(1 - 3w)\theta - \frac{\dot{w}}{1 + w}\theta - \frac{c_s^2}{1 + w}\nabla^2\delta + \nabla^2\sigma - \nabla^2\Psi , \quad (1.36)$$

where we have defined  $c_s^2 \equiv \delta p / \delta \rho$  and we now use the notation  $\delta \equiv \delta \rho / \bar{\rho}$ . In order to close these set of equations, one needs to specify a sound speed and an equation of state and furthermore fix the anisotropic stress perturbation  $\sigma$ . The anisotropic stress perturbation  $\sigma$  is usually only sourced by relativistic particles, like photons and neutrinos in the early Universe. For Cold Dark Matter (CDM), the equations simplify considerably by taking  $\sigma = w = c_s^2 = 0$ , as we will see below in chapter 5.

If we go now to Fourier space, where  $\nabla^2 \rightarrow -k^2$ , and  $\partial_i v^i \rightarrow ik_i v_i = ikv$  (where the last equality is valid if the wavevector and the velocity vector are aligned), then eq. (1.31) and eq. (1.32) can be combined to give the relativistic Poisson equation:

$$-k^2 \Phi = 4\pi G a^2 \bar{\rho} \Delta , \quad (1.37)$$

where we have defined the comoving relativistic perturbation  $\Delta$  as:

$$\Delta = \delta + \frac{3\mathcal{H}}{k} (1+w) iv . \quad (1.38)$$

The Newtonian limit of these equations is obtained for non-relativistic particles, when  $\sigma \ll v^2 \approx 0$  and we focus on the sub-horizon limit, in which the scales  $k$  we are interested in, are much larger than the Hubble horizon,  $k \gg \mathcal{H}$ . In this limit we obtain from eq. (1.34) and eq. (1.37):

$$\Phi = \Psi \quad (1.39)$$

$$\nabla^2 \Phi = 4\pi G a^2 \bar{\rho} \delta \quad (1.40)$$

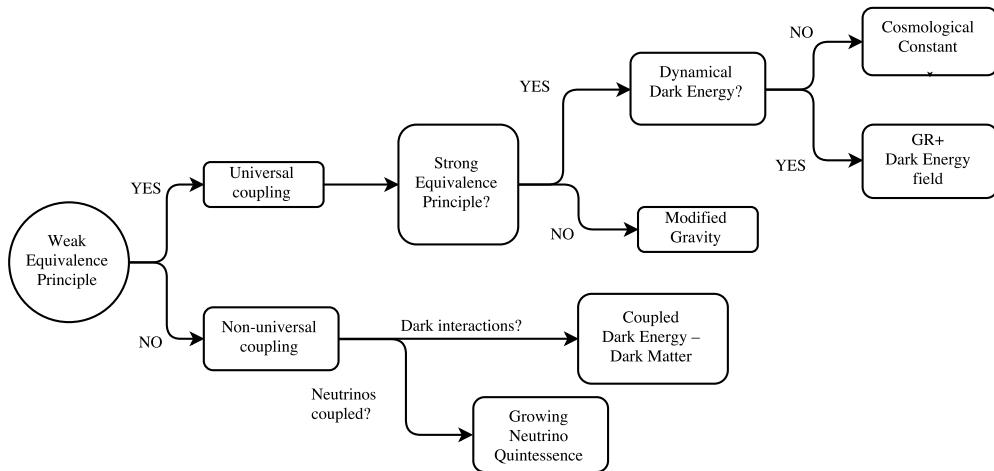
### 1.3 Dark Energy and Modified Gravity

In the introduction to this work we have motivated why in the absence of a satisfactory solution to the Cosmological Constant problem, an extension of General Relativity is preferred in the light of present observations. In this chapter we will deal with one of the most widely investigated solutions to the Dark Energy problem, namely the addition of an extra dynamical degree of freedom in the form of a scalar field.

There are two basic approaches one can take at this point, either couple this field universally to all matter species, which we will call *universally-coupled theories*, or couple the field just to a specific matter component, which we will call *non-universally coupled theories*.

Universally coupled theories include Quintessence, scalar-tensor theories (ST) Luca; Skordis; de Felice; etc. Horndeski theories cite Horndeski; Defayet and Effective Field Theories of Dark Energy cite; EFT; people We will review some of these models in sections 1.5.1 to 1.5.3. Non-universally coupled theories are in general built in such a way that baryons remain uncoupled, due to the stringent local and solar system gravity tests that constrain the scalar field–baryon coupling to be practically negligible (see section 1.6 below). In this work we will deal with two such theories: The Coupled Dark Energy model, which couples Dark Matter to a Dark Energy field, which will be treated in section 1.6.1 and the Growing Neutrino Quintessence model, in which the neutrino mass is coupled to the “cosmon” scalar field, which will be the subject of section 1.6.2.

Furthermore, independent of the type of coupling to matter, one can define two frames in which to study these theories. In the so-called Einstein frame, the action contains the standard Einstein-Hilbert term  $R$ , plus a kinetic and a potential term



**FIGURE 1.1:** Distinction between Dark Energy and Modified Gravity Theories based on the Strong and Weak Equivalence Principles (SEP and WEP), according to **Joyce; Lombrisier**. The violation of the SEP, implies the existence of an extra fifth-force among particles, or, equivalently, a modification of the standard Poisson equation. These are the so-called Modified Gravity theories. If the scalar degree of freedom is not coupled to matter, then we can talk about a Dark Energy model. In the case in which Dark Energy is not dynamical, the theory goes back to GR plus a cosmological constant. If the WEP is violated, then not all matter species feel the same gravitational forces and therefore there can be either dark sector interactions or neutrino–scalar-field interactions.

for the scalar field  $\phi$ . However, particles are coupled to a metric that in principle depends also on the scalar field. On the other hand, in the Jordan frame, the scalar field  $\varphi$  is non-minimally coupled to gravity, which means that in place of the Ricci scalar, there is a general function  $f(R, \varphi)$ . Besides, one can also have a potential and kinetic term for the scalar field. The Einstein-Hilbert term is modified, but particles feel a metric that is purely of geometrical origin. We will specify the equations for these two different frames in section 1.4 below.

The distinction between Modified Gravity and Dark Energy is somewhat diffuse, since as mentioned above, an exotic form of matter in the Einstein's equations can always be considered as a modification of involving geometry. However, we will use a definition introduced recently by **cite Joyce; Lombrisier; Schmidt** which is quite practical in terms of its observable properties.

In this definition, Dark Energy encompasses models which respect both the Weak and the Strong Equivalence Principles and therefore do not involve extra fifth-forces that act between particles besides gravitational interactions (and the other three fundamental forces of nature). Modified Gravity encompasses models where the Strong Equivalence Principle is violated and therefore bodies can have an extra "scalar charge" that leads to the appearance of a fifth force among them. In non-universally coupled theories, the Weak Equivalence Principle is violated, since test bodies would feel different accelerations depending on their composition. Usually, in these models baryons are uncoupled and therefore they might be called "dark sector interaction" theories.

The term "modified gravity" is also more general and it is used for any theory

beyond GR that is able to explain the cosmological history of the Universe. This can include extra dimensions (see DGP), massive bimetric gravities **cite bimetric stuff** or Lorentz-violating theories (**cite some by Blas; et al**). But these are out of the scope of this dissertation. For the rest of this work, when we mention Modified Gravity, we will refer to our definition according to our discussion above and the diagram 1.1.

## 1.4 The Einstein and the Jordan frames

In this section we will review the form of the action for scalar-tensor theories in the Einstein and Jordan frames, which are going to be useful concepts in the following chapters. For the moment we will work in units where the reduced Planck mass  $M_{Pl}^2 = 1/(8\pi G)$  is equal to unity.

A scalar-tensor theory can be formulated in the "Jordan frame" as:

$$\mathcal{S} = \int d^4x \sqrt{-g} \left[ \frac{1}{2}F(\varphi, R) - \frac{1}{2}K(\varphi)g^{\mu\nu}\partial_\mu\varphi\partial_\nu\varphi - U(\varphi) \right] - \int d^4x \mathcal{L}_m(g_{\mu\nu}, \Psi_m) , \quad (1.41)$$

where in the case of universal coupling, all matter species "feel" the same metric  $g$ , which is the one appearing in the gravitational part of the action and doesn't contain any function of  $\varphi$ . In this frame, the Ricci scalar is non-minimally coupled to the field  $\varphi$  through a function  $F(R, \varphi)$  and, in general, can also contain a potential term for  $\varphi$  with an extra function  $K(\varphi)$  multiplying the kinetic term of the scalar field. Matter particles follow the standard geodesics of GR and the energy momentum tensor of the matter species is covariantly conserved. The interaction between matter and the scalar field, occurs purely through the interaction with  $g$ .

We can relate the Jordan to the Einstein frame, by doing a conformal transformation of the metric  $g$ , where this transformation is defined as:

$$\tilde{g}^{(i)} = \Omega^2(\phi, R)g , \quad (1.42)$$

and  $\Omega^2(\phi, R)$  is a function of the scalar field and—in the most general case—of the Ricci scalar, given by

$$\Omega^2(\varphi, R) \equiv \frac{\partial F}{\partial R} . \quad (1.43)$$

Then, the scalar-tensor action in the 'Einstein-frame' takes the following form:

$$\mathcal{S} = \int d^4x \sqrt{-\tilde{g}} \left[ \frac{1}{2}\tilde{R} - \frac{1}{2}\tilde{g}^{\mu\nu}\partial_\mu\phi\partial_\nu\phi - V(\phi) \right] - \int d^4x \mathcal{L}_m(\hat{g}_{\mu\nu}^{(i)}, \Psi_m^{(i)}) , \quad (1.44)$$

where a tilde, stands for the conformally transformed quantities. Generally, each matter species  $\Psi_m^{(i)}$  could be coupled to a different "effective" metric  $\hat{g}_{\mu\nu}^{(i)}$ . In the case of universal coupling (see section 1.5 below), all metrics would be identical  $\hat{g}^{(i)} = g^{(i)}$ . If there is non-universal coupling (see section 1.6 below) the coupled matter species with index  $j$ , would interact with a "Jordan-frame" metric:  $\hat{g}^{(j)} = g$ , while the uncoupled matter species with index  $k$ , would still feel the conformally transformed "Einstein-frame" metric:  $\hat{g}^{(k)} = \tilde{g}$ . The Einstein frame is defined as the frame in which the gravitational part of the action looks standard, since the Ricci scalar appears without multiplicative factors. In this formulation, the energy-momentum  $T_{\mu\nu}^{(m)}$  of the coupled matter species is not conserved, but rather the sum

of the energy momentum tensor of matter and the scalar field  $T_{\mu\nu}^{(m+\phi)}$  is the conserved quantity. For non-universal coupling, we will see two examples of theories formulated in the Einstein frame in section 1.6.1 and section 1.6.2.

For conformally-invariant theories (those theories in which null-geodesics are not modified by conformal transformations), the conformal factor just depends on the scalar field and can be written as  $\Omega^2(\varphi) = \exp(2\varphi)$ . This can be seen by performing the transformation  $g \rightarrow e^{2\varphi} g$  and observing that, at first order in the scalar field and the gravitational potentials,  $\Phi \rightarrow \Phi - \varphi$  and  $\Psi \rightarrow \Psi + \varphi$ , leaving the Weyl (lensing) potential  $\Phi_{\text{Weyl}} = (1/2)(\Psi + \Phi)$  invariant. Therefore, in these theories, the function  $F$  takes the form:  $F(\varphi, R) = f(\varphi)R - 2U(\varphi)$ , where  $f$  and  $U$  are free functions of the field. For these theories to maintain a *canonical* kinetic term  $(1/2\nabla^2\phi)$  in the Einstein frame, a field redefinition has to be done:

$$\phi = \int d\varphi \sqrt{(3/2)(f_{,\varphi}/f)^2 + K/f} \quad (1.45)$$

and the potentials  $U$  and  $V$  are related by  $V = U/f^2$ . Furthermore, particles will in general feel an extra "fifth-force", with a coupling strength  $Q$  defined by:

$$Q(\phi) \equiv -\frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial \ln f}{\partial \phi}. \quad (1.46)$$

In section 1.6.1 we will see an example of a constant coupling and in section 1.6.2 we will see an example of a field-dependent coupling, for two very distinct non-universally coupled theories.

We have to emphasize that physical measurable quantities have to be frame-independent by definition, since this frame transformation amounts to nothing more than a coordinate and field redefinition and one of the principles of the GR formalism which we are not abandoning is diffeomorphism invariance, which ensures that the theory is invariant under general coordinate transformations.

## 1.5 Universal coupling to matter

Scalar-tensor theories with universal coupling written in the Jordan frame eq. (1.41), encompass many of the most widely studied dark energy and modified gravity models in the literature. For example,  $f(R)$  theories [cite; many; f\(R\); theories](#) are recovered when  $F(R, \varphi) = f(R)$  and  $K = 0$ ; Brans-Dicke theory [cite Brans Dicke; and; many; others](#) is recovered when  $F(R, \varphi) = \varphi R$  and  $K(\varphi) = \omega_{BD}/\varphi$ , where  $\omega_{BD}$  is the Brans-Dicke parameter and finally "k-essence" [cite; Luca; and; some; kessence](#) is the case in which  $F(R, \varphi) = R$  and  $K$  can be a general function of  $\varphi$  and its kinetic term  $(\nabla\varphi)^2$ .

There are also other theories of modified gravity with a scalar field, that are not encompassed in the set of "scalar-tensor" theories and that have gained a lot of attention recently. Namely, Galileons [cite Horndeski](#) [cite](#) and Beyond-Horndeski theories [cite](#) These theories are universally coupled to matter, are formulated in the Jordan frame and cannot be expressed in the Einstein frame by a conformal transformation, since they contain much more complicated derivative interactions, for example free functions of  $\square\varphi$  (see [cite Zuma; Defayyet; Sawicki; Bellini](#)).

Horndeski's theory is an interesting case, since it is the most general theory of a scalar field coupled to a metric, with second order equations of motion and free of ghost instabilities. This theory was first formulated by Horndeski in the 1970's

**Horndeski** in a purely mathematical way and was re-discovered by **Defayett** and others only in 2011 in the context of Galileon scalar fields. The simplest Galileon model, the so-called cubic Galileon, has a Lagrangian of the form:  $\mathcal{L} \propto R/2 - (\partial\varphi)^2 - (1/\Lambda_3)\square\varphi(\partial\varphi)^2$ , where  $\Lambda_3$  is a free scale that can be set in the theory. The term Galileons, comes from the fact that these theories are the more general theories, which are invariant under a general Galilean transformation of the field  $\varphi \rightarrow \varphi + b_\mu x^\mu + c$ . Beyond-Horndeski theories are extensions of Horndeski that have higher than second order equations of motion, when expressed in the Newtonian gauge, but where the propagating scalar degree of freedom still obeys second order differential equations, avoiding instabilities, see cite Langlois; Gleyzes; Zuma for more details on this.

For the purposes of this work, we will now detail one of the oldest models of Dark Energy, namely the Quintessence model **Ratra-Peebles**; **Christof** and its extension Coupled Quintessence introduced by Amendola, 2000.

Later on we will deal with general modifications of gravity, whose effect on structure formation can be parameterized by two functions of scale and time. Finally we will shortly explain one of the most general approaches to construct theories of modified gravity; the so-called Effective Field Theory of Dark Energy (EFTofDE).

### 1.5.1 Quintessence

The Quintessence model was introduced by several authors almost 30 years ago (cite Wetterich\_1988; Ratra; references in Lucas; book), motivated by studying the breaking of scale invariance, which could give rise to a dynamical cosmological constant. Its Lagrangian is of the form eq. (1.41), with  $F(\varphi, R) = R$ ,  $K = 1$  and a potential  $U(\varphi)$ . Since this is a homogeneous field without couplings, we can find its energy density and its pressure straightforwardly from the energy-momentum tensor of a perfect fluid in a FLRW background:

$$\rho_\varphi = -T_0^{0(\varphi)} = \frac{1}{2}\dot{\varphi}^2 + U(\varphi) \quad p_\varphi = \frac{1}{3}T_i^{i(\varphi)} = \frac{1}{2}\dot{\varphi}^2 - U(\varphi) \quad , \quad (1.47)$$

which yields the equation of state (cf. ??) as

$$w_\varphi = \frac{p_\varphi}{\rho_\varphi} = \frac{\dot{\varphi}^2 - U(\varphi)}{\dot{\varphi}^2 + U(\varphi)} \quad . \quad (1.48)$$

We can see that for obtaining the required behavior of  $w \approx -1$  at late times, to fit the observations of the expansion of the Universe, we need that the kinetic term  $\dot{\varphi}^2$  is much smaller than the potential term  $U$ . From the continuity equation for a perfect fluid or from the variation of the action with respect to  $\varphi$ , we can find the Klein-Gordon equation for this field:

$$\ddot{\varphi} + 3H\dot{\varphi} + U_{,\varphi} = 0 \quad . \quad (1.49)$$

The dynamics and the phenomenology of this model are entirely determined by the shape of the potential and for this there are many possibilities (see Amendola and Tsujikawa, 2010, chap. 7, for a comprehensive review). The most interesting solutions, which can alleviate the cosmological coincidence problem, are those in which the field tracks the evolution of matter at early times ( $w_\varphi \approx 1$ ) and then evolves towards an attractor (effectively being independent of initial conditions) at late times, which yields cosmic acceleration with  $w_\varphi \approx -1 + \xi$ . The parameter

$\xi$  is a combination of parameters entering the potential function  $U(\varphi)$  and allows to distinguish Quintessence from a simple cosmological constant at present time. The most studied potentials are the exponential potential  $U(\varphi) = U_0 \exp(-\lambda\varphi)$  (see [cite copeland; wetterich](#)), where  $\lambda$  is a free parameter and the inverse power-law potential  $U(\varphi) = M^{4+n}\varphi^{-n}$ , where  $M$  is a mass scale of the theory.

Due to the so low energy density of dark energy ( $\rho_{DE} \approx 10^{-120} M_{Pl}$ ) compared to typical energies appearing in particle physics, it is not so easy to construct a viable model of Quintessence which is motivated by a fundamental theory. Nevertheless, there are some successful approaches like fermion condensates, Pseudo-Nambu-Goldstone models and dilatonic quintessence (see Amendola and Tsujikawa, [2010](#) and references therein). These models have to satisfy that at present times dark energy is the dominating energy density in the Universe and therefore from the Friedmann equation and eq. (1.47):

$$U(\varphi_0) \approx H_0^2 M_{Pl}^2 . \quad (1.50)$$

If we take an inverse power law potential,  $U(\varphi) = M^{4+n}\varphi^{-n}$ , and take the field to be at present  $\varphi_0 = M_{Pl}$ , this would yield a mass scale  $M$  of the order of:

$$M \approx H_0^{2/(4+n)} M_{Pl}^{(2+n)/(4+n)} , \quad (1.51)$$

where, with  $H_0 \approx 10^{-42} \text{GeV}$ , we get a mass scale of  $M \approx 10^{-1} \text{GeV}$  for  $n = 2$ , which is a scale compatible with Standard Model particles. Moreover, to satisfy the requirement of acceleration today, the slow-roll condition (analogous to the one in inflation ([cite cite infl](#))) must satisfy  $\frac{M_{Pl} V_{,\varphi\varphi}}{V(\varphi_0)} \lesssim 1$ . Defining the mass of the scalar field  $m_\varphi$  as the second derivative of the potential with respect to the field,  $m_\varphi^2 \equiv V_{,\varphi\varphi}$ , yields a condition for the scalar field mass:

$$m_\varphi \lesssim H_0 \approx 10^{-33} \text{eV} . \quad (1.52)$$

So in order to be compatible with observations, the scalar field mass must be extremely small. This could cause problems for these models, since this small mass is maybe not stable under radiative corrections ([cite Kolda; Lyth; Wetterich](#)).

### 1.5.2 Coupled Quintessence

It is also interesting to observe the effects of a coupling between the scalar field and the matter species. In eq. (1.46) we already saw how from a general Scalar-Tensor theory, a coupling between matter species and the field can arise from an action like the one in eq. (1.41). However, the matter equations of motion and the Klein-Gordon equation become more tractable if we make a conformal transformation into the Einstein frame, where the scalar field Lagrangian will be canonical, but matter will be coupled to a metric that contains a function of the field  $\phi$ . In this case, as stated before, the individual energy-momentum tensors will not be conserved:

$$\nabla_\mu T_{\nu(\phi)}^\mu = -Q T_m \nabla_\nu \phi \quad \nabla_\mu T_{\nu(m)}^\mu = +Q T_m \nabla_\nu \phi , \quad (1.53)$$

where  $Q$  is the coupling function and  $T_m$  the trace of the energy-momentum tensor of matter. Through the conformal transformation the field should also be coupled to radiation, since radiation also feels gravity, but since the trace of the energy-momentum tensor of radiation vanishes identically, it does not appear in the conservation equations. In general, the coupling  $Q$  can be different for baryons and

for dark matter. The coupling to baryons is severely constrained by local gravity experiments (see Olive et al., 2014) and therefore uncoupling the baryons from the theory can yield a model compatible with observations as we will see below for the Coupled Dark Energy model in section 1.6.1.

If all matter fields are coupled, then some screening mechanism has to be invoked in order to pass the stringent Solar System and local gravity constraints. One possibility is the chameleon mechanism cite refs; in; Lucas book , which is a coupled quintessence field whose effective potential (and therefore its effective mass) changes according to the environment it is in. These kind of theories can arise from an action like in eq. (1.41), with  $F(\varphi, R) = \exp(-2Q\varphi)R$  and  $K(\varphi) = (1 - 6Q^2)\exp(-2Q\varphi)R$ . For each distribution of matter, taken to be spherically symmetric for simplicity, one has to calculate the profile of the field  $\varphi(r)$  as a function of the radius  $r$ , and one can tune the parameters in such a way that the effective coupling  $Q_{\text{eff}}$  in a certain region is much smaller than the bare coupling  $Q$  appearing in the action. In this way one can recover for star systems and galaxies the Newtonian predictions. For more details on these calculations, see Amendola and Tsujikawa, 2010, chapter 8.4.

### 1.5.3 Effective Field Theory of Dark Energy and Horndeski Theory

Until now we have treated Dark Energy and Modified Gravity in a rather phenomenological way, adding a scalar field with a kinetic term, a coupling and a potential without a clear understanding of which terms are allowed or not. Recently, there have been substantial efforts by many authors to build an effective field theory of dark energy and modified gravity that encompasses all possible terms that are allowed in the action at second order (see gleyzes; bloomfield; Gubitosi, Piazza, and Vernizzi, 2013). Considering only one extra dynamical scalar field and under the symmetries of homogeneity and isotropy and respecting the Weak Equivalence Principle, this theory can be uniquely formulated. Its action in the Jordan frame (and written in conformal time  $\tau$ ) takes the form:

$$\begin{aligned} S = & \int d^4x \sqrt{-g} \left[ \frac{M_{Pl}^2}{2} [1 + \Omega(\tau)] R + \Lambda(\tau) - a^2 c(\tau) \delta g^{00} \right. \\ & + \frac{M_2^4(\tau)}{2} (a^2 \delta g^{00})^2 - \bar{M}_1^3(\tau) 2a^2 \delta K_\mu^\mu \delta g^{00} \\ & - \frac{\bar{M}_2^2(\tau)}{2} (\delta K_\mu^\mu)^2 - \frac{\bar{M}_3^2(\tau)}{2} \delta K_\nu^\mu \delta K_\mu^\nu \\ & + a^2 \frac{\hat{M}^2(\tau)}{2} \delta g^{00} \delta R^{(3)} \\ & + m_2^2(\tau) (g^{\mu\nu} + n^\mu n^\nu) \partial_\mu (a^2 g^{00}) \partial_\nu (a^2 g^{00}) \\ & \left. + \mathcal{L}_m(g_{\mu\nu}, \Psi_m) \right] . \end{aligned} \quad (1.54)$$

To construct this action, the spacetime has been foliated (similarly to the 3+1 ADM decomposition) into a time direction and spatial hypersurfaces that coincide with the uniform scalar field hypersurfaces (this is the so-called unitary gauge). The preferred time direction is then (c.f. gubitosi)

$$n_\mu \equiv -\frac{\partial_\mu \phi}{\sqrt{-(\partial\phi)^2}} , \quad (1.55)$$

which induces a spatial metric  $h_{\mu\nu} \equiv g^{\mu\nu} + n^\mu n^\nu$ , a spatial Ricci scalar  $R^{(3)}$  and defines an extrinsic curvature:

$$K_{\mu\nu} \equiv h_\mu^\sigma \nabla_\sigma n_\nu . \quad (1.56)$$

The rest of the terms in the EFT action eq. (1.54) are nine free functions of time:  $\{\Omega(\tau), \Lambda(\tau), c(\tau), M_2^4(\tau), \bar{M}_1^3(\tau), \bar{M}_2^2(\tau), \bar{M}_3^2(\tau), \hat{M}^2(\tau), m_2^2(\tau)\}$ , whose choice specify the theory. This theory encompasses all theories of an extra dynamical scalar field, which respect the WEP. At the linear level in perturbations, it includes the Horndeski theory (mentioned above in section 1.5) and also theories which go beyond second order equations of motion (in the Newtonian gauge), also called Beyond-Horndeski theories (see **Piazza; Bellini; Gleyzes et al., 2016**)

Since these theory involves many free functions, we need to choose a parametrization for each of them and we need to take some simplifying assumptions in order to be able to constrain this theory with data. Recently, a code capable of calculating the linear Einstein-Boltzmann system of equations for the EFT formalism has been made public, the so-called EFTCAMB (**Hu; Raveri; Silvestri**), which is based on the widely used CAMB code by Lewis, Challinor, and Lasenby, 2000. We will use this code to calculate the observables which we will implement into our Fisher forecast in ??.

Furthermore, we will use the assumptions taken in Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b in order to simplify the theoretical modeling. If we assume a  $\Lambda$ CDM background, and choose freely a function  $\Omega(\tau)$ , the functions  $\Lambda(\tau)$  and  $c(\tau)$  are then fixed **cite Hu 2014** Furthermore, we will impose  $m_2^2(\tau) = 0$  and  $\bar{M}_2^2(\tau) = -\bar{M}_3^2(\tau)$ , which eliminates models which contain third-order spatial derivatives. Now we just have 5 free functions of time and a function specifying the background cosmology  $H(\tau)$ . These free functions of time can be mapped to the Bellini-Sawicki  $\alpha_i(\tau)$  functions (see **bellini-sawicki**), which fully specify the evolution of Horndeski models, by the following relations:

$$\begin{aligned} M_*^2(\tau) &= M_{Pl}\Omega(\tau) + \bar{M}_2^2(\tau) \\ M_*^2(\tau)H(\tau)\alpha_M(\tau) &= M_{Pl}\dot{\Omega}(\tau) + \dot{\bar{M}}_2^2(\tau) \\ M_*^2(\tau)H^2(\tau)\alpha_K(\tau) &= 2c(\tau) + M_2^4(\tau) \\ M_*^2(\tau)H(\tau)\alpha_B(\tau) &= M_{Pl}\dot{\Omega}(\tau) - \bar{M}_1^3(\tau) \\ M_*^2(\tau)\alpha_T(\tau) &= -\bar{M}_2^2(\tau) \\ M_*^2(\tau)\alpha_H(\tau) &= 2\hat{M}^2(\tau) - \bar{M}_2^2(\tau) \end{aligned} \quad (1.57)$$

Here, the bare reduced Planck mass is  $M_{Pl}$  and the effective Planck mass is  $M_*^2$ . These  $\alpha_i$  functions are much easier to interpret physically than the EFT functions.

The first four  $\alpha_i$  functions,  $\alpha_M$ ,  $\alpha_K$ ,  $\alpha_B$  and  $\alpha_T$  describe fully the physics of linear perturbations in Horndeski's theory (see **bellini; sawicki**). For instance,  $\alpha_M$  (*mass run rate*) is the rate of change of the effective Planck mass, produces anisotropic stress;  $\alpha_K$  (*kineticity*) is present in Quintessence (section 1.5.1) models, but also in models where the scalar field has a non-zero sound speed, like k-essence models;  $\alpha_B$  (*braiding*) causes dark energy to cluster and  $\alpha_T$  is the *tensor speed excess*, which gives the deviation of the speed of gravitational waves from that of light. Finally  $\alpha_H$  is a term indicating physics that lies beyond the Horndeski models at linear level. For our results in ??, we will further reduce this theory to a simpler case, which can be compared easier with Large-Scale-Structure observations.

### 1.5.4 Parameterizing Modified Gravity

In the previous sections we have seen how to construct Dark Energy and Modified Gravity theories which have an extra scalar degree of freedom, besides the Einstein-Hilbert term and the matter and radiation species. As we have seen, one can successfully construct the most general theory of this kind, by either imposing some conditions on the equations of motion and the stability of the theory (as in Horndeski [horndeski](#)) or by considering all possible terms allowed by symmetries in the second order action (see [creminelli](#); [gubitosi](#); [gleyzes](#)).

However, for observations, these general theories are not so practical, since there is not enough data to constrain all the free functions in the Lagrangian. What we really can observe with Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing are the perturbations of matter  $\delta_m(z, k)$ , its correlation function across scales  $P_m(z, k)$  and the evolution of matter structures in time,  $f(z)$ . In Einstein-GR, these three quantities are determined by the gravitational potentials  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$ , which follow the general relativistic Poisson equations (see eq. (1.37)). In linear perturbation theory, scalar, vector and tensor perturbations do not mix, which allows us to consider only the scalar perturbations of the metric. We work in the conformal Newtonian gauge, with the line element given by eq. (1.29)

$$ds^2 = -(1 + 2\Psi)dt^2 + a^2(1 - 2\Phi)dx^2 . \quad (1.58)$$

The potentials  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  are in functions of time and in our notation, they coincide with the gauge-invariant Bardeen potentials.

In theories with an extra scalar degree of freedom (see the discussion around fig. 1.1 for a distinction between Dark Energy and Modified Gravity) the standard linear perturbation equations are no longer valid, so that for a given matter source the values of  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  will differ from their Einstein-GR values (see Amendola et al., 2013; Kunz, 2012). We can parameterize this change generally with the help of two new functions  $\mu(a, k)$  and  $\eta(a, k)$  that encode the modifications. Many different choices are possible and have been adopted in the literature, see e.g. Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b for a limited overview. In this paper we introduce the two functions through a gravitational slip (leading to  $\Phi \neq \Psi$  also at linear order and for pure cold dark matter) and as a modification of the Poisson equation for  $\Psi$ ,

$$-k^2\Psi(a, k) \equiv 4\pi G a^2 \mu(a, k) \rho(a) \delta(a, k) ; \quad (1.59)$$

$$\eta(a, k) \equiv \Phi(a, k)/\Psi(a, k) . \quad (1.60)$$

These expressions define the modified gravity functions  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ . Here  $\rho(a)$  is the average dark matter density and  $\delta(a, k)$  the comoving matter density contrast – we will neglect relativistic particles and radiation as we are only interested in modeling the perturbation behaviour at late times. In this formulation,  $\eta$ , which is effectively an observable Amendola et al., 2013, is closely related to modifications of GR Saltas et al., 2014; Sawicki et al., 2016, while  $\mu$  encodes for example deviations in gravitational clustering, as non-relativistic particles are accelerated by the gradient of  $\Psi$ .

When considering Weak Lensing observations then it is also natural to parameterize deviations in the lensing or Weyl potential  $\Phi + \Psi$ , since it is this combination that affects null-geodesics. To this end we introduce a function  $\Sigma(a, k)$  so that

$$-k^2(\Phi(a, k) + \Psi(a, k)) \equiv 8\pi G a^2 \Sigma(a, k) \rho(a) \delta(a, k) . \quad (1.61)$$

Since metric perturbations are fully specified by two functions of time and scale,  $\Sigma$  is not independent from  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ , and can be obtained from the latter as follows:

$$\Sigma(a, k) = (\mu(a, k)/2)(1 + \eta(a, k)) . \quad (1.62)$$

Throughout this work, we will denote the standard Lambda-Cold-Dark-Matter ( $\Lambda$ CDM) model, defined through the Einstein-Hilbert action with a cosmological constant, simply as Einstein-GR, where  $\mu = \eta = \Sigma = 1$ . If only  $\mu$  deviates from unity at late times, it indicates either Modified Gravity or just a Dark Energy field that clusters. If  $\eta$  deviates from unity, it is an indication for Modified Gravity models, according to our definitions above (see [Joyce; Lombriser](#)).

Using effective quantities like  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  has the advantage that they are able to model *any* deviations of the perturbation behaviour from  $\Lambda$ CDM expectations, they are relatively close to observations, and they can also be related to other commonly used parameterizations [Pogosian et al., 2010](#). On the other hand, they are not easy to map to an action —as opposed to approaches like Effective Field Theory (EFT, section [1.5.3](#))— and in addition they contain so much freedom that we normally restrict their parameterization to a subset of possible functions.

#### 1.5.4.1 Parameterizing gravitational potentials with simple smooth functions of the scale factor

The first possibility is to assume simple specific time parameterizations for the  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  functions, adopting the ones used in the *Planck* analysis [Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b](#), where we neglect here any scale dependence:

- a parameterization in which the time evolution is related to the dark energy density fraction, to which we refer as ‘late-time’ parameterization:

$$\mu(a, k) \equiv 1 + E_{11}\Omega_{\text{DE}}(a) , \quad (1.63)$$

$$\eta(a, k) \equiv 1 + E_{22}\Omega_{\text{DE}}(a) ; \quad (1.64)$$

- a parameterization in which the time evolution is the simplest first order Taylor expansion of a general function of the scale factor  $a$  (and closely resembles the  $w_0 - w_a$  parametrization for the equation of state of DE), referred to as ‘early-time’ parameterization, because it allows departures from GR also at high redshifts:

$$\mu(a, k) \equiv 1 + E_{11} + E_{12}(1 - a) , \quad (1.65)$$

$$\eta(a, k) \equiv 1 + E_{21} + E_{22}(1 - a) . \quad (1.66)$$

The parameters  $E_{ij}$  are usually order-unity parameters, which give the amplitude of the modifications at present time:  $E_{11}$  for  $\mu$  and  $E_{22}$  for  $\eta$  in the late-time parameterization and  $E_{11}$  for  $\mu$  and  $E_{21}$  for  $\eta$  in the early-time parameterization, while  $E_{12}$  and  $E_{22}$  measure the slope of the time-evolution function.

The late-time parameterization is forced to behave as Einstein-GR ( $\mu = \eta = 1$ ) at high redshift when  $\Omega_{\text{DE}}(a)$  becomes negligible; the early time parameterization allows more freedom as the amplitude of the deviations from Einstein-GR do not necessarily reduce to zero at high redshifts. Both parameterizations have been used in [Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b](#) and in other recent studies of how to constrain Modified Gravity with Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing observations, see [Bull, 2015](#); [Gleyzes et al., 2016](#) and [Alonso et al., 2016](#). In chapter [3](#) we

will study in more detail both the late-time and the early-time parameterizations and we will try to find out how well future observations will be able to measure  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ , using linear and non-linear matter perturbations.

#### 1.5.4.2 Parameterizing gravitational potentials in discrete redshift bins

A second and more model-independent approach is to specify the time evolution of the functions  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  without any parameterization. To this purpose we "pixelize" the functions  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  at  $N$  redshift bins  $z_i$ , with  $i = \{1, \dots, N\}$  and we consider the values  $\mu(z_i)$  and  $\eta(z_i)$  at the right limiting redshift  $z_i$  of each bin as free parameters. The  $\mu(z)$  function (and analogously  $\eta(z)$ ) is then reconstructed as

$$\mu(z) = \mu(z_1) + \sum_{i=1}^{N-1} \frac{\mu(z_{i+1}) - \mu(z_i)}{2} \left[ 1 + \tanh \left( s \frac{z - z_{i+1}}{z_{i+1} - z_i} \right) \right], \quad (1.67)$$

where  $s = 10$  is a smoothing parameter and  $N$  is the number of binned values. We assume that both  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  reach the Einstein-GR limit for a redshift higher than  $z_h$ : to realize this, the last  $\mu(z_N)$  and  $\eta(z_N)$  values assume the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM value  $\mu = \eta = 1$  and both functions are kept constant at higher redshifts  $z > z_h$ .

Similarly, the derivatives of these functions are obtained by computing

$$\mu'(\bar{z}_j) = \frac{\mu(z_{i+1}) - \mu(z_i)}{z_{i+1} - z_i}, \quad (1.68)$$

with  $\bar{z}_j = (z_{i+1} + z_i)/2$ , using the same  $\tanh(x)$  smoothing function:

$$\frac{d\mu(z)}{dz} = \mu'(\bar{z}_1) + \sum_{j=1}^{N-2} \frac{\mu'(\bar{z}_{j+1}) - \mu'(\bar{z}_j)}{2} \left[ 1 + \tanh \left( s \frac{z - \bar{z}_{j+1}}{\bar{z}_{j+1} - \bar{z}_j} \right) \right]. \quad (1.69)$$

In particular we assume  $\mu' = \eta' = 0$  for  $z < 0.5$  and for  $z > 3$ .

This approach has the advantage of being independent of the parameterization of the time evolution of  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ , but at the cost of introducing many more parameters that have to be constrained by observations. Furthermore, one does not know a priori how many binned parameters have to be taken into account and what are the degeneracies among them. This will be the subject of study in chapter 3, where we will introduce the functions  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  parameterized in redshift bins and we will forecast how well future observations will be able to measure those functions.

## 1.6 Non-universal coupling

In section 1.3 we have motivated the inclusion of a scalar field as a way of solving the dark energy problem and alleviating the coincidence problem. The energy fraction of Dark Energy and that of Dark Matter are of the same order of magnitude only for a very short period of time in cosmological time scales and that time is precisely now when we are capable of making observations. This introduces the question if this is just a coincidence or if somehow Dark Energy and Dark Matter are connected beyond simple gravitational physics. Therefore a natural way of alleviating this "coincidence problem" issue (which we reviewed in ?? 4) is to imagine there is a coupling in the dark sector or some mechanism that connects the onset of non-linear structure formation to the epoch of accelerated expansion of the Universe. As we will see, the coupling to baryons is extremely well constrained by

solar system and galactic observations and therefore a coupling to baryons has to be avoided.

In this section we will deal with two non-universally coupled theories which can yield very distinctive effects on the formation and evolution of structures in the Universe. In the first model, called (section 1.6.1) Coupled Dark Energy, there exists an exchange of energy and momentum between a quintessence scalar field and the dark matter particles. The second one is also a quintessence model, but this time the masses of neutrinos are coupled to the scalar field. In this model, the DE domination is triggered by the neutrinos becoming non-relativistic and their mass is connected to the energy scale attributed to the DE field.

As we have seen before, if the Weak Equivalence principle is violated, then there exists a fifth force acting between test particles on top of the gravitational interaction. Generally this will yield modifications in the growth rate of perturbations, the density profiles of structures and the matter power spectrum. Since the effects appear generally in the non-linear regime, we will have to study them by performing numerically expensive N-body simulations, as we will see in chapter 4 and chapter 6.

### 1.6.1 Coupled Dark Energy

We explained in section 1.5.2 how a coupling between all matter species and a scalar field can be realized in the Jordan frame. However, for non-universal couplings it is easier to work in the Einstein frame, in which the Lagrangian takes the form:

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{1}{2}\tilde{R} - \frac{1}{2}\tilde{g}^{\mu\nu}\partial_\mu\phi\partial_\nu\phi - V(\phi) - m(\phi)\bar{\psi}\psi + \mathcal{L}_{\text{kin}}(\psi) \quad , \quad (1.70)$$

where  $\psi$  is the coupled dark matter field,  $m$  its mass and  $\mathcal{L}_{\text{kin}}(\psi)$  its kinetic term.

The coupling to baryons is severely constrained by observations at solar system scales. The “post-Einstein” coupling parameter  $\bar{\gamma}$  defined as the quantity that measures the local admixture of a scalar field to gravity is constrained in Solar System experiments roughly to  $|\bar{\gamma}| \leq 4 \cdot 10^{-5}$  (see e.g. the PDG review Olive et al., 2014 and (Bertotti, Iess, and Tortora, 2003; Will, 2005)). This parameter enters the modification of the effective Newton constant as  $G_{\text{eff}} = G_N(1 - \bar{\gamma}/2)$ . We will see below, that the effective force coming from a coupling to matter is in our notation,  $G_{\text{eff}} = G_N(1 + 4\beta^2/3)$  and therefore  $\beta^2 = -3\bar{\gamma}/8$ . A coupling  $\beta_{\text{baryons}}^2$  appears then constrained to be smaller than  $10^{-5}$  roughly, and we assume therefore that is completely negligible. As a consequence, baryons follow the usual geodesics of a FLRW cosmology, which allows coupled DE to pass the stringent local gravity constraints without the need to employ any screening mechanism (Hamilton et al., 2015), (cite Koury; screening; see Planck).

The background evolution for the coupled DE scenario model is described by the following equations, in which the subscripts  $r$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$  and  $\phi$ , indicate radiation, baryons, cold dark matter (CDM) and the dark energy scalar field, respectively:

$$\ddot{\phi} + 3H\dot{\phi} + \frac{dV}{d\phi} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}\beta(\phi)\frac{\rho_c}{M_{Pl}}, \quad (1.71)$$

$$\dot{\rho}_c + 3H\rho_c = -\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}\beta(\phi)\frac{\rho_c\dot{\phi}}{M_{Pl}}, \quad (1.72)$$

$$\dot{\rho}_b + 3H\rho_b = 0, \quad (1.73)$$

$$\dot{\rho}_r + 4H\rho_r = 0, \quad (1.74)$$

$$3H^2 = \frac{1}{M_{Pl}^2}(\rho_b + \rho_c + \rho_r + \rho_\phi). \quad (1.75)$$

We express the scalar field  $\phi$  in units of the Planck mass  $M_{pl} \equiv 1/\sqrt{8\pi G}$ , and choose as potential  $V(\phi)$  an exponential  $V(\phi) = Ae^{-\alpha\phi}$  (Lucchin and Matarrese, 1985; Wetterich, 1988). The coupling function  $\beta(\phi)$  defines the strength of the interaction between the DE fluid and CDM particles and in the present work we will restrict our analysis to the simplified case of a constant coupling  $\beta(\phi) = \beta$ , although in general it could be a field-dependent quantity Amendola, 2004; Baldi, 2011.

Due to the exchange of energy between DE and CDM, the energy density of the latter will no longer scale as the cosmic volume, and by assuming the conservation of the CDM particle number one can derive the time evolution of the CDM particle mass by integrating Eq.(1.72) between the present time ( $z = 0$ ) and any other redshift  $z$ :

$$m_c(z) = m_{c,0}e^{-\beta(\phi(z)-\phi(0))}. \quad (1.76)$$

At the level of linear perturbations, coupled DE models are characterized by a different evolution of the baryonic and CDM density fluctuations, as a consequence of the selective interaction between DE and CDM particles only. In the sub-horizon limit, for which  $aH/k \ll 1$ , linear perturbations in coupled dark energy follow the equations (Amendola, 2004; Pettorino and Baccigalupi, 2008):

$$\ddot{\delta}_c = -2H\left[1 - \beta\frac{\dot{\phi}}{H\sqrt{6}}\right]\dot{\delta}_c + 4\pi G[\rho_b\delta_b + \rho_c\delta_c\Gamma_c] \quad (1.77)$$

$$\ddot{\delta}_b = -2H\dot{\delta}_b + 4\pi G[\rho_b\delta_b + \rho_c\delta_c] \quad (1.78)$$

where  $\Gamma_c \equiv 1 + \frac{4}{3}\beta^2$  represents the effective “fifth force” acting on the CDM particles. The term proportional to  $\beta\dot{\phi}$  in equation (1.77) is a velocity-dependent term that modifies the standard cosmological friction; this arises as a consequence of momentum conservation for the CDM particles and has a considerable effect on structure formation (Baldi, 2011; Baldi et al., 2010; Li and Barrow, 2011). Since baryons are uncoupled, their perturbations evolve according to the standard equation. Nonetheless, baryons will still be indirectly affected by the coupling as the source term on the right-hand side of equation (1.78) includes the CDM density perturbations.

At the level of non-linear perturbations, several methods have been devised to predict the small scale effects of coupled DE, from semi-analytical methods like spherical collapse Pace, Waizmann, and Bartelmann, 2010, to time renormalization group (Saracco et al., 2010a) to full N-body simulations (Baldi et al., 2010; Carlesi et al., 2014; Li and Barrow, 2011; Macciò et al., 2004). In chapter 4, we will work with the publicly available data of the CODECS simulations (Baldi, 2012b) that represents the largest set of cosmological N-body simulations for coupled DE models to

date.

### 1.6.2 Growing Neutrino Quintessence

Growing neutrino quintessence, developed in Amendola, Baldi, and Wetterich, 2008; Wetterich, 2007, among others, explains the end of a cosmological scaling solution (in which dark energy scales as the dominant background) and the subsequent transition to a dark energy dominated era by the growing mass of neutrinos, induced by the change of the value of the cosmon field which is responsible for dynamical dark energy. The dependence of the mass of neutrinos on the cosmon (dark energy) field  $\phi$ ,

$$m_\nu = m_\nu(\phi) \propto \hat{m}_\nu e^{-\int \beta(\phi) d\phi} \quad , \quad \beta(\phi) = -\frac{\partial \ln m_\nu(\phi)}{\partial \phi} \quad (1.79)$$

involves the cosmon-neutrino coupling  $\beta(\phi)$  which measures the strength of the fifth force (additional to gravity). The constant  $\hat{m}_\nu$  is a free parameter of the model which determines the size of the neutrino mass. (We take for simplicity all three neutrino masses equal - or equivalently  $m_\nu$  stands qualitatively for the average over the neutrino species.) The special role of the neutrino masses (as compared to quark and charged lepton masses) is motivated at the particle physics level by the way in which neutrinos get masses (see Wetterich, 2007). Growing neutrino quintessence with a sufficiently large negative value of  $\beta$  successfully relates the present dark energy density and the mass of the neutrinos. The evolution of the cosmon is effectively stopped once neutrinos become non-relativistic. Dark energy becomes important now because neutrinos become non-relativistic in a rather recent past, at typical redshifts of about  $z = 5$  (see Mota et al., 2008). In this way, the “why now problem” is resolved in terms of a “cosmic trigger event” induced by the change in the effective neutrino equation of state, rather than by relying on the fine tuning of the scalar potential. This differs from other mass varying neutrino cosmologies (usually known as MaVaN’s) Bi et al., 2005; Brookfield et al., 2007; Fardon, Nelson, and Weiner, 2004; Kaplan, Nelson, and Weiner, 2004; La Vacca and Mota, 2013; Spitzer, 2006; Takahashi and Tanimoto, 2006. Some of the observational consequences of those models were studied in Kaplan, Nelson, and Weiner, 2004; La Vacca and Mota, 2013 and more recently a new scalar field - neutrino coupling that produces viable cosmologies was proposed in Simpson et al., 2016. A viable cosmic background evolution of growing neutrino quintessence offers interesting prospects of a possible observation of the neutrino background.

The case in which the coupling  $\beta$  is constant has been largely investigated in literature at the linear level Mota et al., 2008, in semi-analytical non-linear methods Brouzakis et al., 2011; Wintergerst and Pettorino, 2010; Wintergerst et al., 2010, joining linear and non-linear information to test the effect of the neutrino lumps on the cosmic microwave background Pettorino et al., 2010 and within N-Body simulations Ayaita, Weber, and Wetterich, 2013, 2012; Ayaita et al., 2016; Baldi et al., 2011. For the values of  $\beta$  ( $\beta \gtrsim 10^3$ ) needed for dark energy to dominate today, the cosmic neutrino background is clumping very fast. Large and concentrated neutrino lumps form and induce very substantial backreaction effects. These effects are so strong that the deceleration of the evolution of the cosmon gets too weak, making it difficult to obtain a realistic cosmology Führer and Wetterich, 2015.

In this dissertation we instead consider the case in which the neutrino-cosmon coupling  $\beta(\phi)$  depends on the value of the cosmon field and increases with time,

along the framework of “varying growing neutrino models” (see Wetterich, 2007, (cite cite other MaVans?)).

In a particle physics context this has been motivated by Wetterich, 2007 by a decrease with  $\phi$  of the heavy mass scale (B-L-violating scale) entering inversely the light neutrino masses. In this scenario  $\beta(\phi)$  has not been large in all cosmological epochs - the present epoch corresponds to a crossover where  $\beta$  gets large. A numerical investigation Baldi et al., 2011 of this type of model has revealed compatibility with observations for the case of a present neutrino mass  $m_{\nu,0} = 0.07$  eV. In the present paper we investigate the dependence of cosmology on the value of the neutrino mass by varying the parameter  $\hat{m}_\nu$  in eq. 1.79. For large neutrino masses we find a qualitative behavior similar to the case of a constant neutrino-cosmon coupling  $\beta$ , with difficulties to obtain a realistic cosmology. In contrast, for small neutrino mass, the neutrino lumps form and dissolve, with small influence on the overall cosmological evolution. In this case, the neutrino-induced gravitational potentials are found to be much smaller than the ones induced by dark matter. As we will discuss in this paper, it will not be easy to find observational signals for the neutrino lumps. In-between the regions of small and large neutrino masses we expect a transition region for intermediate neutrino masses where, by continuity, observable effects of the neutrino lumps should show up.

As long as neutrinos are relativistic, the coupling is inefficient and the dark energy scalar field  $\phi$  rolls down a potential, as in an early dark energy scenario. As the neutrino mass increases with time, neutrinos become non-relativistic, typically at a relatively late redshift  $z \approx 4 - 6$  Pettorino et al., 2010. This influences the evolution of  $\phi$ , which feels the effect of neutrinos via a coupling to the neutrino mass  $m_\nu(\phi)$ . The evolution of the scalar field slows down and practically stops, such that the potential energy of the cosmon behaves almost as a cosmological constant at recent times. In other words, in these models the cosmological constant behavior observed today is related to a cosmological trigger event (i.e. neutrinos becoming non-relativistic) and the present dark energy density is directly connected to the value of the neutrino mass. In the following we will detail the formalism and equations used to describe the cosmological evolution of the model.

We will use here the linearized Einstein equations, treated in section 1.2.4, but now we have to pay attention to the fact that the term  $\delta T_0^0$  (eq. (1.30)) sourcing the Poisson equation eq. (1.31), will contain contributions from all matter species (dark matter & neutrinos) and from the cosmon field, which in this case also clusters. The total density perturbation will be:  $\delta\rho_t = \delta\rho_\nu + \delta\rho_m + \delta\rho_\phi$ . Moreover, we cannot neglect the anisotropic stress term  $\sigma$  in eq. (1.34) which is important for relativistic particles (i.e. the neutrinos).

The cosmon field can be described through a Lagrangian in the standard way

$$-\mathcal{L}_\phi = \frac{1}{2}\partial^\nu\phi\partial_\nu\phi + V(\phi) \quad (1.80)$$

where for this work we choose an exponential potential  $V(\phi) \propto e^{-\alpha\phi}$ . The field dependent mass (eq.1.79) allows for an energy-momentum transfer between neutrinos and the cosmon, which is proportional to the trace of the energy momentum tensor of neutrinos  $T_{(\nu)}$  and to a coupling parameter  $\beta(\phi)$

$$\nabla_\eta T_{(\phi)}^{\mu\eta} = +\beta(\phi)T_{(\nu)}\partial^\mu\phi , \quad (1.81)$$

$$\nabla_\eta T_{(\nu)}^{\mu\eta} = -\beta(\phi)T_{(\nu)}\partial^\mu\phi . \quad (1.82)$$

The cosmon is the mediator of a fifth force between neutrinos, acting at cosmological scales. Its evolution is described by the Klein-Gordon equation sourced by the trace of the energy-momentum tensor  $T_{(\nu)}$  of the neutrinos,

$$\nabla_\mu \nabla^\mu \phi - V'(\phi) = \beta(\phi) T_{(\nu)}. \quad (1.83)$$

As long as the neutrinos are relativistic ( $T_{(\nu)} = 0$ ) the source on the right hand side vanishes. During this time, the coupling has no effect on the evolution of  $\phi$ . While the potential term  $\sim V'$  drives  $\phi$  towards larger values, the term  $\sim \beta$  has the opposite sign and stops the evolution effectively once  $\beta T_{(\nu)}$  equals  $V'$ . The trace of the energy momentum tensor  $T_\nu$ , entering eq.1.83 is equal to:

$$T_\nu = m_\nu(\phi) \tilde{n}(\phi) \quad (1.84)$$

where  $\tilde{n}_\nu(\phi) = n_\nu(\phi)/\gamma$  is the ratio of the number density of neutrinos  $n_\nu$ , divided by the relativistic  $\gamma$  factor. Eq.1.84 is valid for both relativistic and non-relativistic neutrinos. Here we consider a coupling  $\beta$  between neutrino particles and the quintessence scalar field  $\phi$  as a field dependent quantity:

$$\beta(\phi) \equiv -\frac{1}{\phi_c - \phi}. \quad (1.85)$$

From eq.1.79 the neutrino mass is then given by:

$$m_\nu(\phi) = \frac{\bar{m}_\nu}{\phi_c - \phi}. \quad (1.86)$$

Here  $\phi_c$  denotes the asymptotic value of  $\phi$  for which  $\beta$  and  $m_\nu(\phi)$  would formally become infinite. By an additive shift in  $\phi$  it can be set to an arbitrary value, e.g.  $\phi_c = 0$ . We consider the range  $\phi < \phi_c$ . The divergence of  $\beta$  for  $\phi \rightarrow \phi_c$  in eq.1.85 is not crucial for the results of the present paper -  $\beta$  and  $m_\nu$  never increase to large values, such that the immediate vicinity of  $\phi_c$  plays no role.

The coupling induces a total force acting on neutrinos given by  $\nabla(\Phi_\nu + \beta\delta\phi)$  and appearing in the corresponding Euler equation Pettorino et al., 2010, as usual in coupled cosmologies Baldi et al., 2010. For values  $2\beta^2 > 1$  the fifth force induced on neutrinos by the cosmon becomes larger than the gravitational attraction. For the large values of  $|\beta| \approx 10^2$  reached during the cosmological evolution, the attraction induced by the cosmon gives rise to the formation of neutrino lumps. As shown in Mota et al., 2008; Pettorino et al., 2010 this represents the major difficulty encountered within growing neutrino models and also, simultaneously, one of its clearest predictions with respect to alternative dark energy models: the presence of neutrino lumps at scales of  $\approx 10$  Mpc or even larger, depending on the details of the model Mota et al., 2008. Since the attractive force between neutrinos is  $10^4$  times bigger than gravity, therefore also the dynamical time scale of the clumping of neutrino inhomogeneities is a factor  $10^4$  faster than the gravitational time scale. Even the tiny inhomogeneities in the cosmic neutrino background grow very rapidly non-linear. The impact of such structures, has been shown to depend crucially on the strength of backreaction effects Ayaita, Weber, and Wetterich, 2012; Ayaita et al., 2016. For constant coupling, the effect of backreaction is strong and can lead to neutrino lumps with rapidly growing concentration, reaching values of the gravitational potential which exceed observational constraints. The effect is so strong that it is able to destroy the oscillatory effect first encountered in Baldi et al., 2010, in which neutrino lumps were forming and then dissipating. No realistic cosmology

has been found in this case Führer and Wetterich, 2015. With the varying coupling of eq.1.85 a similar behavior will be found for large neutrino masses. For small neutrino masses the oscillatory effects will be dominant and realistic cosmologies seem possible Ayaita et al., 2016.



## Chapter 2

# Statistics in Cosmology

## 2.1 The relation between Gaussianity, linearity and homogeneity

### 2.1.1 Gaussian random fields

In cosmology, we are interested in studying observables which are the product of a large number of random processes. The best examples are the fluctuations of temperature in the CMB  $\delta T/T$  or the fluctuations of the matter density in the Universe, usually denoted by the symbol  $\delta$ , which originate from complicated interactions between different matter species, gravity and other fundamental forces. Using the Central Limit Theorem ([cite...](#)) we can show that the sum of a large number of random variables, that originate from independent random processes, will yield a variable that it is almost exactly Gaussian distributed. The Gaussian probability distribution  $p(x)$  for a random variable  $x$ , with mean  $\mu$  and variance  $\sigma^2$  is given by

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} \exp\left(\frac{(x-\mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) \quad (2.1)$$

As we sill see, Gaussian distributed variables will be very important in observations and analysis of cosmological observables. In the case of structure formation,

$$\delta(\vec{x}, t) \equiv (\rho(\vec{x}, t) - \bar{\rho}(t))/\bar{\rho}(t) , \quad (2.2)$$

is a random field that describes inhomogeneities in the density field  $\rho(\vec{x}, t)$  with respect to the mean density  $\bar{\rho}$ . Due to the assumption that the density fluctuation  $\delta$  originates from independent random processes in a homogeneous and isotropic universe, its statistical properties must be homogeneous and isotropic too ([cite...Peacock; Bjoern; ?](#)) That means that the probability distribution  $p(\delta(\vec{x}))$  must be invariant under translations and rotations of space. The expectation value of  $\langle \delta^n \rangle$  is formally speaking defined by an ensemble average, meaning that we should actually observe this process in many random realizations of the Universe. Since this is not possible, in cosmology we postulate the ergodicity principle ([cite Adler...](#)) which states that for sufficient large volumes the ensemble average is equal to the volume average and therefore, we can write:

$$\langle \delta^n \rangle = \frac{1}{V} \int_V d^3x \delta^n(\vec{x}) p(\delta(\vec{x})) \quad (2.3)$$

The importance of this postulate, in practical terms, is that we can use our formal statistical tools to compute theoretically the expectation values by just averaging over large volumes in the sky.

### 2.1.2 The two-point correlation function

The advantage of working with fluctuation variables in cosmology is that, by construction, their mean is zero, i.e.  $\langle \delta \rangle = 0$  and that they are small ( $\delta \ll 1$ ) at initial times. Therefore, the first statistical quantity we need is not their mean, but their variance,  $\langle \delta^2 \rangle$ . If we are measuring the fluctuations at two separated points in the universe ( $\vec{x}$  and  $\vec{y}$ ), then it makes sense to study their two-point correlation function, defined as:

$$\xi(\vec{x}, \vec{y}) = \langle \delta(\vec{x})\delta(\vec{y}) \rangle . \quad (2.4)$$

As we have seen before,  $\delta$  is statistically homogeneous and isotropic. Therefore, due to homogeneity, the correlation function can only depend on separation  $\vec{r} = \vec{y} - \vec{x}$  and due to invariance under rotations it can only depend on the magnitude of the separation, denoted as  $r$ . In simple words —for the case of large scale structure—  $\xi(r)$  is telling us how probable it is to find a galaxy a distance  $r$  away from a given galaxy at position  $\vec{x}$ . This is the ideal case for ideal measurements of a linear and Gaussian observable, but in the later chapters, when we discuss non-linearities and observational effects (for example redshift space distortions), we will see that the situation is in practice not so simple. In reality, the observable  $\delta$  will not be specified only by its two-point correlation function and will not be statistically isotropic, leading to different correlation functions parallel and perpendicular to the line of sight (**cite some BAO stuff**)

### 2.1.3 The data covariance matrix

Let us introduce at this point the *data* covariance matrix, not to be confused with the *parameter* covariance matrix, which will be introduced later. If we are measuring the fluctuation  $\delta$  at three points in space,  $\vec{x}$ ,  $\vec{y}$  and  $\vec{z}$ , then their joint probability density will still be Gaussian:

$$p(\delta(\vec{x}), \delta(\vec{y}), \delta(\vec{z})) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2\pi)^2 \det \mathbf{C}}} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} \delta(\vec{x}) \\ \delta(\vec{y}) \\ \delta(\vec{z}) \end{pmatrix}^T \mathbf{C}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} \delta(\vec{x}) \\ \delta(\vec{y}) \\ \delta(\vec{z}) \end{pmatrix} \right) \quad (2.5)$$

where now instead of a Gaussian dispersion  $\sigma$ , we have a Gaussian *data* covariance matrix  $\mathbf{C}$ , given by:

$$C_{ij} = \begin{pmatrix} \langle \delta^2(\vec{x}) \rangle & \langle \delta(\vec{x})\delta(\vec{y}) \rangle & \langle \delta(\vec{x})\delta(\vec{z}) \rangle \\ \langle \delta(\vec{x})\delta(\vec{y}) \rangle & \langle \delta^2(\vec{y}) \rangle & \langle \delta(\vec{y})\delta(\vec{z}) \rangle \\ \langle \delta(\vec{x})\delta(\vec{z}) \rangle & \langle \delta(\vec{y})\delta(\vec{z}) \rangle & \langle \delta^2(\vec{z}) \rangle \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6)$$

Notice that the covariance matrix is symmetric and positive definite. This is the data covariance matrix for three measurements in real space. If you would measure the density fluctuations at 1000 different points in space, the covariance matrix would have 1 million elements. Therefore, it is very important not only for theoretical, but for practical reasons of data analysis, that the covariance matrix is as simple and symmetric as possible.

Luckily, for Gaussian random fields their statistical properties can be defined entirely by the their two-point correlation function, where the following recursion relations (obtained by Isserli's or Wick's theorem (**cite Wick or something**))

are valid:

$$\langle \delta^{2n} \rangle = (2n - 1)!! \langle \delta \rangle, \quad \langle \delta^{2n+1} \rangle = 0 \quad (2.7)$$

Therefore, for Gaussian random variables, the two-point correlation function is everything we need to know about its statistical properties. This is of course expected, since we have defined in eq. (2.5) the covariance matrix  $\mathbf{C}$  as the only statistical quantity needed to specify fully the distribution of the multivariate Gaussian random field.

### 2.1.4 The power spectrum

To do (8)

If density fluctuations are exactly linear, or they remain small ( $\delta \ll 1$ ) so that they can be linearized, we will see that observations of the fluctuations at different scales, remain independent of each other. We can see this more clearly if we work in Fourier space. For linear equations, transforming into Fourier space (going from position  $\vec{x}$  to wavevectors  $\vec{k}$ ) is quite useful, since space derivatives become factors of  $\vec{k}$  and the function in Fourier space  $\delta(\vec{k})$  evolves in time independently for each  $k$ -mode, but only if the field is statistically homogeneous. The Fourier transform of the density field, denoted  $\delta(\vec{k})$  is defined as:

$$\delta(\vec{k}) = \int d^3x \delta(\vec{x}) \exp(-i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{x}) \quad (2.8)$$

and its inverse is

$$\delta(\vec{x}) = \int \frac{d^3k}{(2\pi)^3} \delta(\vec{k}) \exp(i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{x}) \quad . \quad (2.9)$$

Since now  $\delta(\vec{k})$  can be complex, we can define the variance between two  $k$ -modes as:

$$\langle \delta(\vec{k}_1) \delta^*(\vec{k}_2) \rangle = \int d^3x d^3y \langle \delta(\vec{x}) \delta(\vec{y}) \rangle \exp(-i\vec{k} \cdot (\vec{x} - \vec{y})) (2\pi)^3 \delta_D(\vec{k}_1 - \vec{k}_2) \quad . \quad (2.10)$$

Using the definition of the correlation function 2.4 and the fact that the Gaussian random field  $\delta$  is homogeneous we can define the power spectrum  $P(\vec{k})$  as:

$$P(\vec{k}) = \int d^3r \xi(\vec{r}) \exp(-i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r}) \quad (2.11)$$

The relation between the expected value of  $\langle \delta(\vec{k}_1) \delta^*(\vec{k}_2) \rangle$  and the power spectrum  $P(\vec{k})$  can be obtained by a similar straightforward calculation, (cite (cite Luca; Dodelson; ??)) where taking into account that the  $\delta$  field is real-valued, one can obtain:

$$\langle \delta(\vec{k}_1) \delta(\vec{k}_2) \rangle = (2\pi)^3 P(k) \delta_D(\vec{k}_1 - \vec{k}_2) \quad . \quad (2.12)$$

The Dirac delta  $\delta_D$  in the previous equation, shows us directly what we had expected from a random Gaussian and homogeneous field; the Fourier modes  $\vec{k}_1$  and  $\vec{k}_2$  for the density fluctuations are mutually uncorrelated. Therefore, for linear perturbations, the data covariance matrix  $\mathbf{C}$ , defined in eq. (2.6), is perfectly diagonal in Fourier space, making an analysis of the observations much more tractable.

However, this is only true if the equations governing  $\delta$  are linear; otherwise,

non-linear terms in real space, would introduce convolutions in Fourier space, giving rise to non-vanishing correlations  $\langle \delta(\vec{k}_1)\delta(\vec{k}_2) \rangle$ . This will be the subject of study of the non-linear power spectrum, which will be treated with more depth in chapter 5.

### 2.1.5 Final remarks on linearity, Gaussianity and homogeneity

We have seen in the previous sections, that the concepts of linearity, Gaussianity and homogeneity are strongly related in Cosmology. The fact that observables like the matter density fluctuations originate from a large number of independent random processes, leads —thanks to the Central Limit Theorem— to a Gaussian random field. Then homogeneity and isotropy of the Universe and linear equations (in space) governing those processes, ensure that the statistical properties of the Gaussian random field are also homogeneous and isotropic and that we can use the ergodic theorem to compute ensemble averages. The Gaussianity of the field (and its vanishing average value) allows us to describe the field, solely with its two point correlation function, which directly connects us to the power spectrum and then to the fact that in Fourier space, pairs of wavemodes are mutually uncorrelated.

$$\text{Gaussianity} \Leftrightarrow \text{Linearity} \Leftrightarrow \text{Homogeneity} \quad (2.13)$$

In contrast, non-linear evolution of the density field, would yield correlations among different  $k$ -modes, leading to a non-Gaussian probability distribution and the loss of homogeneity (or the appearance of  $k$ -dependence). This is what happens at later stages of structure formation, where fluctuations are limited to  $-1 < \delta$  in voids, but can grow to very high values  $\delta \gg 1$  inside the cosmic web structure. This in turn makes the data covariance matrix  $\mathbf{C}$  in Fourier space not diagonal anymore and the analysis of cosmological observations more difficult.

## 2.2 Likelihood and the Bayesian approach

The subject of Bayesian statistics is a very complex, but very important topic in modern statistics, data science and the physical sciences [cite Gregory and others](#) and it is outside of the scope of this work to try to even review its more fundamental properties. We will just comment on the simple but very powerful concept of the likelihood function and how the Bayesian approach to statistical analysis is best suited in a field like cosmology.

If an experiment yields a vector of random variables  $x^i$ , we have to try to build a theoretical model, which depends on some free parameters  $\theta^i$  that can give us the probability distribution  $p(x^i|\theta^i)$  to find the variable  $x^i$  inside an interval  $\Delta x$  for a specific measurement. Then what physicists are interested in, is in constraining the model parameters  $\theta$  and try to find the set of parameters (or the model) that best explains the data.

There are two possibilities of analyzing the results of that experiment, the *frequentist* and the *Bayesian* approach.

In the *frequentist* approach, the scientist would repeat many times the experiment and even change the settings and the theoretical parameters  $\theta$  in the lab, in order to find the distribution of  $x^i$ 's ( $p(x^i|\theta^i)$ ) and from there, infer the distribution of the parameters  $\theta$ . So this scientist would be able to say (as it is usually done in

particle physics) that there is a 97% probability that her data is distributed according to the model she has found as best fit (where one parameter is for example the Higgs mass).

In the *Bayesian* approach, the reasoning is reversed. The scientist would look for the probability of having a certain model (with model parameters) given the data that has already been taken ( $p(\theta^i|x^i)$ ). This is more suitable for cosmology, since we cannot repeat many times the same experiment and we cannot change the parameters of the Universe.

How do we then "invert"  $P(D|T)$  —the probability of the data given a model—to obtain  $P(T|D)$ ? The solution is given by Bayes' theorem **Bayes; Dodelson; Luca; many**

$$P(T|D) = \frac{P(D|T)P(T)}{P(D)} \quad (2.14)$$

$P(T|D)$  is usually called the posterior probability (of having a theory  $T$  given the data  $D$ ),  $P(T)$  is the prior probability on the theory (which quantifies our previous knowledge and prejudices) and  $P(D)$  is the evidence (the probability of the data), which for all purposes we can ignore, since it represents just a normalization factor. Also here, a discussion on the significance and the effects of the prior is out of our scope. **cite Amendola; Dodelson; Gregory; reviews** However, in our case it will be an efficient way of combining results from previous experiments into our predictions for future experiments. The prior can be as simple as the theoretical expectation that a parameter cannot be zero (for example the matter density of the Universe) or it can be the entire probability distribution of a previous experiment. After this point we will roughly call the posterior  $P(T|D)$  by its more common name: the likelihood function  $L(\theta|x)$ .

From the likelihood we can obtain some useful quantities:

- The maximum likelihood estimators  $\hat{\theta}_i$ , which are found by solving  $\partial L(\theta_i)/\partial\theta_i = 0$ . This would amount to the 'best fit' parameters, but they are in general different to the frequentist ones, if we have used a prior.
- The confidence regions for the parameters, denoted  $R(\alpha)$ , for which the normalized likelihood integrated in that region has a specific value:

$$\int_{R(\alpha)} L(\theta_i) d^n\theta = \alpha \quad . \quad (2.15)$$

If  $\alpha = 0.683, 0.954, 0.997$ , these regions are called 1, 2 and  $3\sigma$  regions respectively.

- Marginalization over a parameter. If the likelihood depends on three parameters  $\theta^1, \theta^2, \theta^3$ , but we are not interested in  $\theta^3$ , because it is a nuisance parameter or we have no clear idea how to relate it to the theory, we can marginalize over it by integrating it out:  $L(\theta_1, \theta_2) = \int L(\theta^1, \theta^2, \theta^3) d\theta^3$

Despite the great usefulness of the likelihood, its evaluation represents a challenge both numerically and computationally, since it is a complicated multi-dimensional function. Evaluating the likelihood for a relatively coarse grid of points in parameter space, becomes unfeasible for more than 7 or 8 parameters. So, techniques like Markov Chain Monte Carlo (MCMC) **cite some basic MCMC literature** have become more and more sophisticated. In these techniques, the basic idea is to explore the parameter space using a random walk, which is itself guided by the

steepness or flatness of the likelihood at that point. In this way there are much less evaluations in places where the likelihood is smooth and many evaluations where the likelihood changes very rapidly. Two very well known codes in the cosmological community are MONTEPYTHON and COSMOMC **cite Cosmomc and Montepython** which are used to evaluate the likelihood of many large and modern experiments like *Planck* **cite Planck**

Therefore many approximations can be made in order to estimate the likelihood or at least to find its maximum. For a Gaussian distributed data vector  $\mathbf{x}$  with  $n$  components, with mean  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  and covariance matrix  $\mathbf{C}$  of dimension  $n \times n$  we can write the likelihood as  $L = \exp(-\chi^2/2)$ , which results in:

$$L = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{n/2} \det(\mathbf{C})} \exp \left[ -\frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^T \mathbf{C}^{-1} (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) \right] \quad (2.16)$$

and we can define the matrix of data points as  $\mathbf{D} = (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^T (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu})$  and in full generality the covariance matrix  $\mathbf{C}$  is just given by the expected value of  $\mathbf{D}$ , namely  $\mathbf{C} = \langle \mathbf{D} \rangle$ .

We will see in the next section that a very useful approximation is to say that the likelihood is Gaussian not only in the data, but also in the parameters. In this case, a useful quantity will be the log-likelihood  $\mathcal{L} \equiv \ln L$ , since we can get rid of the exponential function. For (approximately) Gaussian distributed parameters, the parameter covariance matrix will be of extremely importance to analyze and forecast the results of large future experiments.

## 2.3 Fisher Matrix formalism

We have seen in the previous section, how the log-likelihood function  $\mathcal{L}$  is a powerful tool to estimate the probability distribution of model parameters, given some previously measured data. But what if we don't have data available yet? For example when we want to know with which accuracy a certain future experiment is going to be able to constrain certain parameters of a model. This is where the Fisher formalism (**cite Fisher; Tegmark; etc.**) enters. The Fisher matrix is defined as the expectation value of the *curvature* of the log-likelihood:

$$F_{ij} = - \left\langle \frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})}{\partial \theta_i \partial \theta_j} \right\rangle \quad (2.17)$$

If we assume that the errors on the data measurements are Gaussianly distributed (where then we can write the likelihood as  $L = e^{-\chi^2/2}$ ) then we can also think of the Fisher matrix as a Taylor expansion of the log-likelihood around its maximum  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ , or equivalently where the  $\chi^2$  is a minimum:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{L}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) + (\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \boldsymbol{\theta}} + \frac{1}{2} (\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})^T \frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{L}}{\partial \boldsymbol{\theta}^2} \quad (2.18)$$

The linear derivative term in the above equation vanishes, since we are expanding around the maximum and we are considering here for simplicity just one parameter  $\theta$ ; but the generalization to more parameters is straightforward. The fact that the Fisher matrix is related to the curvature of the log-likelihood around its maximum, tells us that the Fisher matrix is an indication of how fast the likelihood changes around the peak **cite Dodelson...** If the curvature is high, then the likelihood changes fast and the experiment is very constraining, allowing for just small

changes of the parameters, before the likelihood becomes too small. If the curvature is low, then the likelihood is very flat and the experiment is not very constraining in parameter space<sup>1</sup>.

### 2.3.1 The Fisher matrix for a galaxy power spectrum

In order to understand better the following sections where we will talk about the Fisher matrix of the galaxy clustering and weak lensing observables, let us specify the Fisher matrix defined in eq. (2.17) in a more concrete way. In this section we follow closely the argumentations of [cite Dodelson](#) and [cite Amendola](#)

We are interested in finding the distribution of matter in the Universe, and as we have seen before, for large sufficient scales, the overdensity of matter at a specific scale  $k$  is given by  $\delta(k)$ . For a galaxy survey, covering a volume  $V(z + \Delta z)$  in three-dimensional space and providing  $m$  Fourier modes  $k_i$  in a redshift bin  $\Delta z$ , we can compute (the full details of the calculation can be found in [cite Dodelson](#)) that the data covariance matrix between mode  $k_i$  and mode  $k_j$  is given by:

$$V\langle\delta_{k_i}\delta_{k_j}^*\rangle = C_{k_ik_j} = \frac{\delta_{ij}}{V} \left( P(k_i, z) + \frac{1}{\bar{n}(z + \Delta z)} \right) \quad (2.19)$$

The data covariance  $C_{k_ik_j}$  is always a sum of the signal covariance and the noise covariance, which in this case is simply given by the Poisson noise of a discrete random distribution, where  $\bar{n}$  is the average number density of galaxies. Again, let us emphasize that we are at relatively large scales, where then we can take our data covariance matrix as being diagonal. If we now assume that the galaxy distribution is well approximated by a Gaussian distribution (and we know it has to be since we are at linear and homogeneous scales), then we can write the likelihood function as:

$$L = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{m/2} \det(C_{k_ik_j})} \exp \left[ -\frac{1}{2} \sum_i^m \frac{\delta_{k_i}^2}{C_{k_ik_j}} \right] \quad (2.20)$$

Then the log-likelihood can be written in the following way

$$\mathcal{L} = -\ln L = \frac{m}{2} \ln(2\pi) + \sum_i^m \ln(C_{k_ik_i}) + \sum_i^m \frac{\delta_{k_i}^2}{2C_{k_ik_i}} \quad (2.21)$$

where we have used the matrix identity:  $\ln \det C = \text{tr} \ln C$ , which in this case is anyway trivial since  $C$  is a diagonal matrix. Now, using definition 2.17, we can evaluate the expectation value of the curvature of the log-likelihood (in model-parameter space  $\theta_\alpha$ ):

$$F_{\alpha\beta} = \sum_i^m \left[ \frac{\partial^2 \ln(C_{k_ik_i})}{\partial \theta_\alpha \partial \theta_\beta} + \langle \delta_{k_i}^2 \rangle \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_\alpha \partial \theta_\beta} \left( \frac{1}{2C_{k_ik_i}} \right) \right] \quad (2.22)$$

The expectation value operator only affects the data  $\delta_{k_i}^2$ , because the data covariance matrix  $C$  is already itself formed by expectation values. On the other hand, the data  $\delta_{k_i}^2$  cannot be affected by derivations with respect to the model parameters,

---

<sup>1</sup>The relation between information matrices and geometry is not only qualitative, it is a formal field of study called Information Geometry [cite Springer book](#)

because pure measurements should be by definition model independent. Then substituting  $\langle \delta_{k_i}^2 \rangle = C_{k_i k_i}$  and doing some algebra, we find:

$$F_{\alpha\beta} = \sum_i^m \left[ -\frac{1}{(C_{k_i k_i})^2} \frac{\partial C_{k_i k_i}}{\partial \theta_\alpha} \frac{\partial C_{k_i k_i}}{\partial \theta_\beta} + \frac{3}{(C_{k_i k_i})^2} \frac{\partial C_{k_i k_i}}{\partial \theta_\alpha} \frac{\partial C_{k_i k_i}}{\partial \theta_\beta} \right] . \quad (2.23)$$

Now we can use the data covariance of eq. (2.19) to write the Fisher matrix in terms of the matter power spectrum:

$$F_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_i^m \frac{\partial \ln P(k_i)}{\partial \theta_\alpha} \frac{\partial \ln P(k_i)}{\partial \theta_\beta} \left( \frac{\bar{n}P(k_i)}{1 + \bar{n}P(k_i)} \right)^2 , \quad (2.24)$$

where we have assumed that the noise does not depend on the cosmological parameters and we have dropped the redshift dependence for simplicity. We must remember that for a tomographic redshift survey, this Fisher matrix has to be computed at each redshift bin.

Having done this example explicitly we can also write down the more general expression for Gaussian likelihoods, such as the one specified in eq. (2.16), in which the likelihood contains covariance matrices  $C$  which are not diagonal and the average of the data measurements  $\mu$  is not zero. (see [cite Luca; Dodelson](#) among other works, for more details). In this case the Fisher matrix can be written as:

$$F_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{1}{2} \text{Tr} [C^{-1} C_{,\alpha} C^{-1} C_{,\beta} + C^{-1} \langle D_{,\alpha\beta} \rangle] \quad (2.25)$$

This last term, the expected value of the derivatives of the data matrix  $D$ , is what usually is zero in cosmology, since we study quantities which are fluctuations around the mean and their mean is therefore identically vanishing. In the following sections we will write down the more specific and exact expressions for the Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing analysis.

## 2.4 Fisher Matrix forecasts

The Fisher matrix formalism, which was mainly developed for cosmological observations by Tegmark et al., [1998](#) and Seo and Eisenstein, [2005](#) is one of the most popular tools to forecast the outcome of an experiment, because of its speed and its versatility when the likelihood is approximately Gaussian. The Fisher matrix method is used now ubiquitously in the cosmology literature, with about 200 papers published so far <sup>2</sup>, ranging from CMB observations, to Redshift Space Distortions, Supernovae, Lyman- $\alpha$  observations and many more.

We will present in the following sections, the specific formulas for Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing, under some simplifying assumptions (Gaussian likelihood, diagonal data covariance matrices, no redshift-bin correlations). In a paper by Sellentin, Quartin, and Amendola, [2014](#) the Gaussian approximation has been dropped and higher order “Fisher tensors” are used to approximate the true underlying likelihood [cite Sellentin more](#) Also recently, there has been some work in extending the simplifying assumptions of diagonal covariance, redshift-bin correlations and  $k$ -space correlations [Durrer; Amendola with Blot](#); Bailoni, Spurio Mancini, and Amendola, [2016](#).

---

<sup>2</sup>According to a full-text search at <https://www.arxiv.org>

In Khedekar; Majumdar the authors also compared directly the Fisher matrix formalism with a direct MCMC approach and have encountered considerable differences in the case of CMB experiments, especially when departing from the standard cosmological model.

### 2.4.1 Fisher matrix for Galaxy Clustering

Using the previously found equation 2.24 for the Fisher matrix of the power spectrum, we can write that expression in a more compact form, where we express the sum over the  $k$ -modes as an integral and take into account the number of observed modes into the volume. We end up with the following formula: form (amendola book; dodelson; Seo and Eisenstein, 2007a):

$$F_{ij} = \frac{1}{8\pi^2} \int_{-1}^{+1} d\mu \int_{k_{\min}}^{k_{\max}} dk k^2 \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(k, \mu, z)}{\partial \theta_i} \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(k, \mu, z)}{\partial \theta_j} V_{\text{eff}}(k, \mu, z) , \quad (2.26)$$

where the effective volume  $V_{\text{eff}}$  is given by

$$V_{\text{eff}} = V_{\text{survey}} \left[ \frac{n(z)P_{\text{obs}}(k, \mu, z)}{n(z)P_{\text{obs}}(k, \mu, z) + 1} \right]^2 . \quad (2.27)$$

Here  $V_{\text{survey}}$  is the volume covered by the survey and contained in a redshift slice  $\Delta z$ , while  $n(z)$  is the galaxy number density as a function of redshift. The galaxy number density has to be taken from specifications for each survey, which are obtained by direct measurements in the sky and end-to-end simulations Dida; Guzzo; etc  $P_{\text{obs}}(k, \mu, z)$  is the observed galaxy power spectrum as a function of redshift  $z$ , the wavenumber  $k$  and of  $\mu \equiv \cos \alpha$ , where  $\alpha$  is the angle between the line of sight and the 3D-wavevector  $\vec{k}$ . The derivatives in eq. (2.26) are taken with respect to a vector of cosmological parameters,  $\theta_i$  that can contain redshift-independent parameters such as  $h$  and  $\Omega_m$  or redshift-dependent parameters such as the growth rate function  $f(z)$  or the Hubble function  $H(z)$ . The details of the observed power spectrum will be treated in the next section 2.4.2.

The minimum and maximum values for the  $k$ -integral also depend on the survey specifications and on how much we can trust our model of the power spectrum at non-linear scales. Throughout this work we will use for the smallest wavenumber a value of approximately  $k_{\min} = 0.008h/\text{Mpc}$ , while the maximum wavenumber will depend on the specific application and methods used to study the non-linear regime. In general,  $k_{\max} = 0.10 - 0.15h/\text{Mpc}$  for linear forecasts and for non-linear forecasts the smallest scales will lie at about  $k_{\max} = 0.5 - 1.0h/\text{Mpc}$ .

### 2.4.2 The observed galaxy power spectrum

The distribution of galaxies in space is not perfectly uniform. Instead it follows, up to a bias, the underlying matter power spectrum so that the observed power spectrum  $P_{\text{obs}}$  is closely linked to the dark matter power spectrum  $P(k)$ . The observed power spectrum is the Fourier transform of the real-space two point correlation function (see eq. (2.4)) of the galaxy number overdensity.

The observed power spectrum is then built from the theoretical matter power spectrum  $P(k, z)$  (which in turn depends on the fundamental cosmological parameters  $\theta_i$ ) together by the following contributions which modify its signal:

1. The geometrical factor coming from the change of the Baryon Acoustic Peak (BAO) peak  
marked orange in eq. (2.28). It can be shown **cite some BAO review** that the shift of the BAO peak due to geometrical distortions when considering a different cosmology as the reference one is proportional to  $H(z)/D_A^2(z)$ .
2. The galaxy bias  $b(z)$  marked brown in the formula below. This term has to be estimated from observations and simulations for different types of galaxy populations. In this case, we take into account just a linear local bias which means that we assume that the galaxy overdensity  $\delta_g$  differs from the underlying matter overdensity by a function which just depends on redshift:  $\delta_g = b(z)\delta_m$ . This assumption breaks at very large and very small scales **cite some bias review**
3. The contribution from Redshift Space Distortions (RSD)  
marked green in eq. (2.28), where  $\beta(z) = f(z)/b(z)$ , where  $b(z)$  is the galaxy bias and  $f(z)$  the logarithmic growth rate of perturbations  $f(z) = d \ln(D_+)/d \ln(a)/$ . This term is related to distortions in redshift space caused by peculiar velocity divergences. This term was derived first in (Kaiser, 1987) and it is commonly known as the Kaiser formula. It represents the distortion caused by peculiar velocities when going from redshift to coordinate space.
4. The geometrical effect of the change of cosmological parameters on the determination of the angles  $\mu$  and the scale  $k$ , which is called the Alcock-Paczynski effect (Alcock and Paczyński, 1979; Ballinger, Peacock, and Heavens, 1996; Feldman, Kaiser, and Peacock, 1994) and it is marked red in eq. (2.28). In section 2.5.5 we will detail the corresponding formulas.
5. The damping due to spectroscopic redshift errors  $\sigma_z$  and the non-linear pairwise peculiar velocity dispersion  $\sigma_v(z)$ , which corresponds to a first order correction term to the Kaiser formula and it is also known as the "Fingers of God" effect. These terms damp the power spectrum at small scales, where due to these redshift uncertainties the signal cannot be reproduced accurately. These terms are shown in magenta in eq. (2.28).
6. Extra shot noise due to observational effects which cannot be removed. These can be included in general with the term  $P_s(z)$ . It is marked blue in the formula below.

$$P_{\text{obs}}(z, k, \mu; \theta) = P_s(z) + \frac{D_A^2(z)_{\text{ref}} H(z)}{D_A^2(z) H(z)_{\text{ref}}} b^2(z) (1 + \beta(z) \mu^2)^2 P(k, z) e^{-k^2 \mu^2 (\sigma_z^2 / H(z) + \sigma_v^2(z))} \quad (2.28)$$

In the previous formula we have neglected relativistic contributions and further non-linear effects. For a quick review on those topics see (**cite durrer; bonvin; taruya; scoccimarro**). In general for the forecasts presented in this work, we will marginalize over the bias  $b(z)$ , which we will take as a different nuisance parameter at each redshift. We usually fix the spectroscopic redshift error to a value given by the specifications of the instrument, and it is in general a very small number  $\sigma_z = 0.001$ . We also marginalize over  $\sigma_v(z)$ , since we don't have a proper way of computing it for each model and relating it to fundamental cosmological parameters. We will take as a fiducial value  $\sigma_v = 300 \text{ km/s}$ , compatible with the estimates by Torre and Guzzo, 2012.

Despite the apparent simplicity of eq. (2.26) and eq. (2.28) there are several details that need to be considered when dealing with forecasts in practical applications. One of the main results of this work is the production of a Fisher Matrix code capable of performing forecasts for Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing with different options for methods and assumptions. In section 2.5 we will explain more in detail the equations and the structure of the code used to perform the forecasts in this work.

### 2.4.3 Weak Gravitational Lensing

Light propagating through the universe is deflected by variations in the Weyl potential  $\Phi_{\text{Weyl}} = \Phi + \Psi$ , leading to distortions in the images of galaxies. The main idea behind weak gravitational lensing is to measure the ellipticity of galaxies in a wide field sky survey and correlate the ellipticities to find a statistical effect caused by the evolution of the lensing potential in the Universe.

The transformation of a light bundle in the case of small angles and small gravitational potentials can be described by a distortion tensor which contains a convergence component  $\kappa$  (appearing only in its diagonal) and a shear component  $\gamma_i$  (appearing both in the diagonal as in the off-diagonal elements). For more details and derivations, see the comprehensive review by cite Bartelmann Schneider What we observe when we measure the correlation among galaxy ellipticities is the shear power spectrum  $P_{\gamma\gamma}$ . However, it can be shown in linear theory, that the shear power spectrum is proportional to the convergence power spectrum  $P_{\kappa\kappa}$  (see Amendola; Tegmark; Hu; Bartelmann), and it can be linked directly to a combination of the matter power spectrum and the background cosmological quantities. Therefore, by measuring something conceptually simple, such as galaxy shapes, we gain access to the parameters of the cosmological model governing the evolutions of structure in the Universe.

In the linear regime we can write the power spectrum of the convergence field as

$$C_{ij}(\ell) = \frac{9}{4} \int_0^\infty dz \frac{W_i(z)W_j(z)H^3(z)\Omega_m^2(z)}{(1+z)^4} \Sigma^2(\ell/r(z), z) P_m(\ell/r(z)) , \quad (2.29)$$

where the indices  $i, j$  stand for each of the  $\mathcal{N}_{\text{bin}}$  redshift bins. In this expression we are already considering extensions of Einstein's GR, where we have used Eqn. (1.61) to parametrize the changes induced in the Weyl potential. Furthermore we use the Limber approximation to write down the conversion  $k = \ell/r(z)$ , where  $r(z)$  is the comoving distance given by

$$r(z) = c \int_0^z \frac{d\tilde{z}}{H(\tilde{z})} . \quad (2.30)$$

The indices  $i, j$  stand for each of the  $\mathcal{N}_{\text{bin}}$  redshift bins, such that  $C_{ij}$  is a matrix of dimensions  $\mathcal{N}_{\text{bin}} \times \mathcal{N}_{\text{bin}}$ . The window functions  $W_i$  are given by

$$W(z) = \int_z^\infty d\tilde{z} \left(1 - \frac{r(z)}{r(\tilde{z})}\right) n(\tilde{z}) \quad (2.31)$$

where the normalized galaxy distribution function (in the case of a survey like Euclid 2.1) is

$$n(z) \propto z^2 \exp\left(-(z/z_0)^{3/2}\right) . \quad (2.32)$$

Here the median redshift  $z_{\text{med}}$  and  $z_0$  are related by  $z_{\text{med}} = \sqrt{2}z_0$ . We integrate this quantity in our redshift range to find the total amount of galaxies and create the redshift bins, such that each of them contains the same number of galaxies. These bins are then called equi-populated bins. The Weak Lensing Fisher matrix is then given by a sum over all possible correlations at different redshift bins (Tegmark et al., 1998),

$$F_{\alpha\beta} = f_{\text{sky}} \sum_{\ell}^{\ell_{\text{max}}} \sum_{i,j,k,l} \frac{(2\ell+1)\Delta\ell}{2} \frac{\partial C_{ij}(\ell)}{\partial\theta_\alpha} \text{Cov}_{jk}^{-1} \frac{\partial C_{kl}(\ell)}{\partial\theta_\beta} \text{Cov}_{li}^{-1}. \quad (2.33)$$

The prefactor  $f_{\text{sky}}$  is the fraction of the sky covered by the survey. The upper limit of the sum,  $\ell_{\text{max}}$ , is a high-multipole cutoff due to our ignorance of clustering and baryon physics on small scales, similar to the role of  $k_{\text{max}}$  in Galaxy Clustering. Typical choices are  $\ell_{\text{max}} = 1000$  for the linear forecasts and  $\ell_{\text{max}} = 5000$  for the non-linear forecasts (this cutoff is not necessarily reached at all redshifts, as what matters is the minimum scale between  $\ell_{\text{max}}$  and the  $k_{\text{max}}$  which is the maximum  $k$  at which we trust the power spectrum; see also Casas et al., 2015). In eq. (2.33),  $\text{Cov}_{ij}$  is the corresponding covariance matrix of the convergence power spectrum, which is the sum of the signal and the noise covariance matrix and it has the following form:

$$\text{Cov}_{ij}(\ell) = C_{ij}(\ell) + \delta_{ij}\gamma_{\text{int}}^2 n_i^{-1} + K_{ij}(\ell) \quad (2.34)$$

where  $\gamma_{\text{int}}$  is the intrinsic galaxy ellipticity. In Table 2.1 we cite some typical numbers for different surveys. The shot noise term  $n_i^{-1}$  is expressed as

$$n_i = 3600 \left( \frac{180}{\pi} \right)^2 n_\theta / \mathcal{N}_{\text{bin}} \quad (2.35)$$

with  $n_\theta$  the total number of galaxies per arcmin<sup>2</sup> and the index  $i$  standing for each redshift bin. Since we have equi-populated redshift bins, the shot noise term is equal for each bin. The matrix  $K_{ij}(\ell)$  is a diagonal “cutoff” matrix, discussed in Casas et al., 2015 whose entries increase to very high values at the scale where the power spectrum  $P(k)$  has to be cut, in order to avoid the inclusion of uncertain or unresolved non-linear scales. We choose to add this matrix to have further control on the inclusion of non-linearities. Without this matrix, due to the redshift-dependent relation between  $k$  and  $\ell$ , a very high  $\ell_{\text{max}}$  would correspond at low redshifts, to a very high  $k_{\text{max}}$  where we do not longer trust the accuracy of the non-linear power spectrum. Therefore, the sum in Eqn. (2.33) is limited by the minimum scale imposed either by  $\ell_{\text{max}}$  or by  $k_{\text{max}}$ , which is the maximum wavenumber considered in the matter power spectrum  $P(k, z)$ . As we did for Galaxy Clustering, we use for linear forecasts  $k_{\text{max}} = 0.15$  and for non-linear forecasts  $k_{\text{max}} = 0.5$ .

#### 2.4.4 Future large scale galaxy redshift surveys

In this work we choose to present results on some of the future galaxy redshift surveys, which are planned to be started and analyzed within the next decade. Our baseline survey will be the Euclid satellite Amendola and others, 2013; Laureijs and others, 2011.

Euclid<sup>3</sup> is a European Space Agency medium-class mission scheduled for launch in 2020. Its main goal is to explore the expansion history of the Universe and the

---

<sup>3</sup><http://www.euclid-ec.org/>

evolution of large scale cosmic structures by measuring shapes and redshifts of galaxies, covering  $15000\text{deg}^2$  of the sky, up to redshifts of about  $z \sim 2$ . It will be able to measure up to 100 million spectroscopic redshifts which can be used for Galaxy Clustering measurements and 2 billion photometric galaxy images, which can be used for Weak Lensing observations (for more details, see Amendola and others, 2013; Laureijs and others, 2011). We will use in this work the Euclid Redbook specifications for Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing forecasts Laureijs and others, 2011, some of which are listed in Tables 4.5 and 2.1 and the rest can be found in the above cited references.

Parameter	Euclid	SKA1	SKA2	Description
$f_{\text{sky}}$	0.364	0.121	0.75	Fraction of the sky covered
$\sigma_z$	0.05	0.05	0.05	Photometric redshift error
$n_\theta$	30	10	2.7	Number of galaxies per arcmin
$\gamma_{\text{int}}$	0.22	0.3	0.3	Intrinsic galaxy ellipticity
$z_0$	0.9	1.0	1.6	Median redshift over $\sqrt{2}$
$N_{\text{bin}}$	12	12	12	Total number of tomographic redshift bins

**TABLE 2.1:** Specifications for the Weak Lensing surveys Euclid, SKA1 and SKA2 used in this work. Other needed quantities can be found in the references cited in section 2.4.4. For all WL surveys we use a redshift range between  $z = 0.5$  and  $z = 3.0$ , using 6 equi-populated redshift bins.

Another important future survey will be the Square Kilometer Array (SKA)<sup>4</sup>, which is planned to become the world's largest radio-telescope. It will be built in two phases, phase 1 split into SKA1-SUR in Australia and SKA1-MID in South Africa and SKA2 which will be at least 10 times as sensitive. The first stage is due to finish observations around the year 2023 and the second phase is scheduled for 2030 (for more details, see Bull et al., 2015; Raccanelli et al., 2015; Santos et al., 2015; Yahya et al., 2015). The first phase SKA1, will be able to measure in an area of  $5000\text{deg}^2$  of the sky and a redshift of up to  $z \sim 0.8$  an estimated number of about  $5 \times 10^6$  galaxies; SKA2 is expected to cover a much larger fraction of the sky ( $\sim 30000\text{deg}^2$ ), will yield much deeper redshifts (up to  $z \sim 2.5$ ) and is expected to detect about  $10^9$  galaxies with spectroscopic redshifts Santos et al., 2015. SKA1 and SKA2 will also be capable of performing radio Weak Lensing experiments, which are very promising, since they are expected to be less sensitive to systematic effects in the instruments, related to residual point spread function (PSF) anisotropies Harrison et al., 2016. In this work we will use for our forecasts of SKA1 and SKA2, the specifications computed by Santos et al., 2015 for GC and by Harrison et al., 2016 for WL. The numerical survey parameters are listed in Tables 4.5 and 2.1, while the galaxy bias  $b(z)$  and the number density of galaxies  $n(z)$ , can be found in the references mentioned above.

We will also forecast the results from DESI<sup>5</sup>, a stage IV, ground-based dark energy experiment, that will study large scale structure formation in the Universe through baryon acoustic oscillations (BAO) and redshift space distortions (RSD), using redshifts and positions from galaxies and quasars DESI Collaboration, Aghamousa, and others, 2016a,b; Levi et al., 2013. It is scheduled to start in 2018 and will cover an estimated area in the sky of about  $14000\text{deg}^2$ . It will measure spectroscopic redshifts for four different classes of objects, luminous red galaxies (LRGs) up to a

<sup>4</sup><https://www.skatelescope.org/>

<sup>5</sup><http://desi.lbl.gov/>

redshift of  $z = 1.0$ , bright [O II] emission line galaxies (ELGs) up to  $z = 1.7$ , quasars (QSOs) up to  $z \sim 3.5$  and at low redshifts ( $z \sim 0.2$ ) magnitude-limited bright galaxies (BLGs). In total, DESI will be able to measure more than 30 million spectroscopic redshifts. In this paper we will use for our forecasts only the specifications for the ELGs, as found in DESI Collaboration, Aghamousa, and others, 2016a, since this observation provides the largest number density of galaxies in the redshift range of our interest. We cite the geometry and redshift binning specifications in Table 4.5, while the galaxy number density and bias can be found in DESI Collaboration, Aghamousa, and others, 2016a.

Parameter	Euclid	DESI-ELG	SKA1-SUR	SKA2	Description
$A_{\text{survey}}$	$15000 \text{ deg}^2$	$14000 \text{ deg}^2$	$5000 \text{ deg}^2$	$30000 \text{ deg}^2$	Survey area
$\sigma_z$	0.001	0.001	0.0001	0.0001	Spectroscopic error
$z_{\min, \max}$	{0.65, 2.05}	{0.65, 1.65}	{0.05, 0.85}	{0.15, 2.05}	Min. and max. $z$
$\Delta z$	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	$\Delta z$ in bin

TABLE 2.2: Specifications for the spectroscopic galaxy redshift surveys used in this work. The number density of tracers  $n(z)$  and the galaxy bias  $b(z)$ , can be found for SKA in Santos et al., 2015 and for DESI in reference DESI Collaboration, Aghamousa, and others, 2016a.

#### 2.4.5 Covariance and correlation matrix and the Figure of Merit

Previously we have defined the data covariance matrix in eq. (2.6), now let us define in more generality the parameter covariance matrix for a  $d$ -dimensional vector  $p$  of model parameters as

$$\mathbf{C} = \langle \Delta p \Delta p^T \rangle \quad (2.36)$$

with  $\Delta p = p - \langle p \rangle$  and the angular brackets  $\langle \rangle$  representing an expectation value. For our Fisher matrix analysis we will assume that  $\langle p \rangle$  is the value of the parameter  $p$  that maximizes the likelihood. The matrix  $\mathbf{C}$ , with all its off-diagonal elements set to zero, is called the variance matrix  $V$  and contains the square of the errors  $\sigma_i$  for each parameter  $p_i$

$$\mathbf{V} \equiv \text{diag}(\sigma_1^2, \dots, \sigma_d^2) . \quad (2.37)$$

The Fisher matrix  $\mathbf{F}$  is the inverse of the parameter covariance matrix

$$\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{C}^{-1} . \quad (2.38)$$

The covariance matrix tells us not only the errors on each of the parameters  $p_i$ , but also how the errors are correlated among each other. This is more clearly seen by defining the correlation matrix  $\mathbf{P}$ , which is obtained from the covariance matrix  $\mathbf{C}$ , in the following way

$$P_{ij} = \frac{C_{ij}}{\sqrt{C_{ii}C_{jj}}} . \quad (2.39)$$

If the covariance matrix is non-diagonal, then there are correlations among some elements of  $p$ . We can observe this also by plotting the ellipsoidal contours corresponding to the confidence regions. The orientation of the ellipses can tell us if two variables  $p_i$  and  $p_j$  are correlated ( $P_{ij} > 0$ ), corresponding to ellipses with 45 degree orientation to the right of the vertical line or if they are anti-correlated ( $P_{ij} < 0$ ), corresponding to ellipses oriented 45 degrees to the left of the vertical line.

To summarize the information contained in the Fisher/covariance matrices we can define a Figure of Merit (FoM). The square-root  $\sqrt{\det(\mathbf{C})}$  of the determinant of the covariance matrix is proportional to the volume of the error ellipsoid. We can see this if we rotate our coordinate system so that the covariance matrix is diagonal,  $\mathbf{C} = \text{diag}(\sigma_1^2, \sigma_2^2, \dots, \sigma_d^2)$ , then  $\det(\mathbf{C}) = \prod_i \sigma_i^2$  and  $(1/2) \ln(\det(\mathbf{C})) = \ln \prod_i \sigma_i$  would indeed represent the logarithm of an error volume. Thus, the smaller the determinant (and therefore also  $\ln(\det(\mathbf{C}))$ ), the smaller is the ellipse and the stronger are the constraints on the parameters. We define

$$\text{FoM} = -\frac{1}{2} \ln(\det(\mathbf{C})), \quad (2.40)$$

with a negative sign in front such that stronger constraints lead to a higher Figure of Merit. The FoM allows us to compare not only the constraining power of different probes but also of the different experiments. As the absolute value depends on the details of the setup, we can define the relative figure of merit between probe  $a$  and probe  $b$ :  $\text{FoM}_{a,b} = -1/2 \ln(\det(\mathbf{C}_a)/\det(\mathbf{C}_b)) = \text{FoM}_a - \text{FoM}_b$ . The FoM has units of ‘nits’, since we are using the natural logarithm. These are similar to ‘bits’, but ‘nits’ are counted in base  $e$  instead of base 2.

An analogous construction allows us to study quantitatively the strength of the correlations encoded by the correlation matrix  $\mathbf{P}$ . We define the ‘Figure of Correlation’ (FoC) as:

$$\text{FoC} = -\frac{1}{2} \ln(\det(\mathbf{P})). \quad (2.41)$$

If the parameters are independent, i.e. fully decorrelated, then  $\mathbf{P}$  is just the unit matrix and  $\ln(\det(\mathbf{P})) = 0$ . Off-diagonal correlations will decrease the logarithm of the determinant, therefore making the FoC larger. From a geometrical point of view, the determinant expresses a volume spanned by the vector of (normalized) variables. If these variables are independent, the volume would be maximal and equal to one, while if they are strongly linearly dependent, the volume would be squeezed and in the limit where all variables are effectively the same, the volume would be reduced to zero. Hence, a more positive FoC indicates a stronger correlation of the parameters.

#### 2.4.6 The Kullback-Leibler divergence

In the previous section 2.4.5 we exploited the determinant of the covariance matrix  $C$  as a Figure of Merit for our forecasts. Here we summarize a possible alternative to measure the constraining power of a specific forecast, namely the Kullback-Leibler divergence Kullback and Leibler, 1951, also called relative entropy or information gain. It has been used in the field of cosmology for model selection, experiment design and forecasting, see among others Kunz et al., 2006; Raveri et al., 2016; Seehars et al., 2014; Verde, Protopapas, and Jimenez, 2013; Zhao et al., 2017. The KL-divergence  $\mathcal{D}(p_2||p_1)$  measures for a continuous,  $d$ -dimensional random variable  $\theta$ , the relative entropy between two probability density functions  $p_1(\theta)$  and  $p_2(\theta)$  and it is given by

$$\mathcal{D}(p_2||p_1) \equiv \int p_2(\theta) \ln \left( \frac{p_2(\theta)}{p_1(\theta)} \right) d\theta. \quad (2.42)$$

Although it is not symmetric in  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  it can be interpreted as a distance between the two distributions and measures the information gain since it is non-negative

$(\mathcal{D}(p_2||p_1) \geq 0)$ , non-degenerate  $(\mathcal{D}(p_2||p_1) = 0 \text{ if and only if } p_1 = p_2)$  and it is invariant under re-parameterizations of the distributions as  $p_1(\theta)d\theta = p_1(\tilde{\theta})d\tilde{\theta}$ . In the form given here the information gain is measured in nits as in section 2.4.5, to convert nits to bits it is enough to divide the result by  $\ln(2)$ .

For the special case of  $p_1(\theta)$  and  $p_2(\theta)$  being multivariate Gaussian distributions, with the same mean values and covariance matrices  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{B}$  respectively, we obtain

$$\mathcal{D}(p_2||p_1) = -\frac{1}{2} \left[ \ln \left( \frac{\det(\mathcal{A})}{\det(\mathcal{B})} \right) + \text{Tr} [\mathbb{1} - \mathcal{B}^{-1}\mathcal{A}] \right]. \quad (2.43)$$

We can then define a Kullback-Leibler matrix  $\mathcal{K}$ , introduced in ([casas\\_mg\\_forec](#) appendix F) composed of the KL-divergence measure among our observables, defined as:

$$\mathcal{K}_{ij} = \mathcal{D}(p_j||p_i). \quad (2.44)$$

where  $p_i$  and  $p_j$  represent our observables. By looking at the rows of this matrix (one row for each observable) and plotting them in a corresponding matrix plot, one can see graphically which combination of observables yield more information gain. In section 3.5.1 we will show the visual representation of the KL-matrix for an explicit parameterization of modified gravity and for different Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing combinations of observables. This will give an intuitive idea of which observable contains more information gain than the other, compared to a reference observable.

#### 2.4.7 Systematic bias on cosmological parameters

As we have seen in previous sections, our forecasts for future observations depend strongly on the knowledge of the theoretical matter power spectrum. For linear scales, this can be calculated with great precision, but for non-linear scales, we have to rely on N-body simulations, semi-analytic methods or perturbation theories. Each of these methods only have a certain range of validity and introduce many numerical and theoretical errors into the calculations. We will see more details on this topic in chapter 5.

In this section we will quantify the effect of the systematic errors on our forecasted statistical error estimations due to the uncertainties on the non-linear power spectrum. We will show how big this systematic bias would be, if we used for our forecasts a power spectrum which is not the “correct” one. The following discussion was introduced in Casas et al., 2015 in reference to forecasts using non-linear power spectra from N-body simulations and is based mostly on the expressions derived in Appendix B of Taylor et al., 2007.

The linear bias on a cosmological parameter  $\delta\theta_i$  due to the bias  $\delta\psi_i$  in a parameter of the model which we assume fixed and cannot be measured is given by:

$$\delta\theta_i = - \left[ F^{\theta\theta} \right]_{ik}^{-1} F_{kj}^{\theta\psi} \delta\psi_j \quad (2.45)$$

In our case we will have only one systematic parameter  $\psi$ , which controls the difference between the “true” power spectrum  $P_{true}$  and our simulated power spectrum  $P_{num}$ :

$$P_\psi = \psi P_{num} + (1 - \psi) P_{true} . \quad (2.46)$$

$\psi$  can vary continuously so that for  $\psi = 1$  we recover  $P_{num}$ , while for  $\psi = 0$  we obtain  $P_{true}$ . We can define the relative difference between  $P_{true}$  and  $P_{num}$  as:

$$\sigma_p(k, z) \equiv \frac{P_{num}(k, z) - P_{true}(k, z)}{P_{true}(k, z)} . \quad (2.47)$$

The  $F^{\theta\theta}$  in eqn.2.45 above is simply the usual Fisher matrix:

$$F^{\theta\theta} = \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( C^{-1} \partial_i^\theta C C^{-1} \partial_j^\theta C \right) , \quad (2.48)$$

while the pseudo-Fisher matrix between measured and assumed parameters  $F^{\theta\psi}$  is:

$$F_{ij}^{\theta\psi} = \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( C^{-1} \partial_i^\theta C C^{-1} \partial_j^\psi C \right) , \quad (2.49)$$

which for one systematic parameter only, is just a column vector.

In the case of galaxy clustering we will compute  $F^{\theta\psi}$  in the following way, using the fact that for  $\psi = 1$ ,  $C = P_{num}(k, z) + n^{-1}(z)$  and  $P_\psi|_{\psi=1} = P_{num}$ :

$$F_i^{\theta\psi} \propto \int dk k^2 \left( \frac{n_{eff}(z) P_{num}(k, z)}{n_{eff}(z) P_{num}(k, z) + 1} \right)^2 \left( \frac{1}{P_{num}(k, z)} \right)^2 \frac{\partial P_\psi}{\partial \psi} \Big|_{\psi=1} \frac{\partial P_{num}}{\partial \theta_i} \quad (2.50)$$

in this step we have assumed that we have no systematic parameters affecting the galaxy number density  $n(z)$  and therefore, its derivative w.r.t  $\psi$  vanishes. Also, for notational simplicity we left out the integral over  $\mu$  and the complete form of the observed power spectrum.

In section 4.6.0.2 we will show a concrete example of the application of these formulas and we will see that in the non-linear regime, where the uncertainty in the theoretical power spectrum is of about 10-20%, the systematic errors can be of the same order or larger than the forecasted statistical errors for a future survey like Euclid.

## 2.5 The equations and structure of the FISHERTOOLS code

In this section we will explain a bit more in detail the implementation of the FISHERTOOLS code, which has been used in the projects and papers explained throughout this work. This code was created by the author and consists on a set of packages for the Mathematica Wolfram language.

### 2.5.1 The structure of FISHERTOOLS

The code contains of 4 basic modules:

1. CosmologyTools: A package defining many background quantities in cosmology, such as the Hubble function  $H(z)$ , distances, volumes, density fractions  $\Omega(z)$ , the growth and growth rate functions  $D_+$  and  $f(z)$ , conversions between different units and time conventions (scale factor, redshift, e-fold time, conformal time) and functions related to observational effects, like RSD and the AP effect (see section 2.4.2), among others. This package also interacts with the package COSMOMATHICA (see section 2.5.2 below), which serves as an interface and a wrapper to many other useful codes in the community, especially Boltzmann codes.

2. FisherTools: A package containing all functions needed to perform and analyze a Fisher forecast. Many of them are too technical to be included here and belong to a comprehensive manual, but in the next subsection we will specify some of them. The most important ones are the routines for derivation and integration, together with routines for matrix operations and visualization.
3. WeakLensingTools: Some special functions related to Weak Lensing analysis, like window functions, multipoles, computation of bins and bin correlations.
4. UsefulTools: Auxiliary tools used in the code that are not provided by `Mathematica`, such as file exporting and importing, string parsing and matrix operations.

### 2.5.2 The interface COSMOMATHICA

The COSMOMATHICA code was created originally by Dr. Adrian Vollmer and used for several projects in the field of Fisher matrix forecasts and perturbation theory [papers by Adrian](#). It is now maintained by the author of this work and it can be found and copied from its repository under the URL: <https://github.com/santiagocasas/cosmomathica>.

Its main function is to interface many codes and routines used in the cosmology community to a simple `Mathematica` notebook or package. The supported codes are the Boltzmann codes: CAMB Lewis, Challinor, and Lasenby, 2000 and CLASS lesgourges. The fitting functions from Eisenstein & Hu [cite Eisenstein](#) Halofit smith and the Cosmic Emulator Heitmann et al., 2014, 2010; and a code that calculates higher order perturbation theory for large scale structure, called COPTER [find citation](#)

This interface (which uses the MathLink technology from the Wolfram language) allows a very efficient and fast communication between the notebooks, the packages and the codes. Therefore, there is no need to create large quantities of files that have to be read and written in order to deal with cosmological quantities like the power spectrum or the transfer functions.

### 2.5.3 Derivatives of the observed power spectrum

The main calculation done in this code for galaxy clustering is based on eq. (2.26), which involves derivatives of the observed power spectrum and an integral over wavevectors  $k$  and angles  $\mu$ . For each redshift bin  $n$ , the derivatives are evaluated at the center of each bin  $\bar{z}_n$  and at the fiducial values of the parameters. The total number of redshift bins is  $N_b$ .

Let us first consider the derivatives of the observed power spectrum (see eq. (2.28)) with respect to a number  $N_p$  of redshift-independent parameters, which we will denote  $\theta_i$ , where the index  $i$  runs from 1 to  $N_p$ . These are parameters of the model which are fixed numbers like  $n_s$ , or are defined at redshift  $z = 0$ , like  $\Omega_m$ . In this case there are two possible options in terms of code implementation.

#### 1. Full Numerical Derivative method:

$$\frac{d \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{d \theta_i} \Big|_{fid} = \frac{P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i^+) - P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i^-)}{2\varepsilon \theta_i^{fid} \times P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i^{fid})} \quad (2.51)$$

where  $\theta_i^+$ ,  $\theta_i^-$  represent the parameter  $\theta_i$  evaluated at  $\pm\varepsilon$  around the fiducial value  $\theta_i^{fid}$ :

$$\theta_i^\pm = \theta_i^{fid}(1 \pm \varepsilon) \quad (2.52)$$

Almost all functions inside  $P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}, k, \mu; \theta_i)$  can be evaluated at  $\theta_i^\pm$ , except for the bias function  $b(z)$ , which we cannot relate to the cosmological parameters. Therefore, we need to consider for each redshift bin, an independent parameter  $b_n = b(\bar{z}_n)$ . This can be considered a redshift-dependent parameter.

## 2. Chain Rule method:

The observed power spectrum (eq. (2.28)) depends on 5 functions of the redshift, which we can call redshift-dependent variables. However, just three of them,  $H(z)$ ,  $D_A(z)$  and  $f(z)$  depend on the cosmological parameters  $\theta_i$ . Then, with the help of the chain rule one can write:

$$\begin{aligned} \left. \frac{d \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{d \theta_i} \right|_{\text{fid}} &= \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln f(\bar{z}_n)} \frac{\partial \ln f(\bar{z}_n)}{\partial \theta_i} \\ &+ \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln H(\bar{z}_n)} \frac{\partial \ln H(\bar{z}_n)}{\partial \theta_i} \\ &+ \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln D_A(\bar{z}_n)} \frac{\partial \ln D_A(\bar{z}_n)}{\partial \theta_i} \\ &+ \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln P(k, \bar{z}_n)} \frac{\partial \ln P(k, \bar{z}_n)}{\partial \theta_i} \\ &+ \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial k} \frac{\partial k}{\partial \theta_i} \\ &+ \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \mu} \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \theta_i} \end{aligned} \quad (2.53)$$

The last two terms, which consider derivatives of  $k$  and  $\mu$  with respect to  $\theta_i$  are non-vanishing if one takes the Alcock-Paczynski effect into account for  $k$  and  $\mu$ , since they are affected by geometrical terms, we will detail their expressions in section 2.5.5 below. The redshift dependent functions  $b(z)$  and  $P_s(z)$  are not known as a function of the fundamental cosmological parameters, and their functional form as a function of redshift is also generally unknown. Therefore, the best we can do is to discretize them in redshift bins and assign some fiducial values for them. We have to assume that each value at each bin is independent of the other. We will therefore have  $2 \times N_b$  unknown parameters in the observed power spectrum, namely  $b_n = b(\bar{z}_n)$  and  $P_{s,n} = P_s(\bar{z}_n)$ , the values of the bias and the extra shot noise at  $\bar{z}_n$ . In order to simplify the resulting equations, we will use the natural logarithm of these quantities. Then, these derivatives are:

$$\begin{aligned} \left. \frac{d \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{d P_{s,n}} \right|_{\text{fid}} &= \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln P_{s,n}} \\ &= \frac{1}{P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)} \end{aligned} \quad (2.54)$$

where we have assumed the fiducial extra shot noise value to be  $P_{s,n} = 0$  at all bins, and

$$\begin{aligned} \left. \frac{d \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{d \ln b(\bar{z}_n)} \right|_{\text{fid}} &= \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln b_n} \\ &= \frac{2}{1 + \beta(\bar{z}_n) \mu^2} \end{aligned} \quad (2.55)$$

Therefore, our set of parameters extends from  $\theta_i$  to  $\Theta_i = \{\theta_i, \ln b_n, \ln P_{s,n}\}$ . The

Fisher matrix eq. (2.26) will depend now on all the combinations of the first derivatives of the power spectrum with respect to  $\Theta$  and will be of the dimensions  $(N_p + 2N_b) \times (N_p + 2N_b)$ , since we have 2 redshift-dependent parameters at  $N_b$  redshift bins and  $N_p$  cosmological redshift-independent parameters.

The intermediate derivatives of  $\ln P_{obs}(\bar{z}, k, \mu; \theta_i)$  with respect to  $D_A(z)$ ,  $H(z)$  and  $f(z)$  can be calculated analytically from eq. (2.28). We use the logarithm of these quantities, because it simplifies considerably the formulas. As usual, the derivatives are calculated at the *fiducial* value of the cosmological parameters.

$$\frac{\partial \ln P_{obs}(\bar{z}, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln f(\bar{z})} = \frac{2\beta(\bar{z})\mu^2}{1 + \beta(\bar{z})\mu^2} \quad (2.56a)$$

$$\frac{\partial \ln P_{obs}(\bar{z}, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln H(\bar{z})} = 1 + AP_H \quad (2.56b)$$

$$\frac{\partial \ln P_{obs}(\bar{z}, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln D_A(\bar{z})} = -2 + AP_D \quad (2.56c)$$

$$\frac{\partial \ln P_{obs}(\bar{z}, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln P(k, \bar{z})} = 1 \quad (2.56d)$$

Here, the  $AP_H$  and  $AP_D$  represent the extra terms appearing from the Alcock-Paczynski effect, where the observed  $k$  and  $\mu$  are corrected by geometrical terms. These formulas will be specified in section 2.5.5 below.

### 3. The BAO method:

The third option would be to consider first the redshift-dependent functions to be independent of the cosmological parameters  $\theta_i$  and constrain them independently of the cosmological model. This is the preferred option for observational cosmologists, since it is more connected to the actual observations and it is more model independent. In this method, one simply calculates eq. (2.53) ignoring the derivatives of the redshift-dependent functions with respect to  $\theta_i$ . Using these three redshift-dependent variables, together with the other two mentioned previously,  $b(z)$  and  $P_s(z)$ , the space of parameters grows to

$$\Theta_j = \{\theta_i, \ln b_n, \ln P_{s,n}, H_n, D_{A,n}, f_n\} \quad , \quad (2.57)$$

where the subscript  $n$ , corresponds to the function evaluated at  $\bar{z}_n$ , the center of the redshift bin. In this case the Fisher matrix would be much bigger, with  $(N_p + 5N_b) \times (N_p + 5N_b)$  elements, with  $N_b$  the number of redshift bins and  $N_p$  the number of redshift-independent parameters. If one wishes to project the redshift-dependent parameters into the fundamental cosmological parameters, one simply calculates a Jacobian of the "old" variables with respect to the new variables, where the new fundamental cosmological parameters  $\tilde{\theta}_i$  can differ from the "old" variables and leaves open the opportunity of changing the model parameter basis:

$$J_{ab} = \frac{\partial \Theta_a}{\partial \tilde{\theta}_b} \quad . \quad (2.58)$$

Notice that if  $\tilde{\theta}_i = \theta_i$ , the first  $(N_p) \times (N_p)$  elements of the Jacobian matrix will be a unit matrix. This Jacobian is a non-square matrix since  $\Theta_a$  contains  $(N_p + 5N_b)$  components and  $\tilde{\theta}_b$  contains just  $(N_p)$  components, therefore it cannot be inverted. The new Fisher matrix would change accordingly to  $\tilde{F}$  and it would be given by:

$$\tilde{F} = J^T F J \quad (2.59)$$

This method is called the "BAO" method `seo_improved_2005`; Seo and Eisenstein, 2007a, since in BAO observations the redshift independent functions  $D_A(z)$ ,  $H(z)$  and  $f(z)$  are the main observables and one obtains cosmological parameter constraints from them by first constraining their values and then projecting these constraints onto a cosmological model. However, since the bias (which also enters  $\beta(z)$ ) is degenerate with the overall amplitude of the power spectrum as a function of redshift,  $\sigma_8(z)$ , observers prefer to define an observed power spectrum which depends on  $f\sigma_8(z)$  and  $b\sigma_8(z)$ , so that instead of eq. (2.28), the observed power spectrum would be expressed as (ignoring the exponential damping term for simplicity, which remains unaltered anyway):

$$P_{\text{obs}}(z, k, \mu; \theta) = P_s(z) + \frac{D_A^2(z)_{\text{ref}} H(z)}{D_A^2(z) H(z)_{\text{ref}}} (b\sigma_8(z) + f\sigma_8(z)\mu^2)^2 \left( \frac{P(k, z)}{\sigma_8^2(z)} \right) . \quad (2.60)$$

## 2.5.4 Equations for the power spectrum

Let us review here some of the formulas related to the power spectrum, in the way they are implemented in the FISHERTOOLS code.

The normalization  $\sigma_R$  of the power spectrum at  $z = 0$  (which is equivalent to the variance smoothed over a scale  $R$ ) is given by:

$$\sigma_R^2 = \frac{1}{2\pi^2} \int_{k_{\min}}^{k_{\max}} k^2 P(k, z=0) W_R^2(kR) . \quad (2.61)$$

The window function smooths  $P(k, z)$  over the scale  $R$  and has the form:  $W(x) = 3(\sin(x) - x \cos(x))/x^3$ , where  $x$  is a dimensionless variable. This term comes from assuming spherical symmetry and performing the angle integration of the 3-D power spectrum  $P(\vec{k})$ . If one chooses  $R = 8h^{-1}\text{Mpc}$  and  $[k] = \text{h/Mpc}$ , then we can define the parameter

$$\sigma_8^2 \equiv \sigma_R^2 \quad (R = 8\text{Mpc}/\text{h}) . \quad (2.62)$$

The quantity  $\sigma_8$  is a parameter defined always at  $z = 0$  and only in linear theory, which means that in eq. (2.61) either  $P(k, z = 0)$  is the linear power spectrum or the integration limits are chosen in such a way that only linear scales are taken into account, therefore one should take  $k_{\max} \approx 0.1$ .

The linear power spectrum can be obtained either from CAMB, CLASS or from the transfer functions of Eisenstein & Hu. In the latter case, we can express the power spectrum  $P(k, z)$  in terms of the primordial amplitude  $\mathcal{A}_s$ , the linear growth  $G(z)$  (equivalent to  $D_+(a)$  in alternative notations) and the transfer functions  $T(k)$ :

$$P(k, z) = G^2(z) T^2(k) k^{n_s} \mathcal{A}_s . \quad (2.63)$$

Since the parameters  $\sigma_8^2$  and  $\mathcal{A}_s$  are fully degenerate in linear theory, one has to be careful to include only one of them into the set of cosmological parameters. The quantity  $\sigma_8(z) \equiv \sigma_8^2 G^2(z)$  can be defined accordingly and can be used as an independent and redshift-dependent cosmological parameter, as it was the case in eq. (2.60). We have to emphasize again that these quantities and expressions are only formally valid in the linear regime and in standard Einstein GR; in the deeply non-linear regime or under the effect of modified gravity forces, the growth function might acquire some scale-dependence.

### 2.5.5 The Alcock-Paczynski Effect

The Alcock-Paczynski effect (AP, see (Alcock and Paczyński, 1979)) relies on the fact that the scales  $k$  and the angle cosines  $\mu$  are changed by geometrical factors of distance, when the cosmological parameters are changed. This means that  $k$  and  $\mu$  depend on  $H(z)$  and  $D_A(z)$  and therefore are also indirectly functions of the cosmological parameters  $\theta_i$ . The AP formulas relating the fiducial values of  $k_{\text{fid}}$  and  $\mu_{\text{fid}}$  to their transformed values are:

$$k_{AP} = R_{AP}(\mu; \theta)k_{\text{fid}} \quad (2.64)$$

$$\mu_{AP} = \frac{H(z; \theta)}{H(z; \theta_{\text{fid}})} \frac{\mu_{\text{fid}}}{R_{AP}(\mu; \theta)} \quad (2.65)$$

where the geometrical function  $R_{AP}$  is defined as:

$$R_{AP}(\mu; \theta) = \sqrt{\frac{[D_A(z; \theta)H(z; \theta)\mu_{\text{fid}}]^2 - [(D_A(z; \theta_{\text{fid}})H(z; \theta_{\text{fid}})]^2(\mu_{\text{fid}} - 1)}{[D_A(z; \theta)H(z; \theta_{\text{fid}})]^2}} . \quad (2.66)$$

The last two terms of eq. (2.53) come from the fact that now  $k = k(H(z; \theta), D_A(z; \theta))$  and  $\mu = \mu(H(z; \theta), D_A(z; \theta))$ , so that one has to use the chain rule for the derivative of  $P_{\text{obs}}(k, \mu, z; \theta)$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; H(z); \theta_i)}{\partial \ln H(z)} &= \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \ln H(z)} \\ &+ \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \mu} \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \ln H(z)} \\ &+ \frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial k} \frac{\partial k}{\partial \ln H(z)} , \end{aligned} \quad (2.67)$$

and similarly for the dependence on  $D_A(z)$ .

Now we can write down explicitly the intermediate derivatives (evaluated at the fiducial value as usual):

$$\frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial k} = \frac{\partial \ln P(\bar{z}_n, k; \theta_i)}{\partial k} \quad (2.68)$$

$$\frac{\partial \ln P_{\text{obs}}(\bar{z}_n, k, \mu; \theta_i)}{\partial \mu} = \frac{4\beta(z)\mu}{1 + \beta(z)\mu^2} \quad (2.69)$$

and the derivatives of  $k$  and  $\mu$  with respect to  $\ln D_A$  and  $\ln H$  are:

$$\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \ln D_A(z)} = -\mu(\mu^2 - 1) \quad (2.70a)$$

$$\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \ln H(z)} = -\mu(\mu^2 - 1) \quad (2.70b)$$

$$\frac{\partial k}{\partial \ln D_A(z)} = k(\mu^2 - 1) \quad (2.70c)$$

$$\frac{\partial k}{\partial \ln H(z)} = k\mu^2 \quad (2.70d)$$

The interesting thing about eq. (2.70) is that one can see that when evaluating the derivative of  $P_{\text{obs}}$  w.r.t a cosmological parameter, the scales  $k$  and the direction cosine angles  $\mu$  get mixed, giving a very powerful probe of cosmology.

### 2.5.6 Fisher matrix operations

Another important part of the code is the handling of the Fisher matrix itself for post-analysis. We are interested in the constraints on the model parameters and therefore we need to calculate the covariance matrix  $\mathbf{C} = F^{-1}$ , whose diagonal contains the square of the fully marginalized  $1\sigma$  errors of the model parameters and its off-diagonal entries encode the level of correlation among parameters.

**Maximization:** If we have a Fisher matrix corresponding to an  $N$  number of parameters, and we want to *maximize* over the parameter  $\theta_m$ , i.e. we want to obtain the errors on all other parameters, when the parameter  $\theta_m$  is fixed, then we just need to remove from the Fisher matrix, the rows and the columns corresponding to that parameter at position  $m$ :

$$\tilde{F}_{(N-1) \times (N-1)} = M_{(N-1) \times N}^T F_{N \times N} M_{N \times (N-1)} \quad (2.71)$$

where the matrix  $M$  can be defined in terms of the Kronecker delta  $\delta_{i,j}$  as:

$$M_{ij} = \delta_{U(i),j} , \quad (2.72)$$

where:

$$U(i) \equiv \begin{cases} i, & i < m \\ N, & i = m \\ i - 1, & i > m \end{cases} , \quad (2.73)$$

and the indices run as  $i = \{1, \dots, N\}$  and  $j = \{1, \dots, (N-1)\}$ . The new Fisher matrix  $\tilde{F}$  will be then of dimensions  $(N-1) \times (N-1)$ .

**Marginalization:** If we want to *marginalize* over the parameter  $m$ , then we have to invert the matrix  $F$  to obtain the parameter covariance matrix  $C = F^{-1}$  and remove from  $C$  the columns and rows corresponding to the index  $m$ :

$$\tilde{C}_{(N-1) \times (N-1)} = M_{(N-1) \times N}^T C_{N \times N} M_{N \times (N-1)} , \quad (2.74)$$

where  $M$  is given by eq. (2.72) and eq. (2.73). The operation of multiplying by matrix  $M$  and its transpose can be done more efficiently for a large number of parameters to be removed, by using appropriate functions in the Wolfram Mathematica language.

**Combination:** If we want to combine the Fisher matrix from an observation (or experiment)  $A$  with another Fisher matrix from experiment  $B$ , where both  $F_A$  and  $F_B$  have the same fiducial parameters and the same ordering, we just need to add the Fisher matrices together:  $F_{A+B} = F_A + F_B$  and from  $F_{A+B}$  we can obtain the combined contours and errors.

**Changing of parameter basis:** If our Fisher matrix  $F$  was performed in the parameter basis  $X^i$  and we want to change to a different parameter basis  $Y^i$ ; for example in  $\Lambda$ CDM when we want to go from  $\{\Omega_m, \Omega_b, h, \sigma_8\}$  to  $\{\omega_c, \omega_b, h, \ln(10^{10} A_s)\}$ , we can use a simple Jacobian operation. This can be done since, as we already mentioned, the Fisher matrix is composed of derivatives of the likelihood, which in turn

are in our case first derivatives of the data covariance matrix  $\mathbf{C}$ :

$$F_{\alpha\beta} \propto \frac{\partial \mathbf{C}}{\partial X^\alpha} \frac{\partial \mathbf{C}}{\partial X^\beta} \quad (2.75)$$

Therefore we can write the transformed Fisher matrix  $\tilde{F}$  in the new basis as:

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{F}_{\mu\nu} &\propto \frac{\partial X^\alpha}{\partial Y^\mu} \frac{\partial \mathbf{C}}{\partial X^\alpha} \frac{\partial \mathbf{C}}{\partial X^\beta} \frac{\partial X^\beta}{\partial Y^\nu} \\ \tilde{F}_{\mu\nu} &= J^T F J \end{aligned} \quad (2.76)$$

with  $J_{\alpha\nu} = \partial X^\alpha / \partial Y^\nu$ . In some cases, if the "old" parameter basis  $X^i$  cannot be solved in terms of the "new" parameter basis  $Y^i$ , then one can use the identity:

$$J_{ab}^{-1} = \frac{\partial Y^a}{\partial X^b} . \quad (2.77)$$

**Ellipsoidal confidence contour regions:** Since we are assuming a Gaussian likelihood at the maximum, the confidence contours for a 2-dimensional slice of the likelihood will be ellipsoidal, simply from the fact that the exponent of the two-dimensional Gaussian probability distribution for a set of two parameters  $X_i = \{x_1, x_2\}$  and a symmetric covariance matrix  $C_{ij} \equiv c_{ij} = c_{ji}$  contains the term:

$$X_i C_{ij}^{-1} X_j = \left( \frac{c_{22} x_1^2}{\det C} + \frac{c_{11} x_2^2}{\det C} - \frac{2c_{12} x_1 x_2}{\det C} \right) . \quad (2.78)$$

Then the ellipse will be oriented along the eigenvectors of  $C_{ij}$  with an angle  $\alpha$  with respect to the coordinate axes:

$$\tan(2\alpha) = \frac{2c_{12}}{c_{11}^2 - c_{22}^2} \quad (2.79)$$

By integrating a bi-variate Gaussian eq. (2.16) with the exponent eq. (2.78) to find the confidence regions as in eq. (2.15), we obtain that the  $1$ ,  $2$  and  $3\sigma$  confidence regions with major semi-axes  $a$  and minor semi-axes  $b$  are given by:

$$\begin{aligned} 1\sigma : \quad a &= 1.51\sqrt{\lambda_1}; \quad b = 1.51\sqrt{\lambda_2} \\ 2\sigma : \quad a &= 2.49\sqrt{\lambda_1}; \quad b = 2.49\sqrt{\lambda_2} \\ 3\sigma : \quad a &= 3.44\sqrt{\lambda_1}; \quad b = 3.44\sqrt{\lambda_2} , \end{aligned}$$

where  $\lambda_1$ ,  $\lambda_2$  are the largest and the smallest eigenvalues, respectively. The  $2 \times 2$  matrix from where these ellipses can be visualized can be either obtained by marginalizing or maximizing over all the other  $(N - 2)$  parameters. The FISHERTOOLS code contains these options and many other tools for plotting and visualization.

### 2.5.7 Extensions of the Fisher matrix approach

The Fisher matrix approach for forecasting the error on the parameters is based on the Gaussian approximation, although the concept of the Fisher matrix is more general than that, being defined as simply the curvature (or the Hessian) of the log-likelihood eq. (2.17).

In order to go beyond the Gaussian approximation, several approaches have been taken recently in the literature (see Sellentin, Quartin, and Amendola, 2014,

**cite more sellentin**) and the DALI code **cite more sellentin; link github** has been developed, which allows to find confidence contours for the model parameters, when the likelihood departs from an underlying Gaussian form.

In the FISHERTOOLS code some of the terms used in these extensions of the Fisher formalism have been implemented. One of its main applications is to study the effect of changing the fiducial value of the parameters on the forecasted errors on these parameters. Recently **bjoern** and **reischke** have studied the same effect, by looking at the corresponding matrix transformations that change under the influence of the fiducial. In our approach, which is still a work in progress and will be published soon, we take a different route, where we make a Taylor expansion of the Fisher matrix defined in eq. (2.25) around the fiducial parameters  $p_\gamma$  with data mean  $\mu$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial F_{\alpha\beta}}{\partial p_\gamma} = & \frac{1}{2} C_{,\alpha\gamma} C^{-1} C_{,\beta} C^{-1} - C_{,\alpha} C^{-1} C_{,\beta} C^{-1} C_{,\gamma} C^{-1} \\ & + \frac{1}{2} C_{,\alpha} C^{-1} C_{,\beta\gamma} C^{-1} \\ & - C^{-1} C_{,\gamma} C^{-1} \mu_{,\alpha} \mu_{,\beta} + C^{-1} (\mu_{,\alpha\gamma} \mu_{,\beta} + \mu_{,\alpha} \mu_{,\beta\gamma}) \end{aligned} \quad (2.80)$$

In the case of power spectra, however, both for Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing,  $\mu = 0$ . In the above equations, a trace over the free indices is implied and we use the notation:  $x_{,\alpha} \equiv \frac{\partial x}{\partial p_\alpha}$ .

For galaxy clustering as defined in eq. (2.24), the trace terms in the equation above correspond to the following:

$$F_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} [C_{,\alpha} C^{-1} C_{,\beta} C^{-1}] = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{n(z)}{n(z)P(k,\mu) + 1} \right]^2 \left[ (P(k,\mu))_{,\alpha} (P(k,\mu))_{,\beta} \right] \quad (2.81)$$

$$J_{\alpha\beta\gamma} = \text{tr} [C_{,\alpha} C^{-1} C_{,\beta} C^{-1} C_{,\gamma} C^{-1}] = \left[ \frac{n(z)}{n(z)P(k,\mu) + 1} \right]^3 \left[ (P(k,\mu))_{,\alpha} (P(k,\mu))_{,\beta} (P(k,\mu))_{,\gamma} \right] \quad (2.82)$$

$$S_{\alpha\beta\gamma} = \frac{3}{2} \text{tr} [C_{,\alpha} C^{-1} C_{,\beta\gamma} C^{-1}] = \frac{3}{2} \left[ \frac{n(z)}{n(z)P(k,\mu) + 1} \right]^2 \left[ (P(k,\mu))_{,\alpha} (P(k,\mu))_{,\beta\gamma} \right] \quad (2.83)$$

$$Q_{\alpha\beta\gamma\delta} = \frac{3}{2} \text{tr} [C_{,\alpha\beta} C^{-1} C_{,\gamma\delta} C^{-1}] = \frac{3}{2} \left[ \frac{n(z)}{n(z)P(k,\mu) + 1} \right]^2 \left[ (P(k,\mu))_{,\alpha\beta} (P(k,\mu))_{,\gamma\delta} \right] \quad (2.84)$$

Where  $C = P + n^{-1}$  and  $C^{-1} = \frac{n}{Pn+1}$  and we have included the derivatives of  $n(z)$ , which depends on cosmological parameters, through the comoving volume that changes in each redshift shell.

If we also include the derivatives of the survey volume  $V_s$ , which effectively gives the number of modes available over which the trace has to be taken, we end up with an expression (where implicit trace is now replaced by implicit integration over  $\mathbf{k}$ ) such as:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial F_{\alpha\beta}}{\partial p_\gamma} &= \frac{V_s}{2} \left[ \frac{n(z)}{n(z)P(k,\mu)+1} \right]^2 \left[ (P(k,\mu))_{,\alpha\gamma} (P(k,\mu))_{,\beta} \right] \\ &\quad - V_s \left[ \frac{n(z)}{n(z)P(k,\mu)+1} \right]^3 \left[ (P(k,\mu))_{,\alpha} (P(k,\mu))_{,\beta} (P(k,\mu))_{,\gamma} \right] \\ &\quad + \frac{V_s}{2} \left[ \frac{n(z)}{n(z)P(k,\mu)+1} \right]^2 \left[ (P(k,\mu))_{,\alpha} (P(k,\mu))_{,\beta\gamma} \right] \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial V_s}{\partial p_\gamma} \left[ \frac{n(z)}{n(z)P(k,\mu)+1} \right]^2 \left[ (P(k,\mu))_{,\alpha} (P(k,\mu))_{,\beta} \right]\end{aligned}\tag{2.85}$$

In terms of the general Fisher tensors and  $\bar{C} = C^{-1}(k, z)$  this takes a compact form:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial F_{\alpha\beta}}{\partial p_\gamma} &= \frac{V_s}{3} \bar{C}^2 S_{\beta\alpha\gamma} \\ &\quad - V_s \bar{C}^3 J_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \\ &\quad + \frac{V_s}{3} \bar{C}^2 S_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \\ &\quad + \frac{\partial \ln V_s}{\partial p_\gamma} \bar{C}^2 F_{\alpha\beta}\end{aligned}\tag{2.86}$$

Using eq. (2.86) we can investigate how the changing of the assumed fiducial cosmology affects the forecasted errors on the parameters, in other words, the errors on the errors by assuming a "wrong" fiducial. This will be the subject of a future publication.

## Chapter 3

# Linear and non-linear Modified Gravity forecasts

### 3.1 Introduction

<sup>1</sup> Future large scale structure surveys will be able to measure with percent precision the parameters governing the evolution of matter. On the theoretical side, while many Modified Gravity models are still allowed by type Ia supernova (SNIa) and Cosmic Microwave Background (CMB) data Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b; structure formation can help us to distinguish among them and the standard scenario, thanks to their signatures on the matter power spectrum, in the linear and mildly non-linear regimes (for some examples of recent MG forecasts, see Amendola and others, 2013; Bielefeld, Huterer, and Linder, 2014; Casas et al., 2015).

In section 1.5.4 we have defined  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  and have shown how to parameterize them in three different ways. Section 3.2 discusses our treatment for the linear and mildly non-linear regime. Linear spectra are obtained from a modified Boltzmann code Hojjati, Pogosian, and Zhao, 2011; the mild non-linear regime (up to  $k \sim 0.5 \text{ h/Mpc}$ ) compares two methods to emulate the non-linear power spectrum: the commonly used Halofit Smith et al., 2003; Takahashi et al., 2012, and a semi-analytic prescription to model the screening mechanisms present in Modified Gravity models Hu and Sawicki, 2007. Section 3.3 discusses the results obtained for the redshift binned parameterization both for Galaxy Clustering and for Weak Lensing in the linear and non-linear cases. We describe our method to decorrelate the errors in section 3.3.4. The results for the other two time parameterizations are instead discussed in sections 3.6.1 and 3.6.2, both for Weak Lensing and Galaxy Clustering in the linear and mildly non-linear regimes. To test the effect of our non-linear prescription, we show in section 3.6.3 the impact of different choices of the non-linear prescription parameters on the cosmological parameter estimation.

We will consider forecasts for the planned surveys Euclid, SKA1 and SKA2 and a subset of DESI, DESI-ELG, using as priors the constraints from recent *Planck* data (see also Alonso et al., 2016; Baker and Bull, 2015; Bull, 2015; Gleyzes et al., 2016; Hojjati et al., 2012) for previous works that address forecasts in Modified Gravity.

In Alonso et al., 2016; Bull, 2015; Gleyzes et al., 2016 the authors used a similar time parameterization in which the Modified Gravity parameters depend on the time evolution of the dark energy fraction. In Bull, 2015 an extra parameter accounts for a scale-dependent  $\mu$ : their treatment keeps  $\eta$  (called  $\gamma$  in their paper)

---

<sup>1</sup>This chapter is based on a publication by the author in: Casas, S., Kunz, M., Martinelli, M. and Pettorino, V.; Linear and non-linear Modified Gravity forecasts with future surveys. ; Preprint: arXiv:1703.01271 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc] (2017); Submitted to the Journal: Physics of the Dark Universe, Elsevier.

fixed and equal to 1; it uses linear power spectra up to  $k_{\max}(z)$  with  $k_{\max}(z=0) = 0.14/\text{Mpc} \approx 0.2 \text{ h/Mpc}$ . In Gleyzes et al., 2016 the authors also use a combination of Galaxy Clustering, Weak Lensing and ISW cross-correlation to constrain Modified Gravity in the Effective Field Theory formalism Gubitosi, Piazza, and Vernizzi, 2013. In Bellini et al., 2016 and Alonso et al., 2016 a similar parameterization was used to constrain the Horndeski functions Bellini and Sawicki, 2014 with present data and future forecasts respectively, in the linear regime.

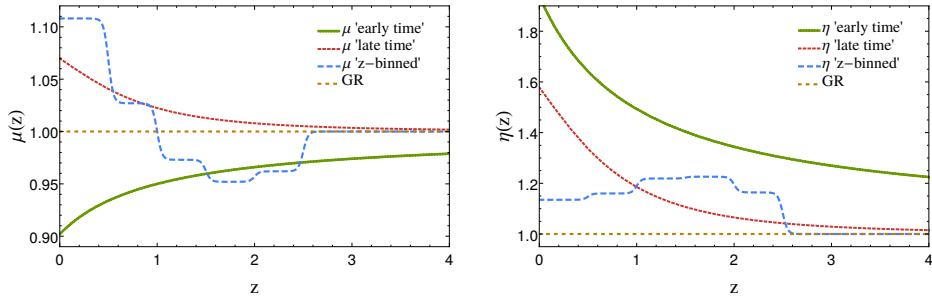
For the late-time parameterization, the set of free parameters we consider is:  $\theta = \{\Omega_m, \Omega_b, h, \ln 10^{10} A_s, n_s, E_{11}, E_{22}\}$ , where  $E_{11}$  and  $E_{22}$  determine the amplitude of the variation with respect to  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$ . As fiducial cosmology we use the values shown in Table 3.1, columns 1 and 2, i.e. the marginalized parameter values obtained fitting these models with recent *Planck* data; notice that these results differ slightly from the *Planck* analysis in Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b for the same parameterization, because we don't consider here the effect of massive neutrinos.

For the early time parameterization we have  $E_{11}$  and  $E_{21}$  which determine the amplitude of the deviation from GR at present time ( $a = 0$ ) and 2 additional parameters ( $E_{12}$ ,  $E_{22}$ ), which determine the time dependence of the  $\mu(a)$  and  $\eta(a)$  functions for earlier times. The fiducial values for this model, obtained from the *Planck*+BSH best fit is given in columns 3 and 4 of Table 3.1.

Late time		Early time		Redshift Binned	
Parameter	Fiducial	Parameter	Fiducial	Parameter	Fiducial
$\Omega_c$	0.254	$\Omega_c$	0.256	$\Omega_c$	0.254
$\Omega_b$	0.048	$\Omega_b$	0.048	$\Omega_b$	0.048
$n_s$	0.969	$n_s$	0.969	$n_s$	0.969
$\ln 10^{10} A_s$	3.063	$\ln 10^{10} A_s$	3.091	$\ln 10^{10} A_s$	3.057
$h$	0.682	$h$	0.682	$h$	0.682
$E_{11}$	0.100	$E_{11}$	-0.098	$\mu_1$	1.108
$E_{22}$	0.829	$E_{12}$	0.096	$\mu_2$	1.027
		$E_{21}$	0.940	$\mu_3$	0.973
		$E_{22}$	-0.894	$\mu_4$	0.952
				$\mu_5$	0.962
				$\eta_1$	1.135
				$\eta_2$	1.160
				$\eta_3$	1.219
				$\eta_4$	1.226
				$\eta_5$	1.164

**TABLE 3.1:** Fiducial values for the Modified Gravity parameterizations and the redshift-binned model of  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  used in this work. The DE related parameterization contains two extra parameters  $E_{11}$  and  $E_{22}$  with respect to GR; the early-time parametrization depends on 4 extra parameters  $E_{11}$ ,  $E_{12}$ ,  $E_{22}$  and  $E_{21}$  with respect to GR; the redshift-binned model contains 10 extra parameters, corresponding to the amplitudes  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  in five redshift bins. In this work we will use alternatively and for simplicity the notation  $\ell A_s \equiv \ln(10^{10} A_s)$ . The fiducial values are obtained performing a Monte Carlo analysis of *Planck*+BAO+SNe+H<sub>0</sub> (BSH) data Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b.

A second and more model-independent approach is to specify the time evolution of the functions  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  without any parameterization. To this purpose we



**FIGURE 3.1:** The Modified Gravity functions  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  as a function of redshift  $z$  for each of the models considered in this work, evaluated at the fiducials specified in table 3.1. In light long-dashed blue lines, the ‘redshift binned’ model (eqs. (1.67) to (1.69)). In short-dashed red lines the late-time parameterization (eqs. (1.63) to (1.64)) and in green solid lines the early-time parameterization (eqs. (1.65) to (1.66)). Finally the medium-dashed orange line represents the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM model (GR) for reference.

divide the redshift range  $0 \leq z \leq 3$  in 6 redshift bins and we consider the values  $\mu(z_i)$  and  $\eta(z_i)$  at the right limiting redshift  $z_i$  of each bin as free parameters, thus with the  $i$  index spanning the values  $\{0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0\}$ . The form of the binning function and the precise assumptions we make, have been specified in section 1.5.4.2. We set the first five amplitudes of  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  as free parameters, thus the set we consider is:  $\theta = \{\Omega_m, \Omega_b, h, \ln 10^{10} A_s, n_s, \{\mu_i\}, \{\eta_i\}\}$ , with  $i$  an index going from 1 to 5. We take as fiducial cosmology the values shown in Tab. 3.1 columns 5 and 6.

We only modify the evolution of perturbations and assume that the background expansion is well described by the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM expansion law for a flat universe with given values of  $\Omega_m$ ,  $\Omega_b$  and  $h$ .

## 3.2 The power spectrum in Modified Gravity

### 3.2.1 The linear power spectrum

In this work we will use linear power spectra calculated with MGMCAMB Hojjati, Pogosian, and Zhao, 2011; Zhao et al., 2009, a modified version of the Boltzmann code CAMB Lewis, Challinor, and Lasenby, 2000. We do so, as MGMCAMB offers the possibility to input directly any parameterization of  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  without requiring further assumptions: MGMCAMB uses our Eqns. (??) and (??) in the Einstein-Boltzmann system of equations, providing the modified evolution of matter perturbations, corresponding to our choice of the gravitational potential functions. Non-relativistic particles like cold dark matter are accelerated by the gradient of  $\Psi$ , so that especially the redshift space distortions are sensitive to the modification given by  $\mu(a, k)$ . For relativistic particles like photons and neutrinos on the other hand, the combination of  $\Phi + \Psi$  (and therefore  $\Sigma$ ) enters the equations of motion. The impact on the matter power spectrum is more complicated, as the dark matter density contrast is linked via the relativistic Poisson equation to  $\Phi$ . In addition, an early-time modification of  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  can also affect the baryon distribution through their coupling to radiation during that period. As already mentioned above, we will not consider the  $k$ -dependence of  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  in this work and our modifications with respect to standard GR will be only functions of the scale factor  $a$ .

### 3.2.2 Non-linear power spectra

Computing the non-linear power spectrum in standard GR is still an open question, and even more so when the Poisson equations are modified, as it is in the case in Modified Gravity theories. A solution to this problem is to calculate the evolution of matter perturbations in an N-body simulation Fosalba et al., 2013a; Heitmann et al., 2014; Lawrence et al., 2010; Springel, 2005; Takahashi et al., 2012, however, this procedure is time-consuming and computationally expensive.

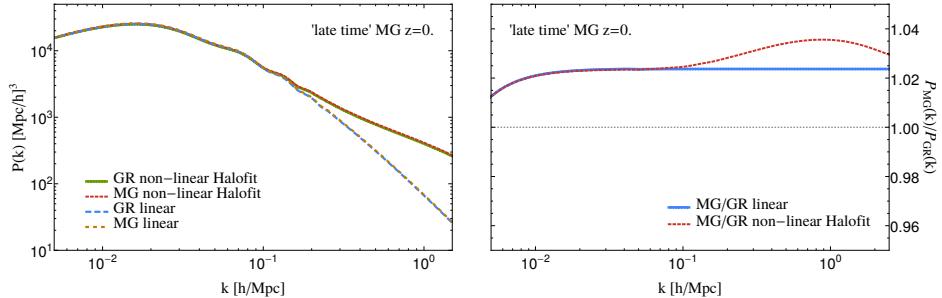
Because of these issues, several previous analyses have been done with a conservative removal of the information at small scales (see for example the *Planck* Dark Energy paper Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b, several CFHTLenS analysis Heymans and others, 2013; Kitching and others, 2014 or the previous PCA analysis by Hojjati et al., 2012). However, future surveys will probe an extended range of scales, therefore removing non-linear scales from the analysis would strongly reduce the constraining power of these surveys. Moreover, at small scales we also expect to find means of discriminating between different Modified Gravity models, such as the onset of screening mechanisms needed to recover GR at small scales where experiments strongly constrain deviations from it. For these reasons it is crucial to find methods which will allow us to investigate, at least approximately, the non-linear power spectrum.

Attempts to model the non-linear power spectrum semi-analytically in Modified Gravity have been investigated for f(R) theories in Taruya et al., 2014; Zhao, 2014, for coupled dark energy in Casas et al., 2015; Saracco et al., 2010b; Vollmer, Amendola, and Catena, 2014 and for growing neutrino models in Brouzakis et al., 2011. Typically they rely on non-linear expansions of the perturbations using resummation techniques based on Pietroni, 2008a; Taruya and Hiramatsu, 2008 or on fitting formulae based on N-Body simulations Bird, Viel, and Haehnelt, 2011; Casas et al., 2015; Takahashi et al., 2012. A similar analysis is not available for the model-independent approach considered in this paper. In order to give at least a qualitative estimate of what the importance of non-linearities would be for constraining these Modified Gravity models, we will adopt in the rest of the paper a method which interpolates between the standard approach to non linear scales in GR and the same applied to MG theories.

#### 3.2.2.1 Halofit

We describe here the effect of applying the standard approach to non linearities to MG theories. This is done using the revised Halofit Takahashi et al., 2012, based on Smith et al., 2003, which is a fitting function of tens of numerical parameters that reproduces the output of a certain set of  $\Lambda$ CDM N-body simulations in a specific range in parameter space as a function of the linear power spectrum. This fitting function is reliable with an accuracy of better than 10% at scales larger than  $k \lesssim 1\text{h/Mpc}$  and redshifts in between  $0 \leq z \leq 10$  (see Takahashi et al., 2012 for more details). This fitting function can be used within Boltzmann codes to estimate the non-linear contribution which corrects the linear power spectrum as a function of scale and time. We will use the Halofit fitting function as a way of approximating the non-linear power spectrum in our models even though it is really only valid for  $\Lambda$ CDM. In Fig. 3.2, the left panel shows a comparison between the linear and non-linear power spectra calculated by MGCAMB in two different models, our fiducial late-time model (as from Table 3.1) and GR, both sharing the same  $\Lambda$ CDM

parameters. At small length scales (large  $k$ ), the non-linear deviation is clearly visible at scales  $k \gtrsim 0.3 \text{ h/Mpc}$  and both MG and GR seem to overlap due to the logarithmic scale used. In the right panel, we can see the ratio between MG and GR for both linear and non-linear power spectra, using the same  $5 \Lambda\text{CDM}$  parameters  $\{\Omega_m, \Omega_b, h, A_s, n_s\}$ . We can see clearly that MG in the non-linear regime, using the standard Halofit, shows a distinctive feature at scales in between  $0.2 \lesssim k \lesssim 2$ . This feature however, does not come from higher order perturbations induced by the modified Poisson equations (??, 1.61), because Halofit, as explained above, is calibrated with simulations within the  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  model and does not contain any information from Modified Gravity. The feature seen here is caused by the different growth rate of perturbations in Modified Gravity, that yields then a different evolution of non-linear structures.



**FIGURE 3.2:** **Left:** matter power spectra computed with MGCAMB (linear) and MGCAMB+Halofit (non-linear), illustrating the impact of non-linearities at different scales. As an illustrative example, MG in this plot corresponds to the fiducial model in the late-time parametrization defined in Eq. (1.63). All curves are computed at  $z = 0$ . The green solid line is the GR fiducial in the non-linear case, the blue long-dashed line is also GR but in the linear case. The short-dashed red line is the MG fiducial in the non-linear case and the medium-dashed brown line the MG fiducial in the linear case. **Right:** in order to have a closer look at small scales, we plot here the ratio of the MG power spectrum to the GR power spectrum for the linear (blue solid) and non-linear (red short-dashed) cases separately. The blue solid line compared to the horizontal grey dashed line, shows the effect of Modified Gravity when taking only linear spectra into account. While the red dashed line, which represents the non-linear case, shows that the ratio to GR presents clearly a bump that peaks around  $k \approx 1.0 \text{ h/Mpc}$ , meaning that the power spectrum in MG differs at most 4% from the non-linear power spectrum in GR. We will see later that we are able to discriminate between these two models using future surveys, especially when non-linear scales ( $k \gtrsim 0.1 \text{ h/Mpc}$ ) are included.

### 3.2.2.2 Prescription for mildly non-linear scales including screening

As discussed above, modifications to the  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  potentials make the use of Halofit to compute the evolution at non linear scales unreliable. In order to take into account the non-linear contribution to the power spectrum in Modified Gravity, we investigate here a different method, which starts from the consideration that whenever we modify  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  with respect to GR, we modify the strength of gravitational attraction in a way universal to all species: this means that, similarly to the case of scalar-tensor or  $f(R)$  theories, we need to assume the existence of a non-perturbative screening mechanism, acting at small scales, that guarantees agreement with solar system experiments. In other words, it is reasonable to think that

the non-linear power spectrum will have to match GR at sufficiently small scales, while at large scales it is modified. Of course, without having a specific model in mind, it remains arbitrary how the interpolation between the small scale regime and the large scale regime is done. In this paper, we adopt the Hu & Sawicki (HS) Parametrized Post-Friedmann prescription proposed in Hu and Sawicki, 2007, which was used for the case of  $f(R)$  theories previously by Zhao, 2014. Given a MG model, this prescription interpolates between the non-linear power spectrum in Modified Gravity (which is in our case just the linear MG power spectrum corrected with standard Halofit,  $P_{\text{HMG}}$ ) and the non-linear power spectrum in GR calculated with Halofit ( $P_{\text{HGR}}$ ). The resulting power spectrum will be denoted as  $P_{\text{nlHS}}$

$$P_{\text{nlHS}}(k, z) = \frac{P_{\text{HMG}}(k, z) + c_{\text{nl}} S_L^2(k, z) P_{\text{HGR}}(k, z)}{1 + c_{\text{nl}} S_L^2(k, z)}, \quad (3.1)$$

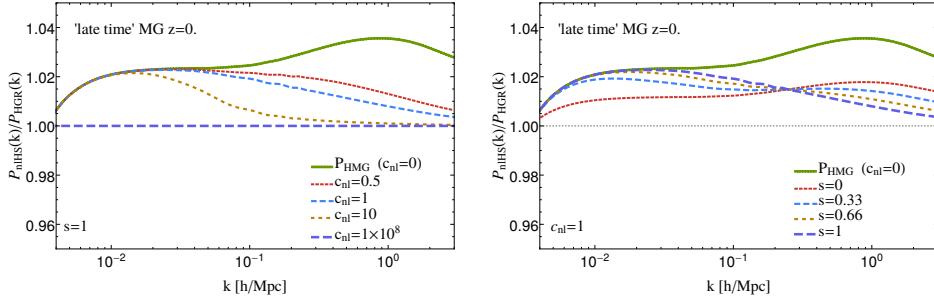
with

$$S_L^2(k, z) = \left[ \frac{k^3}{2\pi^2} P_{\text{LMG}}(k, z) \right]^s. \quad (3.2)$$

The weighting function  $S_L$  used in the interpolation quantifies the onset of non-linear clustering and it is constructed using the linear power spectrum in Modified Gravity ( $P_{\text{LMG}}$ ). The constant  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and the constant exponent  $s$  are free parameters. In Figure 3.3 we show the ratio  $P_{\text{nlHS}}/P_{\text{HGR}}$ , which illustrates the relative difference between the non-linear HS prescription in MG and the Halofit non-linear power spectrum in GR, for different values of  $c_{\text{nl}}$  (left panel) and different values of  $s$  (right panel). The parameter  $c_{\text{nl}}$  controls at which scale there is a transition into a non-linear regime in which standard GR is valid (this can be the case when a screening mechanism is activated);  $s$  controls the smoothness of the transition and is in principle a model and redshift dependent quantity. When  $c_{\text{nl}} = 0$  we recover the Modified Gravity power spectrum with Halofit  $P_{\text{HMG}}$ ; when  $c_{\text{nl}} \rightarrow \infty$  we recover the non-linear power spectrum in GR calculated with Halofit  $P_{\text{HGR}}$ . In Koyama, Taruya, and Hiramatsu, 2009; Zhao, 2014; Zhao, Li, and Koyama, 2011, the  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  constants were obtained fitting expression (3.1) to N-Body simulations or to a semi-analytic perturbative approach. In the case of  $f(R)$ ,  $s = 1/3$  seems to match very well the result from simulations up to a scale of  $k = 0.5\text{h}/\text{Mpc}$  Koyama, Taruya, and Hiramatsu, 2009. A relatively good agreement up to such small scales is enough for our purposes. In the absence of N-Body simulations or semi-analytic methods available for the models investigated in this work, we will assume unity for both parameters, which is a natural choice, and we will test in Section 3.6.3 how our results vary for different values of these parameters, namely  $c_{\text{nl}} = \{0.1, 0.5, 1, 3\}$  and  $s = \{0, 1/3, 2/3, 1\}$ . This will give a qualitative estimate of the impact of non-linearities on the determination of cosmological parameters.

### 3.2.3 CMB *Planck* priors

Alongside the information brought by LSS probes, we also include CMB priors on the parameterizations considered. In order to obtain these, we analyze the binned and parameterized approaches described in Section ?? with the *Planck*+BSH combination of CMB and background (BAO+SN-Ia+ $H_0$ ) datasets discussed in the *Planck* Dark Energy and Modified Gravity paper Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b. We use a Markov Chain Monte Carlo (MCMC) approach, using the publicly available code COSMOMC Lewis, 2013; Lewis and Bridle, 2002, interfaced with



**FIGURE 3.3:** The ratio of the Modified Gravity non-linear power spectrum using the HS prescription by Hu and Sawicki, 2007 ( $P_{\text{nlHS}}$ ) with respect to the GR+Halofit fiducial non-linear power spectrum  $P_{\text{HGR}}$ , for different values of  $c_{\text{nl}}$  (left panel) and  $s$  (right panel), illustrated in Eqns.(3.1, 3.2). The value  $c_{\text{nl}} = 0$  (green solid line) corresponds to MG+Halofit  $P_{\text{HMG}}$ . All curves are calculated at  $z = 0$ . **Left:** We show the ratio for  $c_{\text{nl}} = \{0.5, 1.0, 10, 10^8\}$ , plotted as short-dashed red, medium-dashed blue, short-dashed brown and medium-dashed purple lines respectively. When  $c_{\text{nl}} \rightarrow \infty$ , Eqn. (3.1) corresponds to the limit of  $P_{\text{HGR}}$  and therefore the ratio is just 1. The effect of the HS prescription is to grasp some of the features of the non-linear power spectrum at mildly non-linear scales induced by Modified Gravity, taking into account that at very small scales, a screening mechanism might yield again just a purely GR non-linear power spectrum. The parameter  $c_{\text{nl}}$  interpolates between these two cases. **Right:** in this panel we show the effect of the parameter  $s$ , for  $s = \{0, 0.33, 0.66, 1\}$  (short-dashed red, medium-dashed blue, short-dashed brown and long-dashed purple, respectively). Both parameters need to be fitted with simulations in order to yield a reliable match with the shape of the non-linear power spectrum in Modified Gravity, as it was done in Zhao, Li, and Koyama, 2011 and references therein. The grey dashed line marks the constant value of 1.

our modified version of MGCAMB. The MCMC chains sample the parameter vector  $\Theta$  which contains the standard cosmological parameters  $\{\omega_b \equiv \Omega_b h^2, \omega_c \equiv \Omega_c h^2, \theta_{\text{MC}}, \tau, n_s, \ln 10^{10} A_s\}$  to which we add the  $E_{ij}$  parameters when we parameterize the time evolution of  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  with continuous functions of the scale factor, and the  $\mu_i, \eta_i$  parameters in the binned case. On top of these, also the 17 nuisance parameters of the *Planck* analysis are included. From the MCMC analysis of the *Planck* likelihood we obtain a covariance matrix in terms of the parameters  $\Theta$ . We marginalize over the nuisance parameters and over the optical depth  $\tau$  since this parameter does not enter into the physics of large scale structure formation.

$\theta$  is usually the ratio of sound horizon to the angular diameter distance at the time of decoupling. Since calculating the decoupling time  $z_{\text{CMB}}$  is relatively time consuming, as it involves the minimization of the optical transfer function, COSMOMC uses instead an approximate quantity  $\theta_{\text{MC}}$  based on the following fitting formula from Hu and Sugiyama, 1996

$$\begin{aligned} z_{\text{CMB}} &= 1048 \times (1 + 0.00124 \omega_b^{-0.738}) \\ &\quad \times (1 + 0.0783 \omega_b^{-0.238} / (1 + 39.5 \omega_b^{0.763})) \\ &\quad \times (\omega_d + \omega_b)^{0.560 / (1 + 21.1 \omega_b^{1.81})} \end{aligned} \quad (3.3)$$

where  $\omega_d \equiv (\Omega_c + \Omega_\nu)h^2$ . The sound horizon is defined as

$$r_s(z_{\text{CMB}}) = cH_0^{-1} \int_{z_{\text{CMB}}}^{\infty} dz \frac{c_s}{E(z)} \quad (3.4)$$

where the sound speed is  $c_s = 1/\sqrt{3(1 + \bar{R}_b a)}$  with the baryon-radiation ratio being  $\bar{R}_b a = 3\rho_b/4\rho_\gamma$ .  $\bar{R}_b = 31500\Omega_b h^2(T_{\text{CMB}}/2.7\text{K})^{-4}$ . However, CAMB approximates it as  $\bar{R}_b a = 30000a\Omega_b h^2$ .

Therefore we first marginalize the covariance matrix over the nuisance parameters and the parameter  $\tau$ , which cannot be constrained by LSS observations. Then, we invert the resulting matrix, to obtain a *Planck* prior Fisher matrix and then use a Jacobian to convert between the MCMC parameter basis  $\Theta_i$  and the GC-WL parameter basis  $\theta_i$ . We use the formulas above for the sound horizon  $r_s$  and the angular diameter distance  $d_A$  to calculate the derivatives of  $\theta_{\text{MC}}$  with respect to the parameters of interest. Our Jacobian is then simply (see Appendix ?? for details)

$$J_{ij} = \frac{\partial \Theta_i}{\partial \theta_j}. \quad (3.5)$$

### 3.3 Results: Euclid forecasts for redshift binned parameters

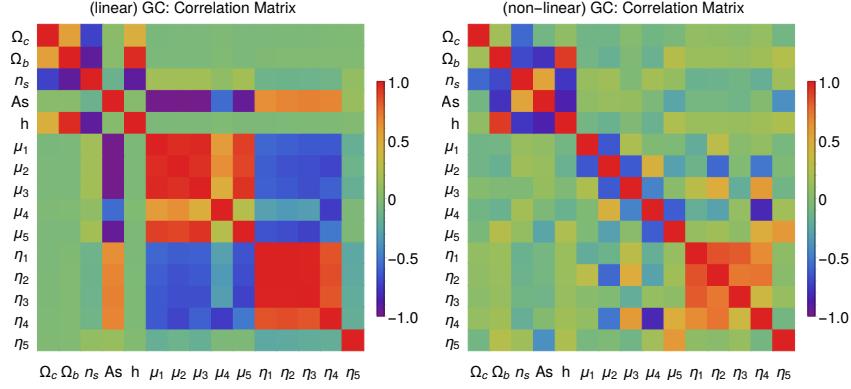
In this section we analyze the Modified Gravity functions  $\mu(a)$  and  $\eta(a)$ , described in Section ??, when they are allowed to vary freely in five redshift bins.

For this purpose, we calculate a Fisher matrix of fifteen parameters: five for the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM parameters  $\{\Omega_m, \Omega_b, h, \ln 10^{10} A_s, n_s\}$ , five for  $\mu$  (one for each bin amplitude  $\mu_i$ ) and five for  $\eta$  (one for each bin amplitude  $\eta_i$ ), corresponding to the 5 redshift bins  $z=\{0-0.5, 0.5-1.0, 1.0-1.5, 1.5-2.0, 2.0-2.5\}$ . The fiducial values for all fifteen parameters were calculated running a Markov-Chain-Monte-Carlo with *Planck* likelihood data and can be found in Table 3.1.

We first show the constraints on our 15 parameters for Galaxy Clustering (GC) forecasts in subsection 3.3.1, while in subsection 3.3.2 we report results for Weak Lensing (WL). In subsection 3.3.3, we comment on the combination of forecasts for GC+WL together with *Planck* data. All forecasts are performed using Euclid Redbook specifications. Other surveys will be considered for the other two time parameterizations in section 3.6.1.6 and 3.6.2.3. For each case, we show the correlation matrix obtained from the covariance matrix and argue that the redshift-binned parameters show a strong correlation, therefore we illustrate the decorrelation procedure for the covariance matrix in subsection 3.3.4 where we also include combined GC+WL and GC+WL+*Planck* cases.

#### 3.3.1 Euclid Galaxy Clustering Survey

For the Galaxy Clustering survey, we give results for two cases, one using only linear power spectra up to a maximum wavevector of  $k_{\text{max}} = 0.15 \text{ h/Mpc}$  and another one using non-linear power spectra up to  $k_{\text{max}} = 0.5 \text{ h/Mpc}$ , as obtained by using the HS parameterization of Eqn. (3.1). For the redshift-binned case, we will report forecasts only for a Euclid survey, using Euclid Redbook specifications which are detailed in section 2.4.1.



**FIGURE 3.4:** Correlation matrix  $P$  defined in (2.39) obtained from the covariance matrix in the MG-binning case, for a Galaxy Clustering Fisher forecast using Euclid Redbook specifications. **Left panel:** Linear forecasts. Here there are strong positive correlations among the  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  parameters and anti-correlations between  $\ln 10^{10} A_s$  and the  $\mu_i$  parameters, as well as between  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$ . The FoC in this case is  $\approx 65$ . (see Eqn. (2.41) for its definition). **Right panel:** Non-linear forecasts using the HS prescription. Interestingly, the anti-correlations between  $\ln 10^{10} A_s$  and  $\mu_i$  have disappeared, as well as the correlations among the  $\mu_i$  parameters. The FoC is in this case  $\approx 32$ , meaning that the variables are much less correlated than in the linear case. This is due to the fact that taking into account non-linear structure formation breaks degeneracies between the primordial amplitude parameter and the modifications to the Poisson equation.

We calculate the Fisher matrix for the 15 parameters  $\theta = \{\Omega_m, \Omega_b, h, \ln 10^{10} A_s, n_s, \mu_i, \eta_i\}$  where  $\eta_i$  and  $\mu_i$  represent ten independent parameters, one for each function at each of the 5 redshift bins corresponding to the redshifts  $z=\{0-0.5, 0.5-1.0, 1.0-1.5, 1.5-2.0, 2.0-2.5\}$ . As a standard procedure, we marginalize over the unknown bias parameters. From the covariance matrix, defined previously in Eqn. (2.36), we obtain the correlation matrix  $P_{ij}$  defined in Eqn. (2.39) for the set of parameters  $\theta_i$ . In Figure 3.4 we show the matrix  $P_{ij}$  in the linear (left panel) and non-linear-HS (right panel) cases. Redder (bluer) colors signal stronger correlations (anti-correlations).

A covariance matrix that contains strong correlations among parameter A and B, means that the experimental or observational setting has difficulties distinguishing between A and B for the assumed theoretical model, i.e. this represents a parameter degeneracy. Therefore if for example parameter A is poorly constrained, then parameter B will be badly constrained as well. The appearance of correlations among parameters is linked to the non-diagonal elements of the covariance matrix. Subsequently, this means that the fully marginalized errors on a single parameter, will be larger if there are strong correlations and will be smaller (closer to the value of the fully maximized errors) if the correlations are negligible.

In the linear case,  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  parameters show correlations among each other, while the primordial amplitude parameter  $\ln 10^{10} A_s$  exhibits a strong anti-correlation with all the  $\mu_i$ . This can be explained considering that a larger growth of structures in linear theory can also be mimicked with a larger initial amplitude of density fluctuations.

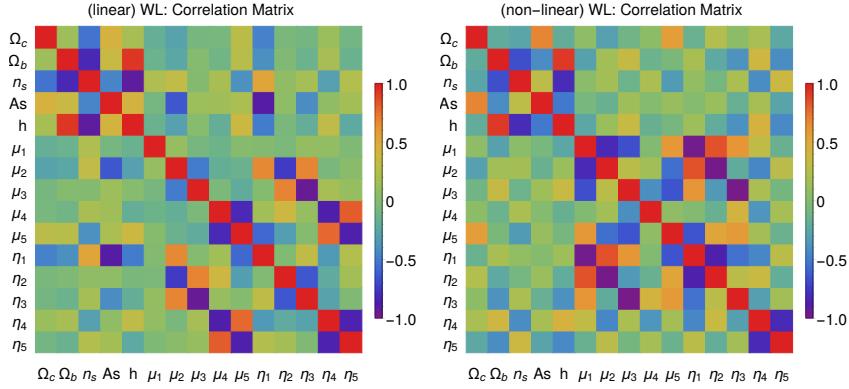
Interestingly, including non-linear scales in the analysis (right panel of Fig. 3.4) leads to a strong suppression of the correlations among the  $\mu_i$ . Also the correlation between these and  $\ln 10^{10} A_s$  is suppressed as a change in the initial amplitude of the power spectrum is not able to compensate for a modified Poisson equation when non-linear evolution is considered.

As discussed in Section 2.4.5, we can also express the difference between the correlation matrix of the linear forecast and the non-linear forecast in a more quantitative way, by computing the determinant of the correlation matrix, or equivalently the FoC (2.41). If the correlations were negligible, this determinant would be equal to one (and therefore its FoC would be 0), while if the correlations were strong, the determinant would be closer to zero with a corresponding large positive value of the FoC. For the linear forecast, the FoC is about 62, while for the non-linear forecast, it is much smaller at approximately 35. In Table 3.2 we show the  $1\sigma$  constraints obtained on  $\ln(10^{10} A_s)$  and on the  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  parameters, both in the linear and non-linear cases for a Euclid Redbook GC survey (top rows). While linear GC alone ( $k_{\max} = 0.15 \text{ h/Mpc}$ ) is not very constraining in any bin, the inclusion of non-linear scales ( $k_{\max} = 0.5 \text{ h/Mpc}$ ) drastically reduces errors on the  $\mu_i$  parameters: the first three bins in  $\mu_i$  ( $0 < z < 1.5$ ) are the best constrained, to less than 10%, with the corresponding  $\eta_i$  constrained at 20% by non-linear GC alone. This is also visible in the FoM which increases by 19 nits ('natural units', similar to bits but using base  $e$  instead of base 2), nearly 4 nits per redshift bin on average, when including the non-linear scales. The fact that the error on  $\ln 10^{10} A_s$  improves from 90% to 0.68% shows that the decorrelation induced by the non-linearities breaks the degeneracy with the amplitude and therefore improves considerably the determination of cosmological parameters. This shows that it is important to include non-linear scales in GC surveys (and not only in Weak Lensing ones, which is usually more expected and will be shown in the next subsection).

### 3.3.2 Euclid Weak Lensing Survey

In the case of Weak Lensing, the linear forecast is performed with linear power spectra up to a maximum multipole  $\ell_{\max} = 1000$ , while the non-linear forecast is performed with non-linear spectra up to a maximum multipole of  $\ell_{\max} = 5000$ , as explained in section ???. Since we limit our power spectrum to a maximum in  $k$ -space, as explained in section ??, these multipole values are not reached at every redshift. Like for GC, also for WL it is very important to include information from the non-linear power spectrum, since in that range will lie most of the constraining power of next-generation surveys like Euclid. In Figure 3.5 we show the correlation matrices for the linear (left panel) and non-linear (right panel) Fisher Matrix forecasts. In this case, as opposed to the GC correlation matrices, it is not visually clear which case is more correlated than the other. At a closer look, in the linear case we can observe strong anti-correlations between the  $\mu_j$  and  $\eta_j$  parameters for  $j = 2, 3, 4, 5$  and an anti-correlation between  $\eta_1$  and the primordial amplitude  $\ln 10^{10} A_s$ . In the non-linear case, the primordial amplitude parameter is effectively decorrelated from the Modified Gravity parameters, and the anti correlation between  $\mu_j$  and the  $\eta_j$  affects the first three bins (effectively increasing degeneracies in the first bin). The anti-correlation between these two sets of parameters is expected, since WL is sensitive to  $\Sigma$ , which is a product of  $\eta$  and  $\mu$ , c.f. Eqn. (1.62). The decrease of correlation when going from the linear to the non-linear case is confirmed, also quantitatively, by the FoC: the one for the linear case is of  $\approx 69$ , larger than the one for the non-linear case  $\approx 32$ . Once again, the inclusion of non-linear scales breaks degeneracies, especially among the linear amplitude of the power spectrum and the MG parameters.

Table 3.2 shows the corresponding  $1\sigma$  marginalized errors on  $\ln(10^{10} A_s)$  and on the  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$ , both in the linear and non-linear cases for a Euclid Redbook WL



**FIGURE 3.5:** Correlation matrix obtained from the covariance matrix in the MG-binning case, for a Weak Lensing Fisher Matrix forecast using Euclid Redbook specifications. **Left panel:** linear forecasts. Strong anti-correlations are present between the  $\mu_i$  and the  $\eta_i$  parameters for the same value of  $i$  in 2,3,4,5. The amplitude  $ln(10^{10} As)$  parameter is mostly uncorrelated except with  $\eta_1$ . The FoC (2.41) in this case is approximately 69. **Right panel:** non-linear forecasts using the HS prescription. Here the same trend as in the linear case is present, with just subtle changes. The FoC in this case is about 32, meaning that the variables are indeed less correlated than in the linear case. The parameter  $ln(10^{10} As)$  is effectively not correlated to other parameters, and the anti-correlation of  $\mu_i$  and the  $\eta_i$  for the same value of the index  $i$  is present in the first three bins. The anti-correlation between these two sets of parameters is expected, since WL is sensitive to the Weyl potential  $\Sigma$ , which is a product of  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ .

survey. As in the case of GC, linear WL cannot constrain alone any of the amplitudes of the Modified Gravity parameters  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  for any redshift bin. Being able to include non-linear scales improves constraints on the amplitude  $ln(10^{10} As)$  by a factor 100. The  $1\sigma$  errors on  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  improve up to one order of magnitude, with the FoM increasing by 17 nits, although remaining quite unconstraining for Modified Gravity parameters in all redshift bins. Notice, however, that the  $1\sigma$  error on  $\mu_1$  from WL in the linear case is slightly smaller than in the non-linear case. This can be attributed to the fact that in the linear case,  $\mu_1$  is uncorrelated to any other parameter, as shown in Figure 3.5 and on that specific bin ( $0 < z < 0.5$ ) non-linearities don't seem to improve the constraints on this parameter.

### 3.3.3 Combining Euclid Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing, with *Planck* data

The combination of Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing is expected to be very powerful for Modified Gravity parameters as they measure two different combinations of  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ , thus breaking their degeneracy as illustrated in Fig. 3.17. This is shown in Table 3.2, where the sensitivity drastically increases with respect to the two separate probes, especially in the low redshifts bins ( $0 < z < 1.5$ ), where the lensing signal is dominant. Adding non-linearities further doubles the FoM. The *Planck* data constrains mostly the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM parameters and has only a limited ability to constrain the MG sector. However, the additional information breaks parameter degeneracies and in this way significantly decreases the uncertainties on all parameters, so that the linear GC+WL+*Planck* is comparable to the

non-linear GC+WL. Also, quantitatively, the correlation among parameters is reduced by combining GC+WL with *Planck* data. The FoC in this case is of  $\approx 22$ . We also see in Table 3.2 that the differences between the non-linear prescription adopted here (nl-HS) and a straightforward application of Halofit to the MG case (nl-Halofit) is not very large. We will investigate further the impact of the parameters used in the non-linear prescription in section 3.6.3.

### 3.3.4 Decorrelation of covariance matrices and the Zero-phase Component Analysis

In the previous subsections we highlighted how the MG parameters and the amplitude of the primordial power spectrum exhibit significant correlations and showed how including non-linearities helps to decorrelate them. Even without including non-linearities, however, it is interesting to investigate how we can completely decorrelate the parameters, identifying in this way those parameter combinations which are best constrained by data.

Given again a  $d$ -dimensional vector  $p$  of random variables (our originally correlated parameters), we can calculate its covariance matrix  $\mathbf{C}$  defined in Eqn. (2.36). The process of decorrelation is the process of making the matrix  $\mathbf{C}$  a diagonal matrix.

Let us define some important identities. The covariance matrix can be decomposed in its eigenvalues (the elements of a diagonal matrix  $\Lambda$ ) and eigenvectors (the rows of an orthogonal matrix  $U$ ).

$$\mathbf{C} = U\Lambda U^T \Leftrightarrow \mathbf{F} = U\Lambda^{-1}U^T , \quad (3.6)$$

where  $\mathbf{F}$  is the Fisher Matrix.

It is possible to show that applying a transformation matrix  $W$  to the  $p$  parameter vector, thus obtaining a new vector of variables  $q = Wp$ , the covariance matrix of the transformed vector  $q$  is whitened (i.e. it is the identity matrix, and whitening is defined as the process of converting the covariance matrix into an identity matrix)

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\mathbf{C}} &= W\langle\Delta\hat{p}\Delta\hat{p}^T\rangle W^T = \langle\Delta\hat{q}\Delta\hat{q}^T\rangle \\ &= \mathbb{1} . \end{aligned} \quad (3.7)$$

This means that the transformed  $q$  parameters are decorrelated, since their correlation matrix is diagonal. The choice of  $W$  is not unique as several possibilities exist; we focus on a particular choice in the rest of the paper referred to as Zero-phase Component Analysis (ZCA, first introduced by Bell and Sejnowski, 1997 in the context of image processing), but we show two other possible choices and their effect on the analysis in Appendix 3.5.

Zero-phase Component Analysis (sometimes also called Mahalanobis transformation Kessy, Lewin, and Strimmer, 2015) is a specific choice of decorrelation method that minimizes the squared norm of the difference between the  $q_i$  and the  $p_i$  vector  $\|\vec{p}_i - \vec{q}_i\|$ , under the constraint that the vector  $\vec{q}$  should be uncorrelated Kessy, Lewin, and Strimmer, 2015. In this way the uncorrelated variables  $q$  will be as close as possible to the original variables  $p$  in a least squares sense. This is achieved by using the  $W$  matrix:

$$W \equiv F^{1/2} . \quad (3.8)$$

Then in this case, the covariance matrix is whitened, by following Eqn. (3.7):

$$\tilde{C} = F^{1/2} F^{-1} F^{1/2} = \mathbb{1} . \quad (3.9)$$

In our case, since we do not want to whiten, but just decorrelate the covariance matrix, we renormalize the  $W$  matrix by multiplying with a diagonal matrix  $N_{jj} \equiv \sum_j (W_{ij}^{-2})$ , such that the sum of the square of the elements on each row of the new weighting matrix  $\tilde{W} \equiv NW$ , is equal to unity; therefore the final transformed covariance is still diagonal but is not the identity matrix:

$$\tilde{C} = \tilde{W} C \tilde{W} = N^2 \mathbb{1} \quad (3.10)$$

and at the same time we ensure that the vector of new variables  $q_i$  will have the same norm as the old vector of variables  $p_i$ .

### 3.3.4.1 ZCA for Galaxy Clustering

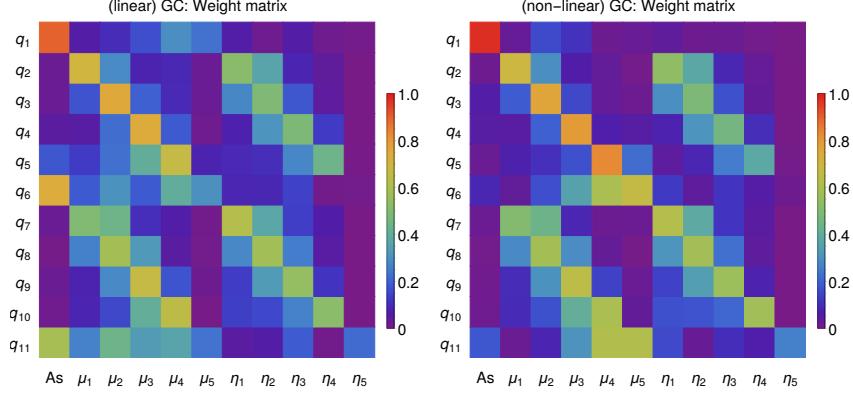
From Fig. 3.4 we can see that the correlations are present in sub-blocks, one for the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM parameters and another one for the Modified Gravity parameters. The exception lies in the linear case where  $\ell\mathcal{A}_s \equiv \ln(10^{10} A_s)$  is strongly anti-correlated with all the  $\mu_i$  and positively correlated with the  $\eta_i$ . To use a more objective criterion, we choose the  $10 \times 10$  block of MG parameters  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  with parameter indices 6 to 15, and only add to this block a  $\Lambda$ CDM parameter with index  $a$  if the following condition is satisfied:

$$\sum_{i=6}^{i=15} (P_{ai})^2 \geq 1$$

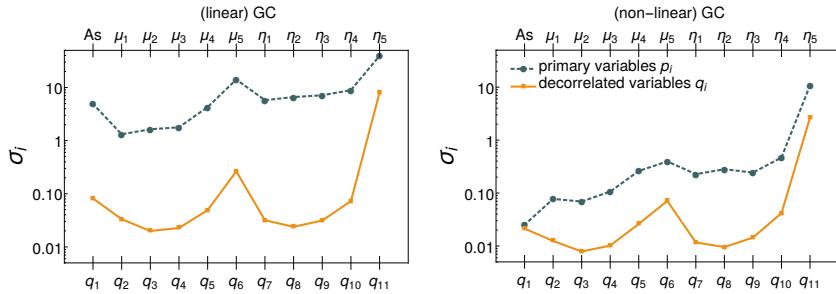
where the index  $a$  corresponds to one of the first five standard parameters. For Galaxy Clustering, the only index satisfying this condition is  $a = 4$  in the linear case, corresponding to  $\ell\mathcal{A}_s \equiv \ln(10^{10} A_s)$ : i.e. the standard parameter corresponding to the amplitude is, as said, degenerate with Modified Gravity parameters  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$ . In the non-linear case no parameter satisfies this condition (because, as we have seen, non-linearities are able to eliminate correlation with the amplitude), but for consistency we will use the same vector of 11 parameters  $p_i = \{\ell\mathcal{A}_s, \mu_i, \eta_i\}$  for our decorrelation procedure. Therefore we will also have 11 transformed uncorrelated  $q_i$  parameters, function of the original  $p_i$  parameters, in all the cases presented below.

Figure 3.6 shows the coefficients that relate the  $q_i$  parameters to the original  $p_i$  ones, in the linear (left panel) and the non-linear (right panel) cases, also shown explicitly in Tables ?? and ?? of Appendix 3.4. We plot in Figure 3.7 a comparison between the  $1\sigma$  errors on the primary parameters  $p_i$  (represented by circles connected with dark green dashed lines) and the decorrelated parameters  $q_i$  (represented by squares connected with orange solid lines). In the linear case (left panel), we can see that the errors on the  $q_i$  parameters are 2 orders of magnitude better than the errors on the  $p_i$  parameters. In the non-linear case (right panel) the improvement is of at most 1 order of magnitude and that for a completely decorrelated parameter like  $\ell\mathcal{A}_s$ , the error on its corresponding  $q_i$  is exactly the same. This shows that a decorrelation procedure is still worth to do, even when including the non-linear regime, even if the degeneracy with the amplitude is already completely broken thanks to the non-linear prescription. The fact that the curve of  $1\sigma$  errors for the  $q_i$

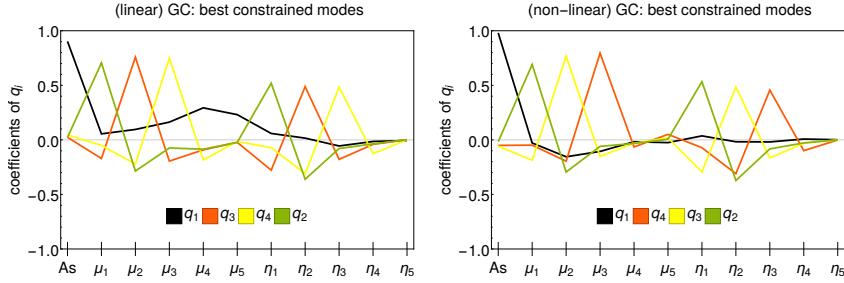
follows the same pattern as the curve for the  $p_i$  errors, is due to the fact that we have used a ZCA decomposition (see Section 3.3.4) and therefore the  $q_i$  are as similar as possible to the  $p_i$ .



**FIGURE 3.6:** Entries of the matrix  $W$  that relates the  $q_i$  parameters to the original  $p_i$  ones, after applying the ZCA decorrelation of the covariance matrix in the linear and non-linear GC cases. This matrix shows for each new variable  $q_i$  on the vertical axis, the coefficients of the linear combination of parameters  $\mu_i$ ,  $\eta_i$  and  $A_s$  that give rise to that variable  $q_i$ . The red (blue) colors, indicate a large (small) contribution of the respective variable on the horizontal axis. **Left panel:** linear forecast for Euclid Redbook specifications. **Right panel:** non-linear forecast for Euclid Redbook specifications, using the HS prescription. In both cases one can observe that most  $q_i$  parameters have only small or negligible contributions from  $\mu_5$  and  $\eta_5$ , which are found to be the less constrained bins.



**FIGURE 3.7:** Results for a Euclid Redbook GC survey, with redshift-binned parameters, before and after applying the ZCA decorrelation. Each panel shows the  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized errors on the primary parameters  $p_i$  (green dashed lines), and the  $1\sigma$  errors on the decorrelated parameters  $q_i$  (orange solid lines). **Left:** linear forecasts, performed using linear power spectra up to a maximum wavenumber  $k_{\max} = 0.15h/\text{Mpc}$ . **Right:** non-linear forecasts using non-linear spectra with the HS prescription up to a maximum wavenumber  $k_{\max} = 0.5h/\text{Mpc}$ . In the linear case, the errors on the decorrelated  $q_i$  parameters are about 2 orders of magnitude smaller than for the primary parameters, while in the non-linear HS case, the improvement in the errors is of one order of magnitude. This means that applying a decorrelation procedure is worth even when non-linearities are considered. In both cases for GC, the least constrained parameters are  $\mu_5$  and  $\eta_5$ , corresponding to  $2.0 < z < 2.5$ .



**FIGURE 3.8:** Best constrained modes for a Euclid Redbook GC survey, with  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  binned in redshift, after transforming into uncorrelated  $q$  parameters via ZCA. Each of the four best constrained parameters  $q_i$ , shown in the panels, is a linear combination of the primary parameters  $p_i$ . The  $q_i$  in the legends are ordered from left to right, from the best constrained to the least constrained.

We are interested in finding the best combination of primary parameters  $p_i$  giving rise to the best constrained uncorrelated parameters  $q_i$ . In order to find the errors on the parameters  $q_i$ , we need to look at the diagonal of the decorrelated covariance matrix  $\hat{\mathbf{C}}$  expressed in Eqn. (3.10) and identify the  $q_i$  parameters with the smallest relative errors ( $\sigma_{q_i}/q_i$ ): we find than in the linear GC case, the best constrained combinations of primary parameters (ordered from most to least constrained) are given approximately by:

$$\begin{aligned} q_1 &= +0.9\ell\mathcal{A}_s + 0.32\mu_4 \\ q_3 &= +0.75\mu_2 - 0.29\eta_1 + 0.50\eta_2 \\ q_4 &= -0.25\mu_2 + 0.74\mu_3 - 0.32\eta_2 + 0.49\eta_3 \\ q_2 &= +0.70\mu_1 - 0.30\mu_2 + 0.52\eta_1 - 0.36\eta_2 . \end{aligned} \quad (3.11)$$

In contrast, for the non-linear GC case, the parameter  $\ell\mathcal{A}_s \equiv \ln(10^{10}A_s)$  is not correlated to any other, and therefore it is well constrained on its own. The best 4 constrained parameters (ordered from most to least constrained) in the non-linear case, are:

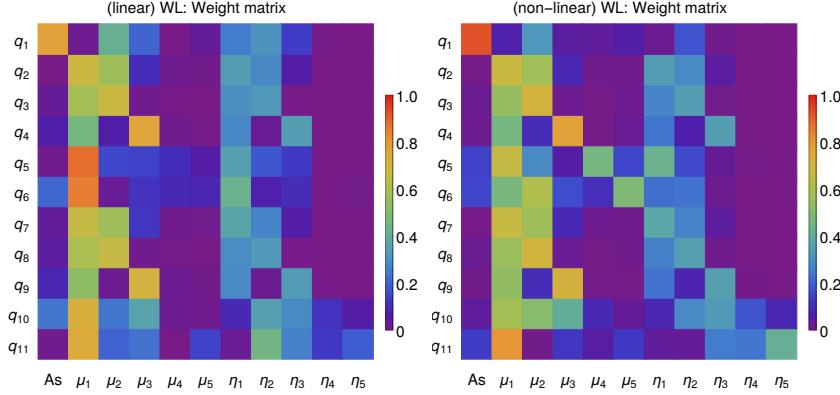
$$\begin{aligned} q_1 &= +0.99\ell\mathcal{A}_s \\ q_4 &= -0.28\mu_2 + 0.76\mu_3 - 0.33\eta_2 + 0.47\eta_3 \\ q_3 &= +0.73\mu_2 - 0.32\eta_1 + 0.49\eta_2 \\ q_2 &= +0.68\mu_1 - 0.35\mu_2 + 0.52\eta_1 - 0.37\eta_2 . \end{aligned} \quad (3.12)$$

The best constrained decorrelated parameters  $q_i$  for a Euclid GC survey, expressed in the set of Equations (3.11) (linear) and (3.12) (non-linear HS), can be seen graphically in Fig. 3.8 for the linear (left panel) and non-linear HS (right panel) cases respectively. From these combinations we see that a survey like Euclid, using GC only, will be sensitive to Modified Gravity parameters  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  mainly in the first three redshift bins, corresponding to a range  $0. < z < 1.5$ . The complete matrix  $W$  of coefficients relating the  $q_i$  to the  $p_i$  parameters, can be found in Tables ?? and ?? of Appendix 3.4.

### 3.3.4.2 ZCA for Weak Lensing

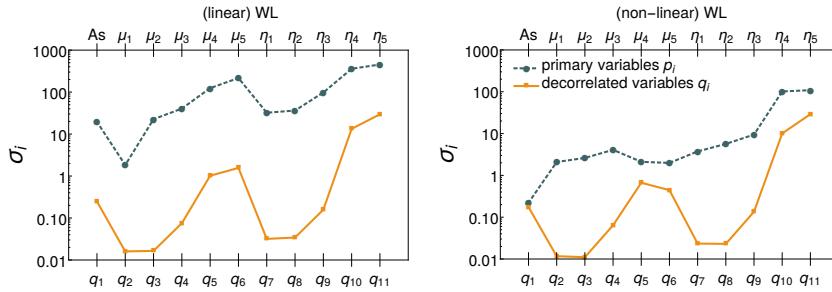
We apply the same decorrelation procedure to the WL case, obtaining the  $q$  vectors shown in the weight matrix of Figure 3.9 again reported explicitly in Tables ?? and

?? in Appendix 3.4.



**FIGURE 3.9:** Entries of the matrix  $W$  that relates the  $q_i$  parameters to the original  $p_i$  ones, after applying the ZCA decorrelation of the covariance matrix in the linear and non-linear WL cases. This matrix shows for each new variable  $q_i$  on the vertical axis, the coefficients of the linear combination of parameters  $\mu_i$ ,  $\eta_i$  and  $A_s$  that give rise to that variable  $q_i$ . The red (blue) colors, indicate a large (small) contribution of the respective variable on the horizontal axis. **Left panel:** linear forecast for Weak Lensing Euclid Redbook specifications. **Right panel:** non-linear forecast for Weak Lensing Euclid Redbook specifications, using the HS prescription. As for GC, most  $q_i$  parameters have only small or negligible contributions from  $\mu_5$  and  $\eta_5$ , which are found to be the less constrained bins.

In Figure 3.10 we show the comparison between the errors on the primary parameters  $p_i$  and the de-correlated ones  $q_i$ . As for the GC case, the errors in the linear case improve by 2 orders of magnitude after applying the decorrelation procedure (left panel). In the non-linear case (right panel) the improvement is smaller, but still worth to do, especially to constrain  $q_2, q_3, q_7, q_8$ .



**FIGURE 3.10:** Results for a Euclid Redbook WL survey, with redshift-binned parameters, before and after applying the ZCA decorrelation. Each panel shows the  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized errors on the primary parameters  $p_i$  (green dashed lines), and the  $1\sigma$  errors on the de-correlated parameters  $q_i$  (orange solid lines). **Left:** Linear forecasts, performed with an  $\ell_{\max} = 1000$  and linear matter power spectra. **Right:** Non-linear forecasts using the non-linear spectra with the HS prescription, up to an  $\ell_{\max} = 5000$ . The errors in the non-linear HS case, are about 1 order of magnitude smaller than in the linear case. For the best constrained  $q_i$  parameters, the de-correlated errors are up to 2 orders of magnitude smaller than the corresponding fully marginalized parameters on the parameters  $p_i$ .

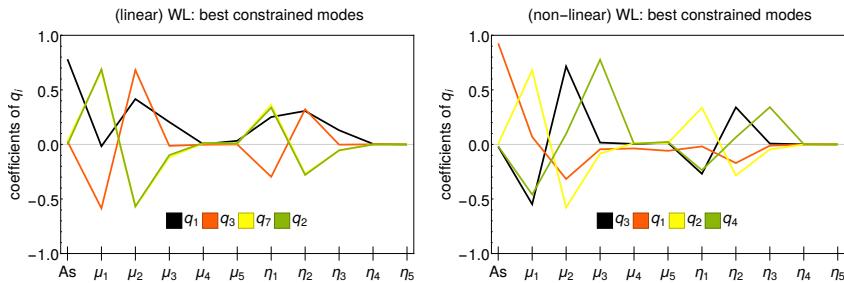
More generally, as we did for the GC case in the previous section, we look for the  $q_i$  parameters with the smallest relative errors ( $\sigma_{q_i}/q_i$ ) and find in the linear WL case, that the best constrained combinations (ordered from most to least constrained) of primary parameters are given approximately by:

$$\begin{aligned} q_1 &= +0.76\ell\mathcal{A}_s + 0.48\mu_2 + 0.33\eta_2 \\ q_3 &= -0.59\mu_1 + 0.67\mu_2 - 0.30\eta_1 + 0.32\eta_2 \\ q_7 &= +0.65\mu_1 - 0.60\mu_2 + 0.36\eta_1 - 0.28\eta_2 \\ q_2 &= +0.67\mu_1 - 0.59\mu_2 + 0.33\eta_1 - 0.29\eta_2 . \end{aligned} \quad (3.13)$$

This means that WL in the linear case will only be able to constrain combinations of the first two redshift bins in  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  (corresponding to  $0 < z < 1.0$ ). This can also be observed graphically in the left panel of Figure 3.11. For the non-linear WL case, the combinations remain practically the same, except for  $q_1$ , which will depend much more strongly on the parameter  $\ell\mathcal{A}_s$ . The best 4 constrained parameters in this case, are (ordered from most to least constrained):

$$\begin{aligned} q_3 &= -0.55\mu_1 + 0.71\mu_2 + -0.27\eta_1 + 0.34\eta_2 \\ q_1 &= +0.93\ell\mathcal{A}_s - 0.32\mu_2 \\ q_2 &= +0.67\mu_1 - 0.60\mu_2 + 0.33\eta_1 - 0.29\eta_2 \\ q_4 &= -0.46\mu_1 + 0.29\mu_2 + 0.73\mu_3 + 0.31\eta_3 . \end{aligned} \quad (3.14)$$

These combinations can also be visualized in the right panel of Figure 3.11. The complete matrix  $W$  of coefficients relating the  $q_i$  to the  $p_i$  parameters, can be found in Tables ?? and ?? of Appendix 3.4.

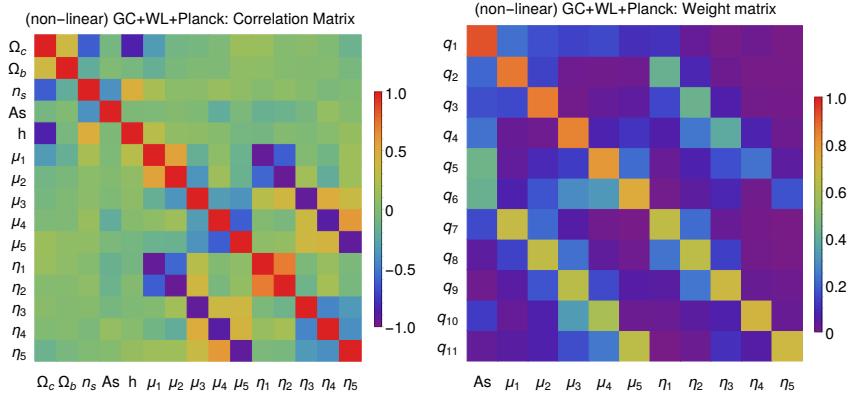


**FIGURE 3.11:** Best constrained modes for a Euclid Redbook WL survey, with  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  binned in redshift, after transforming into uncorrelated  $q$  parameters via ZCA. Each of the four best constrained parameters  $q_i$ , shown in the panels, is a linear combination of the primary parameters  $p_i$ .  $q_i$  in the label are ordered from the best constrained to the least constrained.

### 3.3.4.3 ZCA for Weak Lensing + Galaxy Clustering + CMB *Planck* priors

As mentioned earlier, Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing are particularly important, combined together, to constrain Modified Gravity parameters, as they probe two independent combinations of the gravitational potentials. We now show results for their combination, using for both the non-linear HS prescription, together with a *Planck* prior (which was obtained by performing an MCMC analysis on *Planck*+BSH background data, as specified in Section 3.2.3). Notice that we neglect here any information coming from the cross correlation of the two probes; we therefore assume that these two observables are independent of each other and we

simply add the GC and WL Fisher matrices to obtain our combined results; this appears to be a conservative (pessimistic) choice Lacasa and Rosenfeld, 2016. In Table 3.2, we can see that the inclusion of the *Planck* prior improves considerably certain parameters, especially the less constrained ones by GC+WL, namely  $\mu_{4,5}$  and  $\eta_{4,5}$ . In terms of correlations, we can observe in the left panel of Fig. 3.12, that the structure of the correlation matrix resembles the one of the linear WL case (Fig. 3.5), except that the block of standard  $\Lambda$ CDM parameters is much less correlated and that the anti-correlation among  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  is much stronger now. On the other hand, applying the decorrelation procedure (Section 3.3.4), the weight matrix  $W$  (right panel of Fig. 3.12), resembles the  $W$  matrix observed in the non-linear GC case, illustrated in Figure 3.6). Notice that now the variables  $q_i$  depend quite strongly on only one of the  $\mu_i$  for  $i = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ , while the  $q_i$  for  $i = \{6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$  depend on a balanced sum of  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  for  $i = \{6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$ .



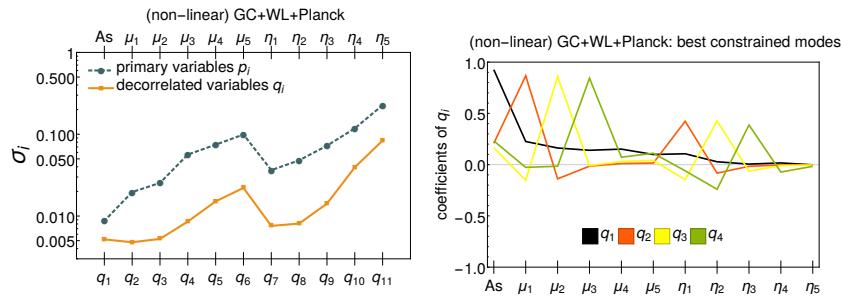
**FIGURE 3.12:** Results for the combined forecasts of Euclid Redbook GC+WL using the non-linear HS prescription together with the addition of *Planck* CMB priors. **Left panel:** correlation matrix obtained from the covariance matrix in the MG-binning case. Red (purple blue) colors represent strong positive (negative) correlations. The structure of this matrix is considerably diagonal, except for the strong anti-correlations of the pair  $(\mu_i, \eta_i)$  for  $i = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ , which resembles the correlations found for the WL case alone (see Figure 3.5). However, the sub-block of standard cosmological parameters is now much more diagonal and shows less correlations than in the GC (Fig. 3.4) or WL cases. The natural FoC (defined in 2.41) in this case is  $\approx 22$ , showing that the variables are much less correlated than in the two previous cases. **Right panel:** entries of the matrix  $W$  for the ZCA decorrelation of the covariance matrix. This matrix shows for each new variable  $q_i$  on the vertical axis, the coefficients of the linear combination of parameters  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  that give rise to that variable  $q_i$ . The red (blue) colors, indicate a large (small) contribution of the respective variable on the horizontal axis.

Finally, in this combined case the best constrained  $q_i$  variables, are  $q_1$ ,  $q_2$ ,  $q_3$ , ,  $q_4$  approximately given by:

$$\begin{aligned} q_1 &= +0.93\ell\mathcal{A}_s \\ q_2 &= +0.84\mu_1 + 0.48\eta_1 \\ q_3 &= +0.80\mu_2 - 0.26\eta_1 + 0.45\eta_2 \\ q_4 &= +0.28\ell\mathcal{A}_s + 0.79\mu_3 - 0.29\eta_2 + 0.39\eta_3 . \end{aligned} \tag{3.15}$$

These combinations of primary parameters are illustrated in the right panel of Figure 3.13. The combination  $q_2$  is similar to the combination  $2\mu + \eta$  that was also identified in Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b as being well-constrained. The best constrained modes  $q_2, q_3$  and  $q_4$  all contain terms of the form  $a\mu_i + b\eta_i$  for  $i = \{1, 2, 3\}$ , with positive coefficients  $a$  and  $b$ , where  $a \approx 2b$ .

All errors are shown in the left panel of Figure 3.13. Notice how in this case, the improvement on the errors of the  $q_i$  variables is less than an order of magnitude, thus smaller than what found in GC and WL separately; this is due to combination of GC and WL which, together with the inclusion of the CMB prior, lead to smaller correlations among the parameters. When combining GC+WL in the non-linear HS case, the FoC (defined in 2.41) is  $\approx 31$ , showing that there is not much gain in decorrelation, compared to GC or WL alone, where this quantity was approximately 32. However, combining GC+WL (non-linear HS) with *Planck* priors yields FoC  $\approx 22$ , showing that correlations among parameters are drastically reduced. The fact that the curve of  $1\sigma$  errors for the  $q_i$  (orange line, marked with circles) follows the same pattern as the curve for the  $p_i$  errors (green dashed line, marled with circles), is due to the fact that we have used a ZCA decomposition and therefore the  $q_i$  are as close as possible to the  $p_i$ . The complete matrix of coefficients  $W$  can be found in Table ?? in appendix 3.4.



**FIGURE 3.13:** **Left:** the  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized errors on the primary parameters  $p_i$  (green dashed lines), and the  $1\sigma$  errors on the decorrelated derived parameters  $q_i$  (yellow solid lines). As opposed to the GC or WL cases (figs.3.7,3.10), here the decorrelated errors are much more similar to the standard errors. This is due to the fact that in the GC+WL+*Planck* combination, the cosmological parameters are not so strongly correlated. **Right:** best constrained modes for a Euclid Redbook GC+WL case using the non-linear HS prescription and adding a CMB *Planck* prior. Each panel shows the four best constrained parameters  $q_i$ . Each of them is a linear combination of the primary parameters  $p_i$ . The best constrained modes are sums  $a\mu_i + b\eta_i$  for  $i = \{1, 2, 3\}$  and positive values  $a$  and  $b$ .

## 3.4 Weight matrices coefficients

Here we explicitly show the coefficient of the  $W$  matrices illustrated in Figures 3.6, 3.9 and 3.12. Tables ?? and ?? contain the coefficient matrices obtained for Galaxy Clustering in the linear and non-linear HS prescription cases respectively, while Tables ?? and ?? contain the coefficients obtained for WL. Finally, Table ?? reports the coefficients for the combination of GC, WL and *Planck* priors, in the non-linear HS case.

Euclid (Redbook)	$\ell A_s$	$\mu_1$	$\mu_2$	$\mu_3$	$\mu_4$	$\mu_5$	$\eta_1$	$\eta_2$	$\eta_3$	$\eta_4$	$\eta_5$	MG FoM
Fiducial	3.057	1.108	1.027	0.973	0.952	0.962	1.135	1.160	1.219	1.226	1.164	relative
GC (lin)	160%	119%	159%	183%	450%	1470%	509%	570%	586%	728%	3390%	0
GC (nl-HS)	0.8%	7.0%	6.7%	10.9%	27.4%	41.1%	20%	24.3%	19.9%	38.2%	930%	19
WL (lin)	640%	165%	2210%	4150%	13100%	22500%	2840%	3140%	8020%	29300%	39000%	-27
WL (nl-HS)	7.3%	188%	255%	419%	222%	206%	330%	488%	775%	8300%	9380%	-10
GC+WL (lin)	11.3%	5.8%	10%	19.2%	282%	469%	7.9%	9.6%	16.1%	276%	2520%	12
GC+WL+Planck (lin)	1.1%	3.4%	4.8%	7.8%	9.3%	13.1%	6.2%	7.7%	9.1%	12.7%	23.6%	27
GC+WL (nl-HS)	0.8%	2.2%	3.3%	8.2%	24.8%	34.1%	3.6%	5.1%	8.1%	25.4%	812%	24
GC+WL+Planck (nl-HS)	0.3%	1.8%	2.5%	5.8%	7.8%	10.3%	3.2%	4.1%	5.9%	9.6%	19.5%	33
GC+WL+Planck (nl-Halofit)	0.4%	2.0%	2.4%	5.1%	7.4%	10.2%	3.5%	4.1%	5.8%	9.2%	18.9%	33

**TABLE 3.2:**  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized errors (as a percentage of the corresponding fiducial) on cosmological parameters for Euclid (Redbook) Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing surveys, alone and combining the two probes. We compare forecasts using linear spectra (lin) and forecasts using the nonlinear HS prescription (nl-HS). In Galaxy Clustering, the cutoff is set to  $k_{\max} = 0.15$  h/Mpc in the linear case and  $k_{\max} = 0.5$  h/Mpc in the non-linear case. For WL, the maximum cutoff in the linear case is at  $\ell_{\max} = 1000$ , while in the nl-HS case it is  $\ell_{\max} = 5000$ . At the bottom, we add on top a *Planck* prior (see section 3.2.3). For comparison, we also show in the last row the combined GC+WL+*Planck*, using just Halofit power spectra. The last column indicates the relative Figure of Merit (FoM<sub>a,b</sub>) of the MG parameters in nits ('natural units', i.e. using the natural logarithm), with respect to our reference GC linear case, see (2.40) and surrounding text. A larger FoM indicates a more constraining probe. We notice a considerable improvement, in both GC and WL, when non-linearities are included. The combination GC+WL in the linear case constrains the MG parameters in the first two bins ( $z < 1.0$ ) to less than 10% and including *Planck* priors allows to access higher redshifts with the same accuracy. A significant improvement in the constraints is obtained when adding the non-linear regime, in agreement with the observed reduction in correlation seen in Figs. 3.4 and 3.5. This is especially well exemplified by the error on  $\ell A_s \equiv \ln(10^{10} A_s)$ , which reduces from 160% to 0.82%, from the linear to the non-linear forecast in the GC case and from 640% to 7.3% in the WL case. Finally, we note that since we are showing errors on  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ , WL seems to be unfairly poor at constraining parameters. However, when converting this errors into errors on  $\Sigma$ , which is directly measured by WL, the constraints on  $\Sigma_{1,2,3}$  are slightly better, of the order of 40% for WL(nl-HS) as can be guess from the degeneracy directions shown in Fig. 3.17. The FoM itself is nearly unaffected by the choice of  $\{\mu, \eta\}$  vs  $\{\mu, \Sigma\}$  as it is rotationally invariant.

### 3.5 Other Decorrelation Methods

In section 3.3.3 we have worked with a special decorrelation method, ZCA (Zero-phase component analysis, first introduced by Bell and Sejnowski, 1997 in the context of image processing), which allows us to find a new vector of decorrelated variables  $q$  that is as similar as possible to the original vector of variables  $p$ . Other decorrelation methods do not share this property, so in this section we want to illustrate their difference with respect to ZCA. In the next subsections we show for the Principal Component Analysis and Cholesky decomposition methods, a subset of our previous results, namely the Galaxy Clustering non-linear case, using the HS prescription for a Euclid survey with Redbook specifications.

### 3.5.0.1 Principal Component Analysis

Principal Component Analysis (PCA) Friedman, 1987 is a well known method, which rotates the vector of variables  $p$  into a new basis, using the eigenmatrix of the covariance matrix  $C$ . At the same time, it is the method that maximizes the compression of all components of  $p$  into the components of  $q$  using as measure the cross-covariance between  $q$  and  $p$  (see Kessy, Lewin, and Strimmer, 2015 for more details and references). This method is useful for dimensional reduction or data compression, since the information is stored in as few components as possible. This is achieved by using the  $W$  matrix

$$W = \Lambda^{-1/2} U^T \quad (3.16)$$

where  $\Lambda$  and  $U$  represent the eigensystem of  $C$  (defined in Eqn. 3.6).

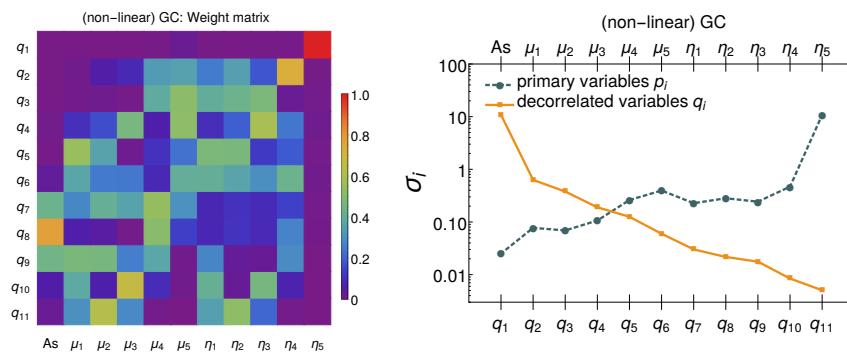
Then, it follows that the transformed covariance matrix  $\tilde{C}$  is whitened:

$$\tilde{C} = \Lambda^{-1/2} U^T C \Lambda^{-1/2} U^T \quad (3.17)$$

$$= \Lambda^{-1/2} U^T U \Lambda U^T \Lambda^{-1/2} U^T \quad (3.18)$$

$$= \mathbb{1} \quad (3.19)$$

As done previously, we renormalize  $W$  in such a way that the sum of the square of the elements of each row sum up to unity. In Figure 3.14 we show in the left panel the weight matrix  $W$  and in the right panel the  $1\sigma$  errors for the original and decorrelated variables. We see that the most constrained  $q$  variables are the last components  $q_8-q_{11}$ , where most of the information has been compressed into. These 4 variables are complicated linear combinations of  $A_s$ ,  $\mu_{1,2,3}$  and  $\eta_{1,2,3}$ . This is the same we found for ZCA (cf. Fig. 3.8 and Eqns. (3.8)). However, the interpretation in terms of the old variables  $p$  is not so simple anymore. We can see from the weight matrix and the  $1\sigma$  errors, that the most unconstrained parameter is  $q_1$ , which is basically equivalent to  $\eta_5$ . This means that this parameter can be eliminated from the analysis if one wants to do dimensional reduction.



**FIGURE 3.14:** **Left:** weight matrix  $W$  for PCA. **Right:**  $1\sigma$  fully maximized errors on the primary parameters  $p$  (blue lines) and the errors on the uncorrelated derived parameters  $q$  (orange lines). Notice how all the important information is constrained in as few variables as possible, namely the last elements of  $q_i$ .

### 3.5.0.2 Cholesky decomposition

Cholesky decomposition of the Fisher matrix  $F = LL^T$ , allows us to define a decorrelation method that compresses all components of  $p$  into an upper triangular matrix of components of  $q$ . This is achieved by using the  $W$  matrix:

$$W = L^T \quad (3.20)$$

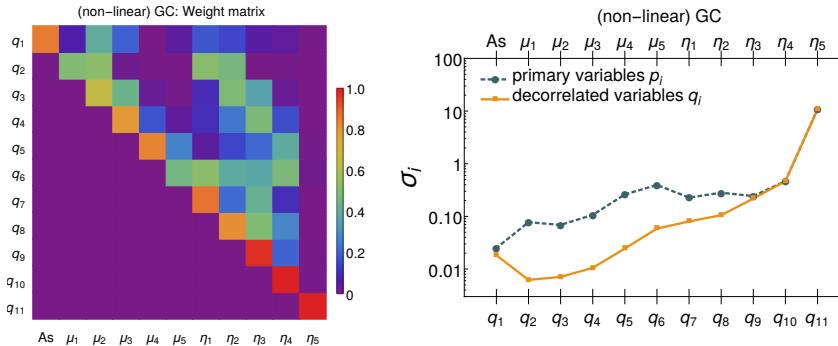
Then the covariance matrix will be whitened:

$$\tilde{C} = L^T(LL^T)^{-1}L \quad (3.21)$$

$$= L^T(L^T)^{-1}L^{-1}L \quad (3.22)$$

$$= \mathbb{1} \quad (3.23)$$

As done previously, we renormalize  $W$  in such a way that the sum of the square of the elements of each row sum up to unity. In Cholesky decomposition, since we are constructing it via an upper triangular matrix (see left panel of Fig. 3.15), the new parameter  $q_{11}$  will be identical to the parameter  $\eta_5$ , which is, as we have seen before (section 3.3.4.1), the less constrained parameter. This decorrelation method is useful if one wants to have an ordering of the variables (see Kessy, Lewin, and Strimmer, 2015 and references therein). On the other hand  $q_1$  is almost identical to  $A_s$ , since as we have seen in section 3.3.4.1, it becomes decorrelated from the MG parameters in the non-linear case.

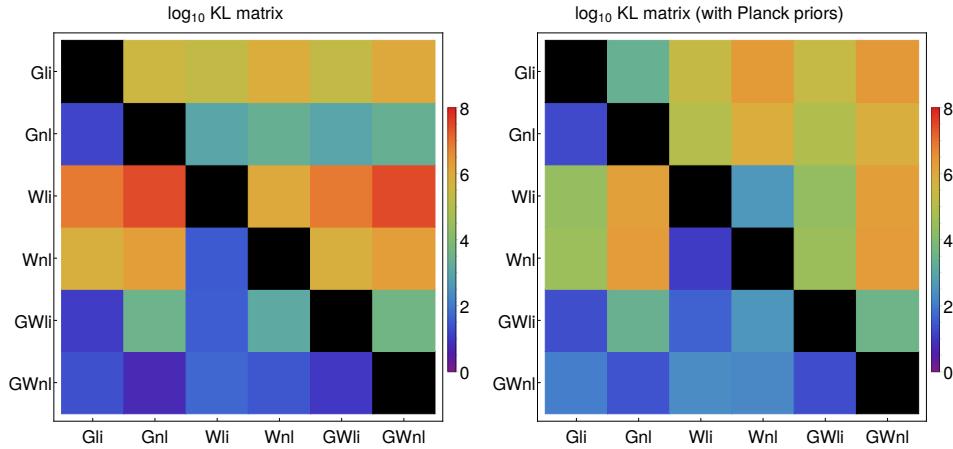


**FIGURE 3.15: Left:** weight matrix  $W$  for the Cholesky decorrelation. **Right:**  $1\sigma$  fully maximized errors on the primary parameters  $p$  (blue lines) and the errors on the uncorrelated derived parameters  $q$  (orange lines). Notice how in this case, because of the upper triangular construction, the new variables  $q_{9,10,11}$  are equivalent to  $\eta_{3,4,5}$ . The parameter  $A_s$  is decorrelated in the non-linear HS case for GC, therefore it is almost equivalent to  $q_1$  as was also the case in ZCA (compare with Fig. 3.6)

### 3.5.1 Kullback-Leibler divergence measure

In section 2.4.6 we introduced the Kullback-Leibler divergence (see eq. (2.43)) as another way of measuring the constraining power of a survey and we defined the Kullback-Leibler matrices (eq. (2.44)) (first introduced in **casas-MGforec**) as a way of visualizing the information gain between different probes. Here we will visualize the KL-matrix for the probes: GC(lin), GC(nl-HS), WL(lin), WL(nl-HS), GC+WL(lin) and GC+WL(nl-HS) in the redshift binned parameterization of section 3.3. In this way we can quantitatively see how much information is gained

when going from one probe like Galaxy Clustering to another probe like Weak Lensing. In Figure 3.16 we plot in the left panel the KL matrix  $\mathcal{K}_{ij}$  when no *Planck* priors are added and in the right panel the KL matrix when *Planck* priors are added to all probes. For visualization purposes, we plot the logarithm of the KL matrix:  $\log_{10} \mathcal{K}_{ij}$ . Blue (red) colours represent small (large) information gain, while black represents no information gain at all, which is by construction the case on the diagonal,  $\mathcal{K}_{ii} = 0$ . The rows of the matrix represent the reference observable of  $p_1$  and the columns, the new observable  $p_2$ . The information gain when going from a linear WL observable to a non-linear GC observable or to a combined GC+WL (linear and non-linear) observable is considerably high at about  $\approx 10^6$ - $10^7$ . However, when adding a *Planck* prior, this gets reduced by at least 2 orders of magnitude, since the prior is strong and then there is not as much new information gained in the new observables. On the opposite case, we can see that the row corresponding to GC+WL(nl-HS) is mostly blue, meaning that there is little gain of information when going to one of the other observables.



**FIGURE 3.16:** Kullback-Leibler divergence matrices  $\mathcal{K}_{ij}$ . This matrix represents graphically the information gain between all possible observables in the redshift binned parameterization of section 3.3. We have plotted here the logarithm of the KL-divergence matrix, for illustrative purposes. Therefore the diagonal is  $-\infty$  and it is represented by a black color. **Left:** KL matrix without *Planck* priors. The maximum gain is about  $10^7$  when going from WL(lin) to GC+WL(non-linear) and we can observe that GC+WL does not gain extra information when complemented with the other observables, which is expected. **Right:** In this case we compare the observables, when a *Planck* prior is added beforehand. The overall information gain is now smaller, with a maximum of about  $10^6$ . The maximum gain comes when comparing WL (linear and non-linear) to GC and GC+WL (non-linear).

### 3.6 Modified gravity with simple smooth functions of the scale factor

As discussed in Sec. ??,  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  (or an equivalent pair of functions of the gravitational potentials) depend in general on time and space. We will now investigate the time dependence further, starting from the two parameterizations proposed in Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b and recalled in Eqns. (1.63-1.66) in

this paper. We extend the analysis of the *Planck* paper by testing different prescriptions for the non-linear regime in Modified Gravity (as illustrated in Section 3.2) and further investigate forecasts for future experiments like Euclid, SKA, DESI. In the following subsections we first give results for the late-time parameterization of Eqns. (1.63,1.64) and then for the early time parameterization of Eqns. (1.65,1.66). In both cases we consider Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing, neglecting, as in Section 3.3 any information coming from the cross correlation of the two probes.

### 3.6.1 Modified Gravity in the late-time parameterization

The late-time parameterization is defined in eqs. (1.63) to (1.64). We now calculate forecasts for Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing, with future surveys, in the linear and mildly non-linear regimes. We also include prior information obtained from the analysis of the *Planck*+BSH datasets (where we recall that BSH stands for BAO + SNe +  $H_0$  prior), as discussed in Section 3.2.3.

#### 3.6.1.1 Galaxy Clustering in the linear and mildly non-linear regime

In Table 3.3 we show forecasts for the Euclid survey Laureijs and others, 2011 for Galaxy Clustering (top part of the table) and three different cases: using only linear scales with a cutoff at  $k_{\max} = 0.15 h/\text{Mpc}$ , labeled GC(lin); extending forecasts in the mildly non-linear regime, obtained using the prescription described in Sec. 3.2.2.2, with a cutoff at  $k_{\max} = 0.5 h/\text{Mpc}$ , labeled GC(nl-HS); combining the mildly non-linear case with *Planck* priors, as described in Sec. 3.2.3. We take into account the BAO features, redshift space distortions and the full shape of the power spectrum, as well as the survey specifications of the Euclid Redbook, recalled in Section 2.4.1 for convenience. The columns correspond to the marginalized errors on five standard cosmological parameters  $\{\Omega_c, \Omega_b, n_s, \ln(10^{10} A_s), h\}$  and three combinations of the gravitational potentials  $\{\mu, \eta, \Sigma\}$ : the latter are reconstructed in time, according to the late-time parameterization, as defined in Eqns. (1.63,1.64). We recall that only two of these three functions are independent and fully determine cosmological linear perturbations.

In the late-time scenario, for a Galaxy Clustering survey, neither  $\eta$  nor  $\Sigma$  are actually constrained by a linear forecast, while  $\mu$  is mildly constrained. Adding the non-linear regime improves constraints on  $\mu$ , while the other parameters remain unconstrained, unless we also include *Planck* priors, which yields an improvement in the FoM of 6.3 nits. In general the observable power spectrum may depend on both  $\mu$  (explicitely appearing in the last term of the equation for the density perturbation (cf. Eqn.(??)) and on  $\eta$  (implicitly contained in the derivatives of the gravitational potential in the same equation). The contribution of the derivative of the potentials is larger in the early-time parameterization, with respect to the late-time one by construction. This is due to the fact that in the late-time case deviations from GR go to zero at large redshifts. In this sense, in the specific case of the late time parameterization, the observed power spectrum mainly depends on  $\mu$  only, which explains why this is the only quantity (mildly) constrained by GC alone. In the early-time parameterization, though, modifications can appear also at earlier times, so that both  $\eta$  and  $\mu$  effectively affect the power spectrum, which explains why they can both be constrained with a smaller uncertainty, as we will discuss in Section 3.6.2.

In Appendix 3.6.1.5 we review the equation governing the evolution of cold dark matter density fluctuations, as a function of the Modified Gravity functions

$\mu(a)$  and  $\eta(a)$  as they are implemented in the code MGCBM Hojjati, Pogosian, and Zhao, 2011. The inability of GC to constrain  $\eta$  in this parametrization, is also visible in Fig. 3.17 which shows that the GC constraints are degenerate along the  $\eta$  or  $\Sigma$  directions. Therefore, we show how with this parameterization choice Euclid GC will be extremely sensitive to modifications of the Poisson equation for  $\Psi$ , while it would require additional information to constrain departures from the standard Weyl potential.

Euclid (Redbook)	$\Omega_c$	$\Omega_b$	$n_s$	$\ell\mathcal{A}_s$	$h$	$\mu$	$\eta$	$\Sigma$	MG FoM
Fiducial	0.254	0.048	0.969	3.060	0.682	1.042	1.719	1.416	relative
GC(lin)	1.9%	6.4%	3%	2.8%	4.5%	17.1%	1030%	641%	0
GC(nl-HS)	0.9%	2.5%	1.3%	0.8%	1.7%	1.7%	475%	291%	2.9
GC(nl-HS)+Planck	0.7%	0.6%	0.3%	0.2%	0.3%	1.7%	16.8%	10.3%	6.3
WL(lin)	7.8%	25.7%	9.9%	10.3%	19.1%	58.2%	106%	9.3%	3.2
WL(nl-HS)	6.3%	20.7%	4.6%	5.8%	13.8%	23.3%	40.9%	4.6%	4.5
WL(nl-HS)+Planck	2.1%	1.1%	0.4%	0.7%	0.7%	11.8%	21.8%	2.8%	5.7
GC+WL(lin)	1.8%	5.9%	2.8%	2.3%	4.2%	7.1%	10.6%	2%	6.6
GC+WL(lin)+Planck	1.0%	0.7%	0.4%	0.4%	0.4%	6.2%	9.8%	1.5%	7.0
GC+WL(nl-HS)	0.8%	2.2%	0.8%	0.7%	1.5%	1.6%	2.4%	1.0%	8.8
GC+WL(nl-HS)+Planck	0.7%	0.6%	0.2%	0.2%	0.3%	1.6%	2.4%	0.9%	8.9
GC+WL(nl-Halofit)+Planck	0.6%	0.5%	0.2%	0.2%	0.2%	0.8%	1.7%	0.8%	9.6

**TABLE 3.3:**  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized errors on the cosmological parameters in the late-time parameterization of Modified Gravity for a Euclid Galaxy Clustering forecast (top), a Weak Lensing forecast (middle) and the combination of both probes (bottom): Modified Gravity is encoded in two of the three functions  $\mu$ ,  $\eta$ ,  $\Sigma$ , which are reconstructed in the late-time parameterization defined in Eqns. (1.63,1.64). For each case, we also list the forecasted errors using a *Planck*+BSH prior. Linear forecasts are labeled by “lin”, and correspond to a cutoff  $k_{\max} = 0.15h/\text{Mpc}$  for GC and  $\ell_{\max} = 5000$  for WL; non-linear forecasts use the prescription described in sec. 3.2.2.2, are labeled by “nl-HS” and correspond to a cutoff of  $k_{\max} = 0.5h/\text{Mpc}$  for GC and  $\ell_{\max} = 5000$  for WL. In both cases, power spectra have been computed using the MGCBM Boltzmann code. For completeness, we also show the GC+WL+*Planck* case using the non-linear power spectra computed using Halofit only (nl-Halofit). In the last column, we show for each observation the Figure of Merit (FoM) relative to our base observable in this parametrization, which is GC(linear). GC(linear) has an absolute FoM of -0.94 in ‘nits’. We can see that in both GC and WL there is a considerable gain when including non-linear scales and *Planck* priors. The difference in the FoM between the non-linear HS prescription and the standard Halofit approach is quite small.

### 3.6.1.2 Late time parameterization

Our main observables are parameterized in terms of the primary variables  $E_{11}$  and  $E_{22}$  from Equation 1.65; we are however interested in forecasting the constraints on the pair of secondary variables  $\{\mu, \eta\}$  or on the pair  $\{\mu, \Sigma\}$ .

Therefore we need to transform the variables using a Jacobian  $J_{ij} = \frac{\partial \theta_i}{\partial \tilde{\theta}_j}$ , where  $\theta_i$  is the set of primary variables and  $\tilde{\theta}_i$  is the vector of secondary variables. Eqns. (1.62,1.63,1.64) allow us to express the  $\tilde{\theta}_i$  as a function of the variables  $\theta_i$  and to obtain the non-vanishing derivatives of  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  w.r.t to all cosmological parameters:

Euclid (Redbook)	$\Omega_c$	$\Omega_b$	$n_s$	$\ell\mathcal{A}_s$	$h$	$\mu$	$\eta$	$\Sigma$	MG FoM
Fiducial	0.256	0.048	0.969	3.091	0.682	0.902	1.939	1.326	relative
GC(lin)	3.7%	19.2%	9.1%	16.6%	16.5%	16.7%	758%	489%	0
GC(nl-HS)	1.1%	2.3%	1.3%	0.7%	1.6%	1.8%	7.9%	4.8%	6.6
GC(nl-HS)+ <i>Planck</i>	0.8%	0.7%	0.3%	0.3%	0.3%	1.7%	7.6%	4.6%	6.7
WL(lin)	12.1%	28.9%	11.3%	13.3%	24%	6.8%	11.1%	11.9%	4.9
WL(nl-HS)	6.5%	21.9%	6.6%	5.9%	15.8%	2.8%	8.0%	3.4%	6.6
WL(nl-HS)+ <i>Planck</i>	2.1%	1.3%	0.5%	0.9%	0.7%	2.2%	7.2%	2.9%	7.2
GC+WL(lin)	1.8%	6.6%	3.4%	5.6%	5.2%	3.0%	6.8%	3.4%	6.4
GC+WL(lin)+ <i>Planck</i>	1.2%	0.9%	0.6%	2.3%	0.4%	2.4%	6.5%	2.8%	6.9
GC+WL(nl-HS)	1.0%	2.2%	1.2%	0.7%	1.6%	1.3%	4.4%	1.9%	8.0
GC+WL(nl-HS)+ <i>Planck</i>	0.8%	0.7%	0.3%	0.3%	0.3%	1.3%	4.4%	1.9%	8.2
GC+WL(Halofit)+ <i>Planck</i>	0.7%	0.7%	0.3%	1.3%	0.3%	0.9%	2.3%	1%	8.9

**TABLE 3.4:** Same as Table (3.3) but for the early-time parameterization. Note that the last column (MG FoM) cannot be compared to the one for a different parameterization (Table 3.3) since the reference value is different (GC(lin)) and the two parameterizations have a different number of primary parameters). In this case the absolute MG FoM of GC(lin) is  $\approx -0.47$  nits.

	$\Omega_c$	$\Omega_b$	$n_s$	$\ell\mathcal{A}_s$	$h$	$\mu$	$\eta$	$\Sigma$	MG FoM
Fiducial	0.254	0.048	0.969	3.060	0.682	1.042	1.719	1.416	relative
GC(nl-HS)									
Euclid	0.9%	2.5%	1.3%	0.8%	1.7%	1.7%	475%	291%	2.9
SKA1-SUR	5%	15.3%	8.7%	3.8%	10.8%	18.1%	165%	108%	1.7
SKA2	0.5%	1.3%	0.4%	0.4%	0.8%	0.7%	86.8%	53.2%	5.5
DESI-ELG	1.6%	4.1%	2.3%	1.3%	2.9%	3.3%	899%	552%	1.8
WL(nl-HS)									
Euclid	6.3%	20.7%	4.6%	5.8%	13.8%	23.3%	40.9%	4.6%	4.5
SKA1	30.8%	109%	35%	36.5%	77.6%	220%	405%	36.8%	0.5
SKA2	6%	22.5%	5.9%	6.8%	15.9%	19%	33.2%	3.7%	4.9
GC+WL(lin)									
Euclid	1.8%	5.9%	2.8%	2.3%	4.2%	7.1%	10.6%	2%	6.6
SKA1	10.1%	47.6%	25.4%	21.7%	40.4%	26.4%	28.8%	13.6%	3.7
SKA2	1.2%	4.5%	2.2%	1.9%	3.3%	4.1%	5.5%	1.6%	7.5
GC+WL(lin)+ <i>Planck</i>									
Euclid	1.0%	0.7%	0.4%	0.4%	0.4%	6.2%	9.8%	1.5%	6.9
SKA1	2.4%	1.2%	0.4%	1.2%	0.7%	12%	19.8%	3.8%	5.3
SKA2	0.7%	0.6%	0.3%	0.4%	0.3%	3.6%	5.2%	1.2%	7.8
GC+WL(nl-HS)									
Euclid	0.8%	2.2%	0.8%	0.7%	1.5%	1.6%	2.4%	1.0%	8.7
SKA1	4.7%	14.3%	6.2%	3.6%	9.6%	12.8%	11%	7.3%	5.5
SKA2	0.4%	1.3%	0.3%	0.4%	0.8%	0.7%	0.9%	0.6%	10.3
GC+WL(nl-HS)+ <i>Planck</i>									
Euclid	0.7%	0.6%	0.2%	0.2%	0.3%	1.6%	2.4%	0.9%	8.9
SKA1	2.0%	1.0%	0.4%	0.8%	0.6%	3.5%	6%	2.7%	6.9
SKA2	0.4%	0.5%	0.2%	0.1%	0.2%	0.6%	0.9%	0.5%	10.3

**TABLE 3.5:**  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized errors on the cosmological parameters  $\{\Omega_m, \Omega_b, h, \ell\mathcal{A}_s, n_s, \mu, \eta, \Sigma\}$  in the late-time parameterization comparing different surveys in the linear and non-linear case. In the last column, we show for each observation the Modified Gravity Figure of Merit (MG FoM) relative to our base observable, which is the Euclid Redbook GC(linear), see Table 3.3. We can see that in general terms, SKA2 is the most powerful survey, followed by Euclid and SKA1. In the case of GC alone, DESI-ELG is more constraining than SKA1-SUR. Notice that in this parameterization, a GC survey would only constrain  $\mu$  with a high accuracy, while a WL survey would constrain  $\Sigma$  with a very good accuracy. The combination of both is much more powerful than the single probes. Adding *Planck* priors (last row) improves considerably the constraints on the  $\Lambda$ CDM parameters but has an almost negligible effect on the MG parameters (MG FoM remain almost constant when adding *Planck* priors to the GC+WL (non-linear HS) case. The marginalized contours for the  $\mu$ - $\eta$  plane , comparing these surveys, can be seen in the left panel of fig. 3.21.

	$\Omega_c$	$\Omega_b$	$n_s$	$\ell\mathcal{A}_s$	$h$	$\mu$	$\eta$	$\Sigma$	MG FoM
Fiducial	0.256	0.0485	0.969	3.091	0.682	0.902	1.939	1.326	relative
<b>GC(nl-HS)</b>									
Euclid	1.1%	2.3%	1.3%	0.7%	1.6%	1.8%	7.9%	4.8%	6.6
SKA1-SUR	7.9%	14.2%	13.4%	4.2%	11%	12.6%	82.7%	52.6%	2.2
SKA2	0.6%	1.3%	0.7%	0.4%	0.9%	0.9%	3.4%	1.8%	8.3
DESI-ELG	2.0%	4.3%	2.7%	1.4%	3.0%	8.2%	32%	28.6%	4.3
<b>WL(nl-HS)</b>									
Euclid	6.5%	21.9%	6.6%	5.9%	15.8%	2.8%	8.0%	3.4%	6.6
SKA1	32%	106%	37.2%	33%	79.3%	13.1%	37.1%	16.4%	3.4
SKA2	5.9%	22.1%	6.7%	6.1%	16.1%	2.4%	7.0%	2.9%	6.9
<b>GC+WL(lin)</b>									
Euclid	1.8%	6.6%	3.4%	5.6%	5.2%	3.0%	6.8%	3.4%	6.4
SKA1	10.3%	46.4%	24.2%	33.6%	40.2%	14.4%	29.6%	15.5%	3.3
SKA2	1.3%	4.9%	2.5%	4.2%	3.9%	2.5%	5.7%	2.7%	6.8
<b>GC+WL(lin)+Planck</b>									
Euclid	1.2%	0.9%	0.6%	2.3%	0.4%	2.4%	6.5%	2.8%	6.8
SKA1	2.5%	1.5%	0.8%	2.9%	0.8%	8.8%	22.2%	8.5%	4.5
SKA2	0.9%	0.7%	0.6%	2.1%	0.3%	2.1%	5.4%	2.3%	7.2
<b>GC+WL(nl-HS)</b>									
Euclid	1.0%	2.2%	1.2%	0.7%	1.6%	1.3%	4.4%	1.9%	8.1
SKA1	7.1%	13.4%	10.7%	4%	10%	8.2%	24.4%	10.5%	4.4
SKA2	0.6%	1.3%	0.7%	0.4%	0.9%	0.8%	2.7%	1.3%	8.8
<b>GC+WL(nl-HS)+Planck</b>									
Euclid	0.8%	0.7%	0.3%	0.3%	0.3%	1.3%	4.4%	1.9%	8.1
SKA1	2.1%	1.3%	0.5%	0.9%	0.7%	7%	20.8%	8.2%	4.9
SKA2	0.5%	0.5%	0.3%	0.2%	0.2%	0.8%	2.7%	1.3%	8.8

**TABLE 3.6:** Same as Table 3.5 but for the early-time parameterization. The last 4 columns correspond to the projection of the errors on  $E_{11}$  and  $E_{22}$  onto  $\mu$ ,  $\eta$  and  $\Sigma$ , respectively. We have marginalized over  $E_{12}$  and  $E_{21}$  since at  $z = 0$  they don't contribute to the Modified Gravity parameters. Notice that in this parameterization, a GC survey alone is able to constrain both  $\mu$  and  $\Sigma$  to a good level for all surveys, better than with the late time parameterization, more often used in literature. The combination of GC+WL is however less constraining in the early time parametrization than in late time parameterization one. The reference case for the MG FoM is the Euclid (Redbook) GC linear forecast (Table 3.4). The non-linear forecast for GC+WL+*Planck* would yield, for Euclid and SKA2, constraints at the 1-2% accuracy on  $\mu$ ,  $\Sigma$ , while for SKA1 the constraints would be at the 8% level. The marginalized contours for the  $\mu$ - $\eta$  plane, comparing these surveys, can be seen in the right panel off Fig.3.21.

$$\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \Omega_c} = -E_{11}, \quad \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial \Omega_c} = -E_{22} \quad (3.24)$$

$$\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \Omega_b} = -E_{11}, \quad \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial \Omega_b} = -E_{22} \quad (3.25)$$

$$\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial E_{11}} = 1 - \Omega_b - \Omega_c - \Omega_\nu, \quad \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial E_{22}} = 1 - \Omega_b - \Omega_c - \Omega_\nu . \quad (3.26)$$

With these derivatives we can construct the inverse of the Jacobian  $J_{ij}^{-1} = \frac{\partial \tilde{\theta}_j}{\partial \theta_i}$ . The Fisher matrix in the secondary variables  $\tilde{F}_{ij}$  is then given by

$$\tilde{F} = J^T F J \quad (3.27)$$

For the parameter set containing  $\tilde{\theta}_i = \{\mu, \Sigma\}$  we obtain the following non-vanishing derivatives

$$\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \Omega_c} = -E_{11}, \quad \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial \Omega_b} = -E_{11}, \quad \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial E_{11}} = 1 - \Omega_b - \Omega_c - \Omega_\nu \quad (3.28)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \Sigma}{\partial \Omega_c} &= -\frac{1}{2}E_{22}(1 + E_{11}(1 - \Omega_b - \Omega_c - \Omega_\nu)) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2}E_{11}(2 + E_{22}(1 - \Omega_b - \Omega_c - \Omega_\nu)) \end{aligned} \quad (3.29)$$

$$\frac{\partial \Sigma}{\partial \Omega_b} = \frac{\partial \Sigma}{\partial \Omega_c} \quad (3.30)$$

$$\frac{\partial \Sigma}{\partial E_{11}} = \frac{1}{2}(2 + E_{22}(1 - \Omega_b - \Omega_c - \Omega_\nu))(1 - \Omega_b - \Omega_c - \Omega_\nu) \quad (3.31)$$

$$\frac{\partial \Sigma}{\partial E_{22}} = \frac{1}{2}(1 + E_{11}(1 - \Omega_b - \Omega_c - \Omega_\nu))(1 - \Omega_b - \Omega_c - \Omega_\nu) \quad (3.32)$$

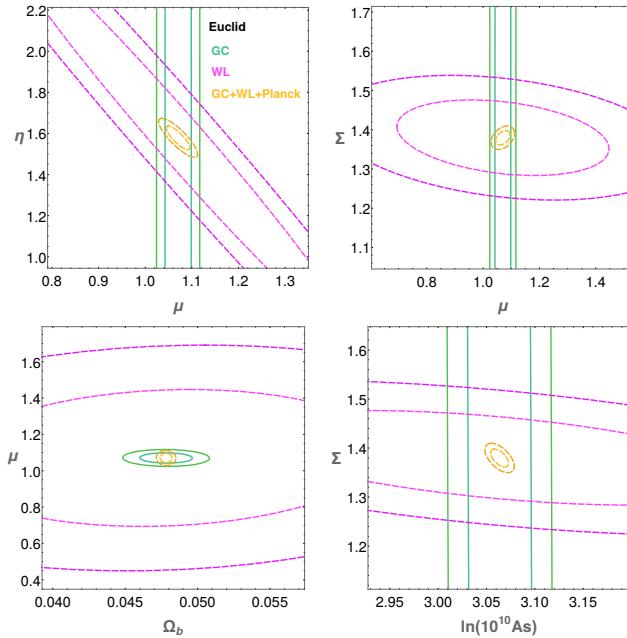
### 3.6.1.3 Weak Lensing in the linear and mildly non-linear regime

Using the Euclid Weak Lensing specifications described in Section sub:Fisher-Weak-Lensing, we obtain the results displayed in the middle panel of Table 3.3. Also in this case, we use the late-time parameterization, in three different cases: the first uses only linear quantities, with a maximum multipole of  $\ell_{\max} = 1000$ ; the second case uses the non-linear HS prescription of section 3.2.2 up to a maximum multipole of  $\ell_{\max} = 5000$ ; the third case combines Weak Lensing with *Planck* priors, as described in 3.2.3.

In the linear case, WL forecast yields constraints on the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM parameters at around 10% of accuracy, with the exception of  $\Omega_b$  which is poorly constrained at around 26%, and the expansion rate  $h$  (19%). This is likely due to the fact that WL is only directly sensitive to the total matter distribution in the Universe and cannot differentiate baryons from dark matter. All constraints improve when adding non-linear information, with  $\Omega_b$  and  $h$  still constrained only at the level of about 20%. When the *Planck* priors are included, though, constraints shrink down to about 1% for all cosmological parameters. The Modified Gravity parameters show the expected trend; in the linear case, only  $\Sigma$  is constrained, at 11%, as this parameter is directly defined in terms of the lensing potential  $\Phi + \Psi$ ; a Weak Lensing probe is however not directly sensitive to  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  separately, as can be seen in Fig. 3.17. The linear FoM is only slightly weaker than the one from GC for this parameterization, probably because both probes have an effectively unconstrained degeneracy direction. When adding non-linear information, errors on  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  improve, though still remaining in a poorly constrained interval (25%-44%). Already on its own, however, Weak Lensing could rule out many models of Modified Gravity that change  $\Sigma$  at more than 5% (or even 2.9%, if we include *Planck* priors). The combination GC+*Planck* and WL+*Planck* has a comparable overall constraining power, with GC+*Planck* being about 1 nit stronger and providing smaller errors on  $\mu$ .

### 3.6.1.4 Combining Weak Lensing and Galaxy Clustering

After using the two primary probes from Euclid separately, we discuss here the constraints obtained combining Weak Lensing and Galaxy Clustering. The combination between GC and WL can be seen in the bottom panel of Table 3.3. In the late-time parameterization, in the linear case, Weak Lensing combined with a



**FIGURE 3.17:** Fisher Matrix marginalized contours ( $1, 2 \sigma$ ) for the Euclid space mission in the late-time parameterization using mildly non-linear scales and the HS prescription. Green lines represent constraints from a Galaxy Clustering survey, pink lines stand for the Weak Lensing observables, and orange lines represent the GC+WL+*Planck* combined confidence regions. **Upper Left:** contours for the fully marginalized errors on  $\eta$  and  $\mu$ . **Upper Right:** contours for the fully marginalized errors on  $\Sigma$  and  $\mu$ . **Lower Left:** contours for the fully marginalized errors on  $\mu$  and  $\Omega_b$ . **Lower Right:** contours for the fully marginalized errors on  $\Sigma$  and  $\ln(10^{10} A_s)$ . The fact that the combination of GC, WL and *Planck* breaks many degeneracies in the 7-dimensional parameter space, explains why the combined contours (yellow) have a much smaller area. Notice that in this parametrization, GC measures mostly  $\mu$  and WL constrains mostly just  $\Sigma$ .

galaxy clustering for a Euclid survey (Redbook specifications) constrains the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM parameters in the range 2% – 6%, and below 1% when *Planck* priors are included. Modified Gravity parameters  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  are now also constrained below 10%, reaching 1% when adding non-linear scales. The remarkable improvement can be attributed to the fact that the combination of GC and WL Fisher matrices breaks many degeneracies in the parameter space. This is shown in Figure 3.17, where it is possible to notice how the two probes are almost orthogonal both in the  $\mu$ - $\eta$ - and  $\mu$ - $\Sigma$ -plane. Weak Lensing measures the changes in the Weyl potential, parametrized by  $\Sigma$ , while  $\mu$  is related to the Poisson equation, and therefore to the potential  $\Psi$ , modified by peculiar velocities and sensitive to Galaxy Clustering;  $\eta$  can also be written as a combination of  $\mu$  and  $\Sigma$  (see Eqn. 1.62).

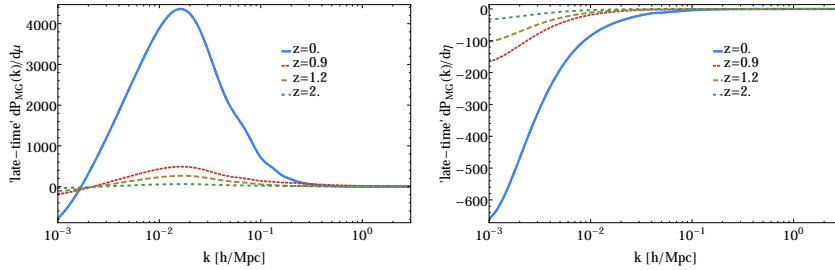
Further improvement is brought by the sensitivity of Galaxy Clustering to standard  $\Lambda$ CDM parameters; even though GC constraints on  $\Sigma$  and  $\eta$  are not as good as the ones for Weak Lensing, the better measurement of standard parameters provided by Galaxy Clustering breaks degeneracies in the Modified Gravity sector of the parameter space, leading to narrower bounds for  $\eta$  and  $\Sigma$  with respect to both probes taken separately. WL is instead not sensitive to modifications of the Poisson equation for matter and this explains why constraints on  $\mu$  are not improved by

the combination of the two probes, but are rather dominated by GC. The correlation among parameters can also help us explain the observed results. The Figure of Correlation, defined in Eq. (2.41), for GC (non-linear HS) alone is 4.9, while for WL (non-linear HS) the correlation is higher, with  $\text{FoC} = 16.9$ . When combining both probes (GC+WL (non-linear HS)) the FoC goes to an intermediate point of 7.6.

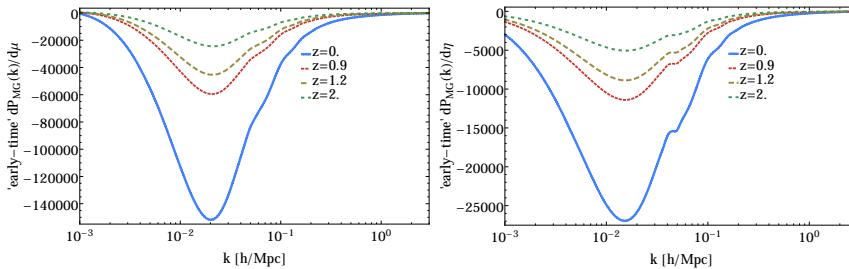
Given the constraining power of the GC+WL combination on MG functions, adding the *Planck* priors does not lead to significant improvements on the dark energy related parameters. On the other hand, standard parameters significantly benefit from the inclusion of CMB and background priors and we can expect this to be a relevant factor for MG models with degeneracies with  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  parameters, e.g. models affecting also the expansion history of the universe. An overview of the constraints on Modified Gravity described in this section is shown in Fig.3.17, with Euclid GC, Euclid WL and Euclid GC+WL combined with *Planck* priors.

### 3.6.1.5 Derivatives of the Power Spectrum with respect to $\mu$ and $\eta$

In this section we investigate the derivatives of the power spectrum with respect to the MG parameters. Using the Jacobians from the previous Appendix ??, we can convert our fundamental derivatives  $\partial P(k, z)/\partial E_{ij}$  to derivatives of  $\partial P(k, z)/\partial(\mu, \eta)$  evaluated at  $z = 0$ .



**FIGURE 3.18:** Derivatives of the matter power spectrum  $P(k, z)$  w.r.t. the MG parameters  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  in the late-time parametrization.



**FIGURE 3.19:** Derivatives of the matter power spectrum  $P(k, z)$  w.r.t. the MG parameters  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  in the early-time parametrization.

We can see from the previous figures that in the early-time parametrization the derivative of the power spectrum with respect to  $\eta$  has a similar shape as the derivative with respect to  $\mu$ , making  $\eta$  detectable by a Galaxy Clustering survey. To explain this, we derive the equation governing the evolution of density fluctuations for a cold dark matter (CDM) species, based on the equations implemented on the code MGCAMB presented in Hojjati, Pogosian, and Zhao, 2011, expressed here in the conformal Newtonian gauge. In the following, a dot represents derivative with

respect to conformal time  $\tau$ :

$$\dot{\delta} = -(1+w)(\theta - 3\dot{\Phi}) - 3\mathcal{H}\left(\frac{\delta P}{\delta\rho} - w\right)\delta \quad (3.33)$$

$$\dot{\theta} = -\mathcal{H}(1-3w)\theta - \frac{\dot{w}}{1+w}\theta + \frac{\delta P/\delta\rho}{1+w}k^2\delta - k^2\sigma + k^2\Psi \quad (3.34)$$

For CDM we have  $\sigma = w = c_s^2 = \delta P/\delta\rho = 0$ , then:

$$\dot{\delta} = -(\theta - 3\dot{\Phi}) \quad (3.35)$$

$$\dot{\theta} = -\mathcal{H}\theta + k^2\Psi \quad (3.36)$$

We have parameterized the solution to  $\Psi$  as:

$$k^2\Psi = -4\pi Ga^2\mu(\tau)\rho(\tau)\delta(\tau) , \quad (3.37)$$

and since we are also requiring gravitational slip  $\eta = \Phi/\Psi$ , we then have the Poisson equation for  $\Phi$ :

$$k^2\Phi = -4\pi Ga^2\mu(\tau)\eta(\tau)\rho(\tau)\delta(\tau) \quad (3.38)$$

Taking the time derivative of (3.35) and using (3.36) and (3.35) to replace  $\dot{\theta}$  and  $\theta$ , and substituting  $\Psi$  from (3.37), we obtain:

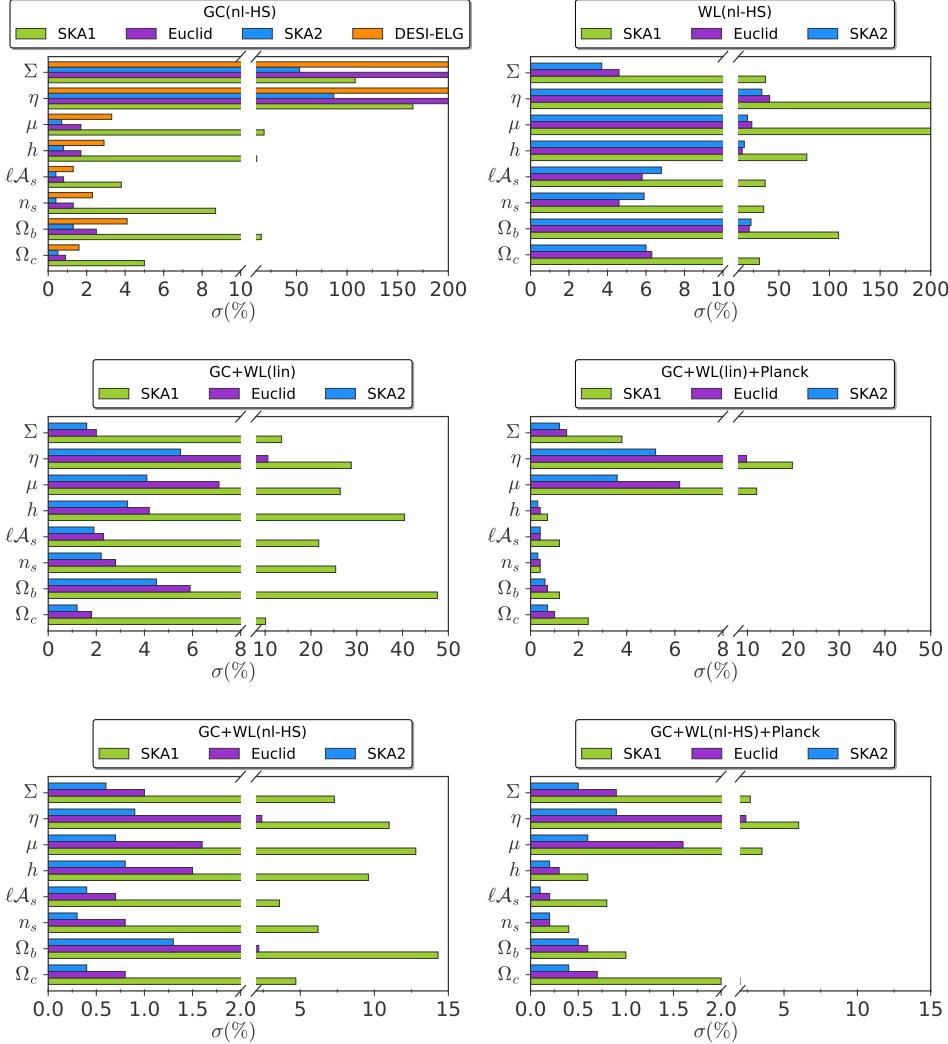
$$\ddot{\delta} + \mathcal{H}\dot{\delta} = 3\mathcal{H}\dot{\Phi} + 3\ddot{\Phi} + 4\pi Ga^2\mu\rho\delta \quad (3.39)$$

In general, derivatives of  $\Phi$  appearing on the right hand side will depend on both  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ . Their contribution is larger in the early-time parameterization with respect to the late-time one.

### 3.6.1.6 Forecasts in Modified Gravity for SKA1, SKA2 and DESI

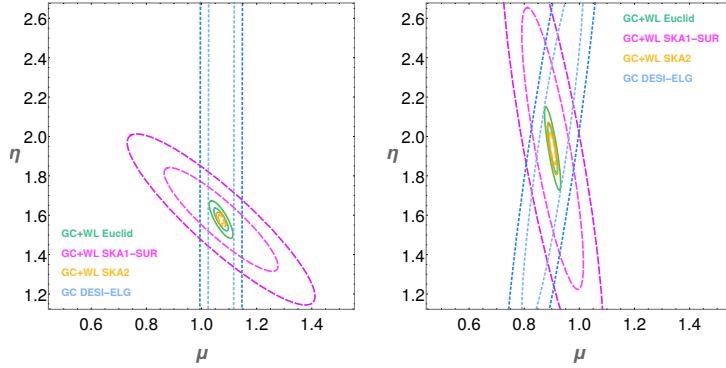
For the SKA1 and SKA2 surveys (whose specifications are explained in detail in Section 2.4.4), previous work on forecasting cosmological parameters has been done, among others, by Baker and Bull, 2015 and Bull, 2015. In the latter work, the author parameterizes the evolution of  $\mu(a)$  using the late-time parameterization, but also adds an extra parameter allowing for a scale dependence in  $\mu(a)$  and including a *Planck* prior. For a fixed scale, the  $1\sigma$  errors on the amplitude of  $\mu$  lie between 0.045 and 0.095, depending on the details of the SKA1 specifications, while for SKA2, this error is of about 0.017. This setting would correspond to our GC+WL(linear) + *Planck* case (see Table 3.5) where we find for SKA1 a  $1\sigma$  error on  $\mu$  of 0.12 and for SKA2 the forecasted error is 0.036. Our errors are somewhat larger, but we also have extended our analysis to let the gravitational slip  $\eta$  be different from 1 at present time, our departure from  $\mu = 1$  at present time is larger by a factor 4 and our linear forecast is conservative in the sense that it includes less wavenumbers  $k$  at higher redshifts, compared to theirs.

In Figure 3.20 we show the  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized forecasted errors on the parameters  $\{\Omega_m, \Omega_b, h, \ell\mathcal{A}_s, n_s, \mu, \Sigma\}$  for different Weak Lensing (left panel) and Galaxy Clustering (right panel) surveys in the late-time parameterization. In the GC case, the surveys considered are DESI-ELG (yellow), SKA2 (green), SKA1-SUR (orange) and Euclid (blue). For the WL forecast, we considered Euclid (blue), SKA1 (orange) and SKA2 (green). These constraints correspond to the ones listed in Table 3.5. The marginalized confidence contours for the  $\mu\text{-}\eta$  plane, comparing all these surveys, can be seen in the left panel of Fig. 3.21. The  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized constraints on



**FIGURE 3.20:**  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized errors on the parameters  $\{\Omega_m, \Omega_b, h, \ell A_s, n_s, \mu, \eta, \Sigma\}$  for the late-time parameterization of MG obtained by forecasts on Galaxy Clustering (non-linear HS) (top left panel), Weak Lensing (non-linear HS) (top right panel), the combinations GC+WL (linear) (middle left) and GC+WL+*Planck* (linear) (middle right) and the combinations GC+WL (non-linear HS) (bottom left) and GC+WL+*Planck* (non-linear) (bottom right). In the GC case, the surveys considered are SKA2 (blue), SKA1-SUR (green), Euclid Redbook (purple) and DESI-ELG (orange). For forecasts including WL, only Euclid, SKA1 and SKA2 are included. Although the  $1\sigma$  constraints on the standard parameters are overall weaker for WL than for GC, Weak Lensing surveys perform better on Modified Gravity parameters. Comparing the different surveys, Euclid and SKA2 perform similarly well for the WL observable alone, if non-linearities are included. Notice that SKA1-SUR performs better than Euclid on the  $\eta$  and  $\Sigma$  parameters, because it can measure better at lower redshifts. Including the *Planck* prior, the GC+WL combination for Euclid and SKA2 constrains all parameters at much better than percent accuracy. Detailed specifications of the different surveys are explained in the text.

the parameters are weaker for WL than for GC, which may be a consequence of the higher correlation among variables for the Weak Lensing observable, described in the previous section 3.6.1.4. Comparing the different surveys, the general trend is that Euclid and SKA2 perform at a similar level for WL at both linear and non-linear level; for GC and when combining both probes, SKA2 gives the strongest constraints, followed by Euclid, SKA1 and DESI (for GC). Notice that in this parameterization, a SKA1-SUR GC survey constrains the  $\Sigma$  parameter alone better than a Euclid Galaxy Clustering survey (although Euclid is overall much stronger as can be seen with the FoM). This is due to the fact that SKA1-SUR probes much lower redshifts (from  $z = 0.05 - 0.85$ ) than Euclid and is therefore suitable to better constrain those parameterizations in which the effect of the Modified Gravity parameters is stronger at lower redshifts; this is the case of the late-time parameterization, which is proportional to the dark energy density, dominating at low redshifts only. This result is reversed in the early time parameterization, in which Modified Gravity can play a role also at earlier redshifts.



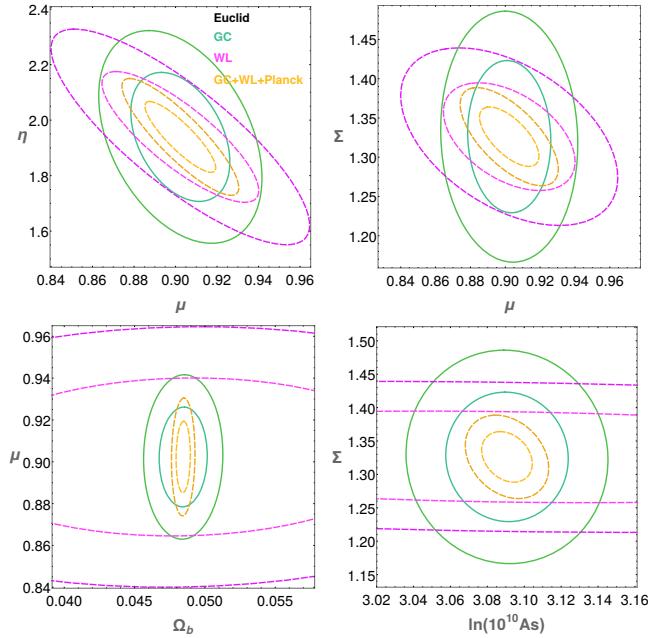
**FIGURE 3.21:**  $1\sigma$  and  $2\sigma$  fully marginalized confidence contours on the parameters  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ , for 3 different surveys combining Galaxy Clustering (GC) and Weak Lensing (WL): Euclid, SKA1-SUR and SKA2 and for GC only: DESI-ELG, all in the late-time (left panel) and early-time (right panel) parameterizations of sections 3.6.1 and 3.6.2, respectively. As explained in the main text, the constraints are parameterization-dependent, especially on  $\eta$ , where in the late-time scenario GC alone is not able to constrain it, while in the early-time scenario GC can constrain both  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ .

## 3.6.2 Modified Gravity in the early-time parameterization

### 3.6.2.1 Galaxy Clustering, Weak Lensing and its combination

We extend our analysis now to an alternative choice, the early time parameterization specified in Eqns. (1.65) and (1.66). As before, we use Euclid Redbook specifications for WL and GC and the cut in scales discussed previously for the two observables, i.e. a maximum wavelength cutoff at  $k_{\max} = 0.15$  for GC and a maximum multipole of  $\ell_{\max} = 1000$  for WL in the linear case, and a cutoff  $k_{\max} = 0.5h/\text{Mpc}$  and a maximum multipole of  $\ell_{\max} = 5000$  for WL in the non-linear regime, which is analyzed using the prescription described in Sec. 3.2.2.2. We use the two observables both separately and in combination, without accounting for cross correlation of the two (as discussed in section 3.3 this seems to correspond to a conservative choice), with and without *Planck* priors.

Results are shown in Table 3.4 and Figure 3.22. The general behaviour of the constraints is similar to the one in the late-time parameterization, with the combination of GC and WL able to break the degeneracies with standard cosmological parameters, leading to a significant improvement of the constraints on MG parameters, constraining  $\mu$  and  $\Sigma$  at the 1-2% level. There are some other interesting differences with the late-time scenario. First, the addition of *Planck* priors does not really improve much the constraints obtained by GC or WL alone, which was not the case in the late-time parameterization. This is related to the fact that in the early-time parameterization, GC and WL (non-linear) on their own are already good at constraining both  $\mu$  (at 2-3 %) and  $\eta$  (at around 8%), with consequently small errors on  $\Sigma$  ( $\approx 3\%$ ). In Appendix 3.6.1.5 we show the derivatives of the matter power spectrum with respect to the MG parameters  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  in both parameterizations. We can observe that in the early-time scenario, the derivative  $dP(k)/d\eta$  is larger than in the late-time parameterization, leading therefore to better constraints. Another difference lies in the correlation among parameters, which for WL and GC+WL is considerably smaller than in the late-time scenario. The Figure of Correlation (defined in Eqn. 2.41) for GC (non-linear HS) alone is 4.7, while for WL (non-linear HS) the correlation is somewhat higher, with FoC = 7.3. When combining both probes (GC+WL (non-linear HS)) the FoC goes to an intermediate point of 5.2.



**FIGURE 3.22:** Fisher Matrix marginalized forecasted contours ( $1\sigma$ ,  $2\sigma$ ) for the Euclid Redbook satellite in the early-time parameterization using mildly non-linear scales and the HS prescription. Green lines represent constraints from the Galaxy Clustering survey, pink lines stand for the Weak Lensing observables, and orange lines represent the GC+WL+*Planck* combined confidence regions. **Upper left:** contours for the fully marginalized errors on  $\eta$  and  $\mu$ . **Upper right:** contours for the fully marginalized errors on  $\Sigma$  and  $\mu$ . **Lower left:** contours for the fully marginalized errors on  $\mu$  and  $\Omega_b$ . **Lower right:** contours for the fully marginalized errors on  $\Sigma$  and  $\ln 10^{10} A_s$ . Notice that in this parameterization, GC and WL are able to constrain both  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  or  $\Sigma$  on their own.

### 3.6.2.2 Early time parameterization

In the early time case, we have two parameters for each  $\mu(a)$  and  $\eta(a)$  function as in Eq. (1.65). If we are interested in the parameters  $\mu$ ,  $\eta$  and  $\Sigma$  today ( $a = 1$ ), then the parameters  $E_{12}$  and  $E_{21}$  are not important anymore and we can simply marginalize over them in our Fisher matrix. Then the relation between  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  is very simple  $\{\mu, \eta\} = 1 + \{E_{11}, E_{22}\}$ . The corresponding Jacobian is simply a  $7 \times 7$  identity matrix and we can apply it to the Fisher matrix after we marginalize over the two unimportant parameters.

For the transformation to the pair  $\mu$ - $\Sigma$  we use the definition of  $\Sigma$  of Eq. (1.62) and then find the derivatives with respect to  $E_{ij}$ . We obtain

$$\frac{\partial \Sigma}{\partial E_{11}} = \frac{1}{2}(2 + E_{22}) \quad (3.40)$$

$$\frac{\partial \Sigma}{\partial E_{22}} = \frac{1}{2}(2 + E_{11}) \quad , \quad (3.41)$$

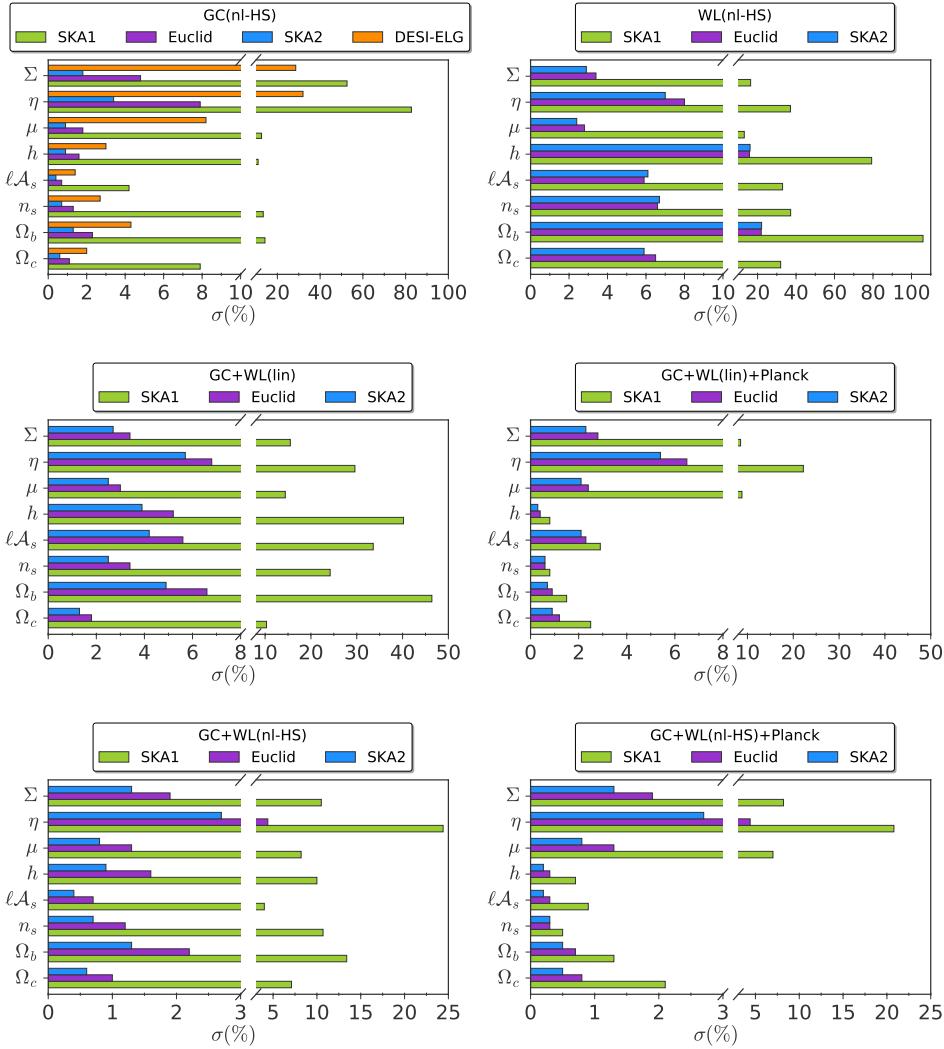
while all other derivatives remain the same.

### 3.6.2.3 Other Surveys: DESI-ELG, SKA1 and SKA2

Also in the early time parameterization we obtain the  $1-\sigma$  fully marginalized errors for Galaxy Clustering (top left panel of Figure 3.23) considering DESI-ELG (yellow), SKA2 (green), SKA1-SUR (orange) and Euclid (blue), and for Weak Lensing (top right panel of Figure 3.23) using Euclid (blue), SKA1 (orange) and SKA2 (green). We also report the results in Table 3.6, where it is possible to notice how the conclusions drawn on the hierarchy of the considered experiments do not change with respect to the late-time parameterization. The main difference is that in this case the full SKA1-SUR GC survey does not constrain the  $\Sigma$  parameter better than the Euclid survey; this is due to the fact that in the early time parametrization, deviations from  $\Lambda$ CDM are present also at high redshift, therefore we do expect the information present at small redshift to be as relevant as the one coming from higher  $z$ , where Euclid performs significantly better than SKA1-SUR. The marginalized contours for the  $\mu$ - $\eta$  plane, comparing all these surveys, can be seen in the right panel of Fig. 3.21.

## 3.6.3 Testing the effect of the Hu-Sawicki non-linear prescription on parameter estimation

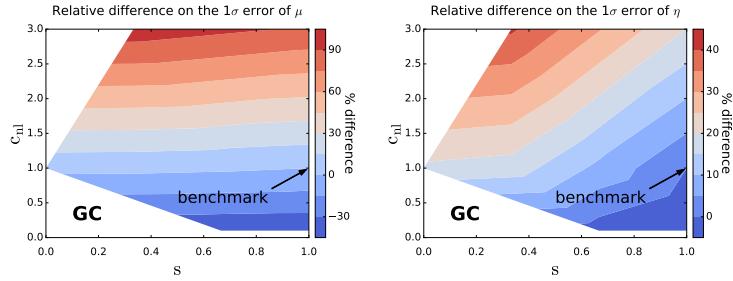
In this section we show the effect of changing the parameters  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  used in the HS prescription (specified in Eq. 3.1) for the mildly non-linear matter power spectrum. As mentioned already in Section 3.2.2.2, previous works (see Koyama, Taruya, and Hiramatsu, 2009; Zhao, 2014; Zhao, Li, and Koyama, 2011), have fitted the values of  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  to match N-body simulations in specific Modified Gravity models. In all these cases the HS parameters  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  have been found to be of order unity, with  $c_{\text{nl}}$  ranging usually from 0.1 to 3 and  $s$  from about 1/3 to a value of around 2. In the absence of N-body simulations for our models, we selected our benchmark HS parameters to be  $c_{\text{nl}} = 1$  and  $s = 1$ , as discussed in Section 3.2.2.2, which we used for all the analysis presented above. However, in order to test the effect of a change of  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  non-linear parameters on our estimation of errors on the cosmological parameters, we perform our GC and WL forecasts on the MG



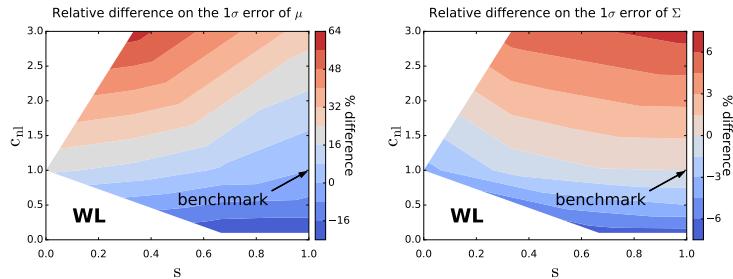
**FIGURE 3.23:** Same as Fig.3.20 but for the early-time parameterization (Eqns. 1.65,1.66) The  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized constraints on the parameters are weaker for WL than for GC, which is a consequence of the higher correlation among variables for the Weak Lensing observable.

late-time model (Section 3.6.1) also changing one at a time the values of both HS parameters. We use the following values for our test:  $c_{\text{nl}} = \{0.1, 0.5, 1, 3\}$  and  $s = \{0, 1/3, 2/3, 1\}$ .

In Figure 3.24 we show the percentage discrepancy between the  $1\sigma$  marginalized error obtained on parameters in the GC non-linear HS benchmark case (see Table 3.3 for the exact values) and the corresponding error obtained by performing the same forecast with a different value of the  $c_{\text{nl}}-s$  parameters. In general terms we see that for the MG parameter  $\mu$  (left panel of Figure 3.24) the relative difference in the estimation of the  $1\sigma$  forecasted errors can lie between 90% (at  $c_{\text{nl}} = 3, s = 0.33$ ) and -30% for  $c_{\text{nl}} = 0.1$  and  $s = 1.0$ . The behavior of the contour lines shows us that for a fixed value of  $c_{\text{nl}}$ , the forecasted error on the parameter  $\mu$  remains unaffected. For  $\eta$  (right panel) the relative discrepancy lies between 40% and -2%. Here, to get the same  $1\sigma$  errors on  $\eta$ , one would have to vary both  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$ . We also tested the effect on the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM parameters and found it to be smaller than 4% for all choices of  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$ . In the case of WL forecasts, we perform the same tests, which



**FIGURE 3.24:** Effect of the  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  parameters on the  $1\sigma$  marginalized error of the  $\mu$  (left panel) and the  $\eta$  (right panel) parameters in the MG late-time parametrization for a Euclid Galaxy Clustering forecast with Redbook specifications. The colored contours show the percentage discrepancy when departing from the benchmark case  $c_{\text{nl}} = 1$  and  $s = 1$  (marked with a black arrow) to all other points in the  $c_{\text{nl}}\text{-}s$  space. The red (blue) contours signal the regions of maximum positive (negative) discrepancy. For example in the left panel, choosing  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  in the red region, will yield a  $1\sigma$  marginalized error on  $\mu$  which is 90% larger than in the benchmark case (see Table 3.3 for the benchmark forecast). For the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM cosmological parameters (not shown here) the discrepancy is smaller than 4% for all choices of  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$ .



**FIGURE 3.25:** Same as Fig.3.24 but for a Weak Lensing Euclid forecast using Redbook specifications. In the left panel, choosing  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  in the red region, will yield a  $1\sigma$  marginalized error on  $\mu$  which is 60% larger than in the benchmark case (see Table 3.3 for the benchmark forecast). In the right panel we see that for the MG parameter  $\Sigma$  the maximum positive and negative discrepancy is only of about 6%. The maximum and minimum discrepancy for the MG parameter  $\eta$  is of -15% and 50%. This means that the parameter  $\Sigma$  (defined as the lensing Weyl potential, and therefore directly constrained by Weak Lensing) is much less sensitive to changes in the non-linear prescription parameters.

are shown in Figure 3.25. We can observe that the relative discrepancies in the case of the  $\mu$  parameter lie between  $\sim 60\%$  and  $\sim -15\%$ , while for  $\Sigma$  the discrepancy is considerably smaller. The  $1\sigma$  error on  $\Sigma$  varies only between  $\pm 6\%$ . This is however a particular effect of choosing  $\Sigma$ , which is the true WL observable. If we perform this test on  $\eta$  using WL, we will find a stronger discrepancy, that lies in between  $\sim 50\%$  and  $\sim -15\%$ , similar to the one found for  $\mu$ .

We can also test the effect of adding these two HS parameters as extra nuisance parameters to our model of the non-linear power spectrum; therefore, by taking derivatives of the observed power spectrum with respect to these parameters, we can forecast what would be the estimated error on  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$ . Then, marginalizing over  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  would yield more realistic constraints on our cosmological parameters, and take into account our ignorance on the correct parameters of the HS prescription. In Table 3.7 we list the  $1\sigma$  marginalized constraints on  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  for

our benchmark fiducial ( $c_{\text{nl}} = 1, s = 1$ ) and using the standard fiducial for the cosmological parameters used previously for the MG late time parametrization.

Taking these HS parameters into account in our Fisher forecast, will automatically change the constraints on the other parameters. For our method to be consistent, we would like this effect to remain as small as possible. In Table 3.7, we list the same constraints reported in Table 3.3, but obtained marginalizing over  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  at the benchmark fiducial  $c_{\text{nl}} = 1, s = 1$ . Comparing the two tables, we can see that for GC the errors on the cosmological parameters remain quite stable, except for  $\eta$  and  $\Sigma$ ; this is understandable since those parameters are not well constrained by GC alone. For WL, we see a difference of 4 to 7 percent points in the errors on  $h$ ,  $n_s$  and  $\Omega_b$ , while all other errors remain stable, with  $\Sigma$  varying less than 2 percent points. Remarkably, the combined constraints from GC+WL are even less affected by the two nuisance parameters. Comparing the Modified Gravity FoM between the two tables, shows the expected behavior, the MG FoM is reduced when adding two extra parameters, but the change is very small, of just 0.3-0.5 nits.

Euclid (Redbook)	$\Omega_c$	$\Omega_b$	$n_s$	$\ell\mathcal{A}_s$	$h$	$\mu$	$\eta$	$\Sigma$	$c_{\text{nl}}$	$s$	MG FoM
Fiducial	0.254	0.048	0.969	3.060	0.682	1.042	1.719	1.416	1	1	relative
GC(nl-HS)	1.0%	2.8%	1.3%	1.1%	2.0%	1.7%	784%	480%	372%	236%	2.4
WL(nl-HS)	6.5%	25%	8.3%	9.1%	19%	25%	46%	6.0%	1680%	899%	4.2
GC+WL(nl-HS)	1%	2.8%	1.2%	1%	1.9%	1.6%	2.6%	1.2%	333%	166%	8.5

**TABLE 3.7:**  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized errors on the cosmological parameters and the two HS parameters  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  for a Euclid Galaxy Clustering forecast, a Weak Lensing forecast and the combination of both in the late-time parameterization of Modified Gravity using non-linear scales and the HS prescription. In contrast to Table 3.3 (where  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  had been fixed to the benchmark value) here we include  $c_{\text{nl}}$  and  $s$  as free parameters and marginalize over them. The MG FoM is computed relative to the same Euclid Redbook GC linear case, used previously. The errors and the MG FoM show the expected behavior of adding two nuisance parameters, and remain quite stable. All other naming conventions are the same as for Table 3.3. Remarkably, the combination of GC and WL is still able to constrain all Modified Gravity parameters at the level of 1-2 % after marginalizing over the non-linear parameters.

## 3.7 Conclusions

We study in this paper the constraining power of upcoming large scale surveys on Modified Gravity theories, choosing a phenomenological approach that does not require to specify any particular model. To this purpose we consider the two functions  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  that encode general modifications to the Poisson equation and the anisotropic stress. We study three different approaches to MG: redshift-binning, where we discretize the functions  $\mu(z)$  and  $\eta(z)$  in 5 redshift bins and let the values of  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  in each of the bins vary independently with respect to the others; an early-time parameterization, where  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  are allowed to vary at early times and their amplitude can be different from unity today; a late-time parameterization where  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  are linked to the energy density of dark energy and therefore they are very close to unity in the past, but they can vary considerably at small redshifts. For convenience, we summarize all results in Table ??, with a direct link to the section and tables related to each scenario.

We use the predictions of linear perturbation theory to compute the linear power spectrum in Modified Gravity and then use a prescription to add the non-linearities,

by interpolating between Halofit non-linear corrections computed for the linear power spectrum for the MG model and for the corresponding GR model ( $\eta = \mu = 1$ ). We find that the non-linear power spectrum is sensitive to changes in  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ ; limiting the analysis to linear scales significantly reduces the constraining power on the anisotropic stress. Using this prescription, we perform Fisher forecasts for Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing, taking into account linear and non-linear scales. We use the specifications for Euclid (using Redbook specifications), SKA1 & SKA2 and DESI (only ELG). In addition to these surveys we also include *Planck* priors obtained by performing an MCMC analysis with *Planck* data for the MG parametrizations considered here.

In the redshift-binned case, we find that in the linear case the  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  parameters are strongly correlated, while including the information coming from non linear scales reduces this correlation. We compute a figure of merit (FoM), given by the determinant of the  $\mu$ - $\eta$  part of the Fisher matrix, for the cases examined, finding that the combination of Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing is able to break the degeneracies among Modified Gravity parameters; as an example the error obtained with the non-linear prescription on  $\mu$  ( $\eta$ ) in the first redshift bin changes from 7% (20%) for Galaxy Clustering to 2.2% (3.6%) when this is combined with Weak Lensing, even if Weak Lensing alone is not very constraining for the same parameters. Overall, constraints are stronger at low redshifts, with the first two bins ( $0 < z < 1$ ) being constrained at better than 5% for both  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  if non-linearities are included (while the constraints are half as good, < 10%, if we only consider linear scales).

Given the significant correlation between the  $\mu_i$  and  $\eta_i$  parameters, we apply the ZCA decorrelation method, in order to find a set of uncorrelated variables, which gives us information on which redshift dependence of  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  will be best constrained by future surveys. If one combines GC+WL (Euclid Redbook)+*Planck*, the best constrained combinations of parameters (effectively  $2\mu + \eta$  in the lowest redshift bin) will be measured with a precision of better than 1%. In the linear case, the errors on the decorrelated  $q_i$  parameters are about 2 orders of magnitude smaller than for the primary parameters, while in the non-linear HS case, the improvement in the errors is of one order of magnitude. This also shows that applying a decorrelation procedure is worth even when non-linearities are considered.

In addition to binning Modified Gravity functions in redshift, we also forecast the constraining power of the same probes in the case where we assume a specific time evolution for the  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  functions. We choose two different and complementary time evolutions, used in Planck Collaboration, Ade, and others, 2016b and to which we refer as late-time and early-time evolution. We investigate also in this case the impact of the non-linear prescription interpolating between Halofit and the MG power spectrum. For these parameterizations we extract constraints on the present reconstructed value of  $\mu$ ,  $\eta$  and  $\Sigma$ , where the latter is the parameter actually measured directly by Weak Lensing. In the late time parameterization, in the linear case,  $\mu$  is mainly constrained by GC (although poorly, at the level of 17%) while WL constrains directly  $\Sigma$ , the modification of the lensing potential, at the level of 9%. Adding non-linear scales allows to significantly improve constraints down to less than 2% for GC (on  $\mu$ ) and to less than 5% on  $\Sigma$  for those two probes. Combining probes allows to reach 1 – 2% on all Modified Gravity values of the  $\mu$ ,  $\eta$  and  $\Sigma$  functions at  $z = 0$ .

In the early-time parameterization, we find that including non-linearities allows to constrain also the  $\eta$  and  $\Sigma$  functions with GC alone at the level of 8% and 5%, respectively. This is related to the early time deviations from GR allowed by this parameterization, which are not present in the late time case: a variation in  $\eta$  can

yield a variation of the amplitude of the power spectrum, which can then be measured in the mildly non-linear regime. Overall, also in this case the combination of Weak Lensing and Galaxy Clustering leads to errors of the order of 1% on the values of these functions at present.

Finally, we test the impact on the forecasts given by uncertainties appearing in the non linear HS prescription, related in particular to the parameters  $c_{nl}$  and  $s$ . We find that the errors on the parameters  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  can vary by up to 90% for the Galaxy Clustering case and up to 65% for Weak Lensing when we change the fiducial values of the HS parameters in a region between 0 and 3 for  $c_{nl}$  and 0 and 1 for  $s$ . The effect on  $\Sigma$  is quite small, with a discrepancy of  $\pm 6\%$  compared to the benchmark case. Interestingly, when we include these two parameters as extra nuisance parameters in our forecast formalism and marginalize over them, the effect is very small and the errors found previously remain stable both for GC, WL and their combination.

It is clear that limiting the analysis to linear scales discards important information encoded in structure formation. On the other hand, a realistic analysis of non-linear scales would have to include several further effects (baryonic effects, higher order RSD's, damping of BAO peaks, corrections to peculiar velocity perturbations, higher order perturbation theory in Modified Gravity, just to name a few), which make our non-linear case an optimistic limit. Therefore, the quantitative true constraints given by a survey like Euclid will probably lie in between these two limiting cases.

## Chapter 4

# Forecasts for coupled dark energy in the non-linear regime

### 4.1 Introduction

To do (20)

Cosmological data have reached a level of precision that forces us to address effects which may have been safely neglected in the past. Among them, predicting the behaviour of theoretical models at non-linear scales gives a more concrete chance to disentangle  $\Lambda$ CDM from alternative scenarios. The non-linear power spectrum contains useful information encoded in the clustering of galaxies and the weak lensing correlations, which can help to constrain more tightly the cosmological parameters and remove certain degeneracies between them. The drawback relies in the fact that the full estimate of the non-linear power spectrum requires time-demanding and computationally expensive N-body simulations. As a consequence, there exist simulations only for a handful of models beyond  $\Lambda$ CDM on a very limited subset of the parameter space of dark energy theories. This makes it hard to use the non-linear power spectrum in forecasts (see e.g.), both when doing cosmological parameter estimation via Monte Carlo simulations and with the simpler approximation of the Fisher matrix formalism. The alternative is to employ fitting functions for the non-linear power spectrum, like Halofit (Smith et al., 2003; Takahashi et al., 2012) or machine learning estimators like the cosmological emulator (CosmicEmu) (Heitmann et al., 2014, 2010; Lawrence et al., 2010) and the interpolator PkANN Agarwal et al., 2012, 2014 based on artificial neural networks. All these methods are calibrated or trained using large sets of N-body simulations and typically permit an exploration of the parameter space just around a fiducial  $\Lambda$ CDM cosmology or  $w$ CDM cosmology with a constant  $w$ . An extension of Halofit to account for massive neutrinos was realised in (Bird, Viel, and Haehnelt, 2011), which was then used in (Audren et al., 2013) to perform a parameter estimation using a Markov Chain Monte Carlo technique. Other authors have recently used polynomial fits to take into account systematic effects in the non-linear regime like baryonic effects such as in Bielefeld, Huterer, and Linder, 2014 or to parametrize the cosmological dependence of non-linear clustering, beyond the Zeldovich approximation (see Mohammed and Seljak, 2014). These fitting functions have, however, an intrinsic error that usually increases when scales become highly non-linear; therefore one has to be aware of the range in scales and redshifts they were designed to work on, in order to keep the errors induced on the power spectrum under control.

As an alternative to fitting formulae and N-body simulations, there has been in recent years a substantial progress in semi-analytical methods to calculate the

non-linear power spectrum at mildly non-linear scales, such as for example renormalized perturbation theory (Crocce and Scoccimarro, 2006b) and all other resummation methods derived from it (for example Anselmi and Pietroni, 2012b), the time renormalisation group (TRG) (Pietroni, 2008b) and effective field theories of large scale structure Baumann et al., 2010. Most of these approaches claim to reach percent accuracy at the baryon acoustic oscillation (BAO) scale and a bit beyond the second BAO peak, but they are still not able to predict what happens at highly non-linear scales, when the single stream approximation does not hold any longer.

In this paper, we will use N-Body simulations to find fitting functions for a class of models beyond  $\Lambda$ CDM usually referred to as coupled Dark Energy (CDE). These models, widely discussed in literature (Amendola, 2000, 2004; Pettorino and Baccigalupi, 2008; Wetterich, 1995), involve an extra degree of freedom, associated to a scalar field that provides acceleration and mediates a fifth force, in addition to gravity, which is felt by dark matter particles only. Semi-analytical non-linear analysis Saracco et al., 2010a; Wintergerst and Pettorino, 2010 and cosmological N-body simulations within coupled Dark Energy have been performed by many different groups (Baldi, 2012b; Baldi et al., 2010; Carlesi et al., 2014; Li and Barrow, 2011; Maccio et al., 2004; Penzo et al., 2015) and their effects on large scale structure formation have been identified and characterised. The power spectrum, halo mass functions and concentration, halo spin and sphericity, voids and amount of substructures show noticeable differences compared to a simple  $\Lambda$ CDM model (see for example (Baldi, 2011; Baldi, Lee, and Maccio, 2011; Cui, Baldi, and Borgani, 2012; Macciò, Dutton, and Bosch, 2008; Mainini and Bonometto, 2006; Sutter et al., 2014) and the review article (Baldi, 2012a)). For a constant coupling, constraints have been found for a variety of probes (Amendola and Quercellini, 2004; Pettorino, 2013; Pettorino et al., 2012; Xia, 2009), with the latest ones discussed by the Planck collaboration in (Collaboration, 2015). Recently there have been attempts to constrain more general couplings between dark matter (DM) and dark energy (DE) using large-scale structure (Creminelli et al., 2014), CMB (Morris and Green, 2014) or laboratory experiments (Hamilton et al., 2015). Forecasts on coupled dark energy using galaxy clustering (GC) and weak lensing (WL) measurements for future surveys like Euclid have been discussed in (Amendola et al., 2012b), but have been performed using only linear power spectra for the CDE models. The TRG method has been extended to coupled Dark Energy (Saracco et al., 2010b) and to massive neutrinos (Lesgourgues et al., 2009). However the TRG method does not produce a reliable estimation of the power spectrum for scales larger than  $k \approx 0.3h/\text{Mpc}$ , which makes them less suitable for forecasts which attempt to extract information on highly non-linear scales.

The CoDECS (Coupled Dark Energy Cosmological Simulations) set of N-body simulations (Baldi, 2012b) has shown that CDE models have characteristic and measurable features in the morphology and history of non-linear structures, such as halos, subhalos and voids, and therefore in the non-linear power spectrum.

The aim of this paper is to create fitting functions which are valid in the observable regime of non-linear perturbations at all interesting redshifts and reproduce the subtle effects of coupled dark energy on the non-linear power spectrum while allowing us to vary the different parameters of the model. We use this to perform forecasts of cosmological parameters assuming coupled dark energy as the fiducial model, using galaxy clustering and weak lensing as observational tools, as expected for future surveys like Euclid Amendola et al., 2012a; Laureijs and others, 2011. We do a careful treatment of errors and systematics, so that we take into account all errors induced by our fitting functions, the cosmic emulators and the extraction of

Parameter	Explanation	Value	Reference $\Lambda$ CDM
$A$	Potential normalization	0.0218	—
$\alpha$	Potential slope	0.08	—
$\phi(z = 0)$	Scalar field normalization	0	—
$\beta$	Coupling parameter	{0.05, 0.10, 0.15}	—
$w_\phi(z = 0)$	DE equation of state	{−0.997, −0.995, −0.992}	−1
$\sigma_8(z = 0)$	Power spectrum amplitude	{0.825, 0.875, 0.967}	0.809

**TABLE 4.1:** The main parameters and normalizations of the three coupled DE models of the Codecs suite considered in the present work. The last column displays the corresponding value<sup>1</sup> for the reference  $\Lambda$ CDM cosmology.

the power spectrum from the N-body simulation into the analysis, systematics related to non-linear effects that affect the redshift space distortions and the lensing signals. In this way we obtain a conservative estimate on how well a probe like Euclid, will be able to measure a DM-DE coupling.

## 4.2 Coupled Dark Energy

In this section we briefly review the main equations governing the coupled DE models that will be investigated in the present work. For a more detailed and extended discussion and for the full derivation of the equations we refer the interested reader to some of the original publications on the subject (Amendola, 2000, 2004; Baldi et al., 2010; Pettorino and Baccigalupi, 2008).

## 4.3 The CoDECS simulations

The CODECS suite<sup>1</sup> includes simulated periodic volumes of the universe at different scales and with different physical ingredients (as e.g. simulations with and without hydrodynamics) in the context of a series of coupled DE cosmologies characterised by various choices of the self-interaction potential  $V(\phi)$  and of the coupling functions  $\beta(\phi)$ . The simulations have been performed with a suitably modified version (see (Baldi, 2012b) for more details on the numerical implementation) of the widely-used TreePM N-body code GADGET (Springel, 2005). Such modified version includes all the relevant effects that characterise coupled DE cosmologies, from the modified background evolution to the CDM particle mass variation, the “fifth-force” and the velocity-dependent acceleration appearing in equation (1.77).

As already stated above, in this work we will consider – besides the reference  $\Lambda$ CDM simulation – the subset of CODECS runs characterised by an exponential potential and by a constant coupling function. This consists of three different coupled DE models with the same potential slope  $\alpha$  and with three values of the coupling  $\beta = \{0.05, 0, 1, 0.15\}$ . The short names for these simulations are respectively EXP001, EXP002 and EXP003. All the models have been built in order to have the same cosmological parameters at  $z = 0$  consistent with the WMAP7 results (Komatsu et al., 2010), see Table 4.2, with the obvious exception of the value of the equation of state parameter  $w_0$ , that changes from model to model due to the different dynamics of the DE scalar field. The present observational constraints on the cosmological parameters have only slightly changed with the latest updated release of Planck data (Ade et al., 2015) with respect to the assumed WMAP7 values, and are still good enough for the purposes of this paper, being in good agreement with large scale structure observations. For what concerns linear perturbations, all cosmologies have been normalised to have the same statistics (i.e. the same power spectrum shape and amplitude) of density fluctuations at the redshift of the Cosmic Microwave Background  $z_{\text{CMB}} \approx 1100$ . As a consequence of this choice and of the different growth associated with

<sup>1</sup>see also the public CoDECS database at [www.marcobaldi.it/CoDECS/](http://www.marcobaldi.it/CoDECS/)

Parameter	Value
$H_0$	$70.3 \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{Mpc}^{-1}$
$\Omega_{CDM}$	0.226
$\Omega_{DE}$	0.729
$A_s$	$2.42 \times 10^{-9}$
$\Omega_b$	0.0451
$n_s$	0.966

TABLE 4.2: The set of cosmological parameters used in all CoDECS simulations, consistent with the WMAP7 results.

the various coupling values, all the models will have a different normalisation  $\sigma_8$  of the linear perturbations amplitude at  $z = 0$ . The main features of these models are summarised in Table ???. We refer to (Baldi, 2012b) for further details.

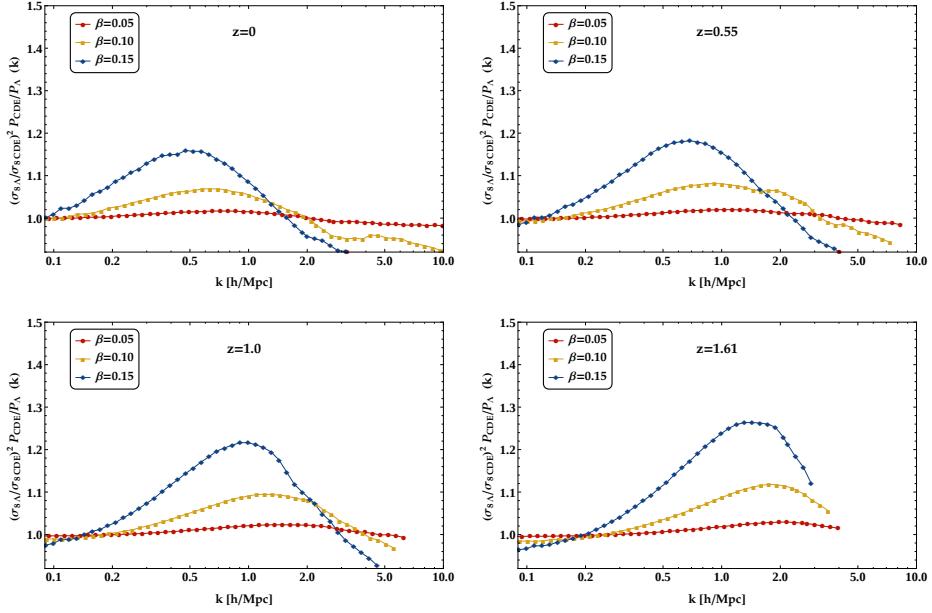
For the purposes of the present work, we will employ the matter power spectra extracted from the CoDECS runs of these cosmologies at different redshifts in order to find a fitting formula that captures with high accuracy the deviations of the coupled DE nonlinear power spectra from the reference  $\Lambda$ CDM case.

#### 4.4 Extracting the power spectrum at small scales

The power spectrum  $P(k)$ , is defined as the ensemble average of the density contrast in Fourier space  $\langle \delta(k)\delta(k') \rangle \equiv (2\pi)^3 P(k)\delta_D(k+k')$ . When trying to extract this quantity from an N-body simulation, one has to take into account several technicalities related to *sampling* effects which appear as a consequence of treating a *discrete* distribution of particles. For more details related to this problem and different solution methods, see (Cui et al., 2008).

At large scales (or equivalently small  $k$ ) the power spectrum suffers from uncertainties due to the finite size of the simulation box, since there are only few independent modes to sample the signal from. On the other hand, at high  $k$ , one is limited by the resolution of the simulation, since one cannot sample wave modes smaller than the typical grid size  $L/N$  where  $L$  is the length of one side of the simulation box and  $N$  is the number of particles. This maximum frequency is called the Nyquist frequency  $k_{Ny} \equiv 2\pi N/L$  and modes smaller than this cannot be reliably measured (this corresponds to the so-called aliasing effect). For the CoDECS simulations used in this work, the Nyquist frequency has the value  $k_{Ny} \approx 2.2 \text{ h/Mpc}$  at present time.

The power spectrum computation embedded in GADGET-3 that was adopted in the CODECS simulations employs the so-called folding method developed by Colombi et al., 2009 – which is based on Jenkins et al., 1999 – to calculate the matter power spectrum for smaller scales than the Nyquist frequency. Following this method one ends up with two separate power spectra,  $P_{top}$  which is calculated using the simulation particle mesh (PM) at  $k \lesssim k_{Ny}$  and  $P_{fold}$  which is the folded power valid for  $k \gtrsim k_{Ny}$ . In order to provide a single sampling of the power spectrum across  $k_{Ny}$  the CoDECS project employed a simple interpolation procedure around  $k_{Ny}$  by averaging the two power spectra in the region of overlap. However, this might introduce some spurious features that appear only when considering the ratio of two power spectra  $P(k)$  at highly non-linear scales. Although such features are harmless for most practical purposes, for the aims of the present work it is very important to have accurate ratios of power spectra, since we want to calculate fitting functions that can capture the effect of the dark energy - dark matter coupling compared to  $\Lambda$ CDM and therefore we need to correct for these spurious effects.



**FIGURE 4.1:** Ratios of the non-linear matter power spectra of the CODECS CDE models with an exponential potential, with respect to the CODECS  $\Lambda$ CDM power spectra, normalized by their respective  $\sigma_8^2$ , evaluated at four different redshifts and three different coupling constants  $\beta$ . Upper left panel:  $z = 0$ , upper right panel:  $z = 0.55$ , lower left panel:  $z = 1.0$ , lower right panel:  $z = 1.61$ . The blue line represents the model with strongest coupling  $\beta = 0.15$ , the yellow line  $\beta = 0.10$  and the red line the smallest available coupling  $\beta = 0.05$ . In order to be able to observe the net effect of the  $\beta$  coupling at non-linear scales we have divided each power spectrum by its respective  $\sigma_8^2$ .

We then developed a PYTHON code that finds the optimal interpolation and matching between the  $P_{top}$  and  $P_{fold}$  power spectra. By evaluating the first and second derivatives of the ratios and minimizing abrupt changes, it finds the optimal number of points to be removed from  $P_{top}$  due to the aliasing error and the number of points to be removed from the  $P_{fold}$  due to the low sampling error; at the same time it looks for the optimal linear interpolation weights between them. Moreover, it cuts off the power spectrum when the shot noise error ( $P_{shot} = 1/N$ ) reaches 10% of the estimated power spectrum. This method improves considerably the convergence of the fitting functions at non-linear scales, allowing us to reach our accuracy goal of 1-2% (see section 4.5 on fitting functions). In figure (4.4), the uncertainties on  $P(k)$  are plotted, and the shaded region represents the error on the power spectrum due to the finite number of modes available. The clear jump present in this shaded region occurs at the scale in which the folded and top level power spectra have been matched together, which corresponds roughly to  $k_{Ny}$ .

## 4.5 Fitting functions

### 4.5.1 The net effect of the DM-DE coupling at non-linear scales

We now model the net effect of a coupled DE model with an exponential potential and a constant coupling on top of a fiducial  $\Lambda$ CDM non-linear power spectrum, by evaluating the ratio of the non-linear power spectrum of the coupled DE model,

with respect to the one in the  $\Lambda$ CDM model, both extracted from the CoDECS simulations. In figure (4.1) we show the ratio  $R(k; \beta, z) \equiv P_{Exp}(k; \beta, z)/P_{LCDM}(k; \beta, z)$  as a function of the scale  $k$ , for four different redshifts  $z = \{0, 0.55, 1.0, 1.61\}$ ; each panel contains the curves corresponding to the three available constant couplings in the CoDECS simulations:  $\beta = \{0.05, 0.10, 0.15\}$ . Since all coupled DE models have the same amplitude of perturbations at recombination, an increasing coupling has the effect of inducing a higher linear normalization  $\sigma_8$  of the power spectrum at  $z = 0$  (Baldi, 2012b). Therefore, in order to see the net effect of the coupling at non-linear scales, each power spectrum ratio has been re-normalized by dividing each model by its respective  $\sigma_8^2$ , so that at linear scales  $k \lesssim 0.1 h/\text{Mpc}$  all the ratios are unity. The net effect of the fifth force is a “bump” at non-linear scales, whose amplitude increases with higher couplings and whose maximum is shifted into higher wavenumbers  $k$  for higher redshifts. This extra information imprinted into the non-linear power spectrum is what we want to use to improve the estimation of parameters using future surveys. To achieve this, we will fit these curves which are functions of redshift, physical scale and coupling, using the minimal number of numerical parameters possible, while keeping the accuracy goal at the 1% level.

#### 4.5.2 Generating the fitting functions

The fact that one can observe a clear trend that relates the amplitude of the signal to an increase of the coupling, together with a shift of the peak towards larger length scales when looking at smaller redshifts, is an indication that we should be able to find a relatively simple fitting formula describing this behaviour, which will be then a function of  $z$ ,  $k$  and the coupling constant  $\beta$  only.

To perform the fit, we use a least-squares-minimizing technique, using the conjugate gradient method *Least Squares Fitting*. Taking into account the particular form in  $k$ -space of the ratios  $R(k; \beta, z) \equiv P_{EXP}(k; \beta, z)/P_{LCDM}(k; \beta, z)$  that we need to fit, we use as an Ansatz different sigmoid functions to reproduce the particular form of the peak. For each fitting model, we keep the same functional form for the  $k$ -dependence of  $R(k; \beta, z)$  at all redshifts and for all couplings. We tried 7 different sigmoid functions as fitting models, but we only show the best two models M2 and M7 in table 4.3. All models contain 5 coefficients, which are dependent on the coupling  $\beta$  and the redshift  $z$ : ( $a_i = a_0, a_1, c, b, k_0$ , with  $i = 0, \dots, 5$ ). The coefficients  $k_0$  and  $b$  determine qualitatively the form of the peak to be fitted, while the others control mostly the shifting and the flattening of the peak.

Each coefficient  $a_i$  is then fitted using a polynomial in  $\beta$  and  $z$ , up to a maximum of third order in powers of  $\beta$  and  $z$ . Polynomials of order 4 and 5 were also examined, but the gain in goodness of fit was minimal compared to the increase in the number of free parameters. Therefore, third order polynomials were the best compromise between complexity and goodness of fit.

The best fitting models were chosen according to their coefficient of determination (also known as  $R^2$ -value), which is a statistical measure for the goodness-of-fit *Correlation Coefficient*. It can be simply defined as  $R^2 = 1 - S_{res}/S_{tot}$ , where  $S_{res}$  is the residual sum of squares (the residual between the data points and the fitting function) and  $S_{tot}$ , which is the total sum of squares and is proportional to the variance of the data. An  $R^2$ -value of 1 corresponds to a perfect fit. The analytical expressions for the best models M2 and M7 are shown in table 4.3, together with their  $R^2$ -value. We performed the whole Fisher analysis (see section ?? below), for both of the models and the results on the parameter estimation are basically the same (less than half of a percent relative difference in the estimated final errors).

Model Name	Functional form	# of coeff.	R <sup>2</sup> -value
M2	$f(k) = 1 + a_0 + a_1 \cdot k + c \cdot k \cdot \arctan((k - k_0) \cdot b)$	5	0.99996
M7	$f(k) = 1 + a_0 + a_1 \cdot k + c \cdot k \cdot \frac{b \cdot (k - k_0)}{\sqrt{1 + b^2 \cdot (k - k_0)^2}}$	5	0.999989

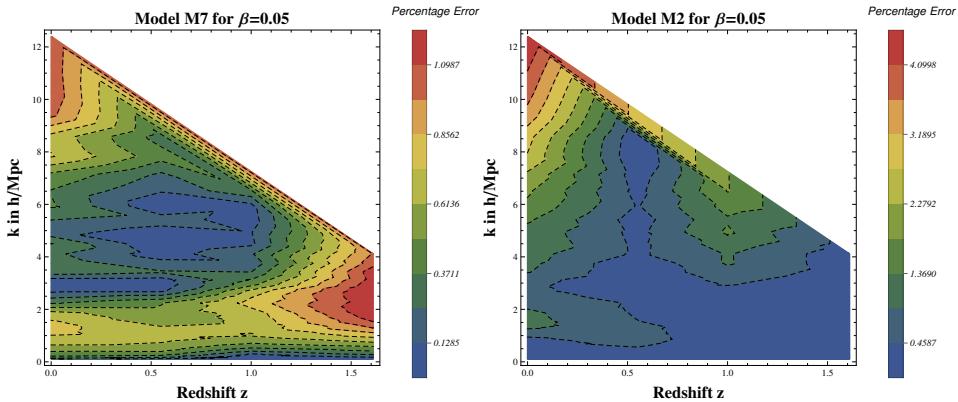
**TABLE 4.3:** Fitting models M2 and M7 with their corresponding number of fitting coefficients and their R<sup>2</sup>-value. Each coefficient  $a_0$ ,  $a_1$ ,  $c$ ,  $b$  and  $k_0$  is fitted as a polynomial in the coupling parameter  $\beta$  and the redshift  $z$  (see Appendix ?? for further details). The R<sup>2</sup>-value is a measure of the goodness of fit: a value of 1 corresponds to a perfect fit, while 0 means that the model does not fit the data.

### 4.5.3 Fitting functions and cosmological parameters

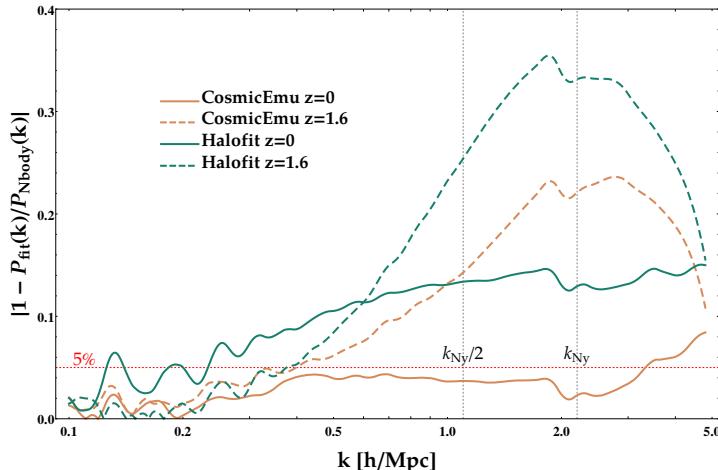
In order to use the fitting formulae obtained before to forecast cosmological parameters of the model, we need to assume that the shape of the non-linear coupled DE signal does not change dramatically if the other cosmological parameters, apart from  $\beta$  and  $\sigma_8$ , are modified by small amounts. This is justified since in the deeply non-linear regime, the evolution of perturbations is ruled by mode-mode coupling between high  $k$  wavevectors (non-linear  $k$  modes are not independent of each other anymore), which erases most of the information about initial conditions and makes the shape of the non-linear power spectrum at large  $k$  practically independent of cosmological background parameters, such as  $n_s$ ,  $\Omega_b$  and  $h$ . This has been shown to be the case when calculating perturbatively non-linear corrections to the power spectrum, see for example (Crocce and Scoccimarro, 2006a; Pietroni et al., 2011), but also analyzing the covariance matrix of non-linear power spectra using a large suite of N-body simulations as was investigated in (Takahashi et al., 2011). Furthermore, the decoupling of virialized structures in the small scale regime from the background dynamics of the universe, is one of the cornerstones of the recently developed effective field theory of large-scale structure Baumann et al., 2012b and was also shown to be approximately true using a coarse grained cosmological perturbation approach Manzotti et al., 2014b. Since  $\beta$  and  $\sigma_8$  are quantities that affect directly the linear perturbations and the virialization dynamics and we are only looking at a particular signal at very small scales, they should be the main parameters determining the shape of the non-linear “bump”. An investigation of how robust these fitting formulas are, with respect to a change of cosmological parameters, would need either more high-resolution N-body simulation for coupled DE scenarios or the development of a consistent perturbation theory for modified gravity and scalar-tensor theories that reaches highly non-linear scales.

## 4.6 Non-linear power spectrum and error estimation

The accuracy of the fitting functions when compared to the original N-body simulation power spectra is shown in figure 4.2, where the absolute value of the percentage error between fitting function and the original power spectra is plotted as a function of redshift and scale. In this case we show that for the model M7 the error remains well below 1% for a coupling constant of  $\beta = 0.05$  and for the scales and redshifts we are interested in. For higher couplings the error goes up to a maximum of 1.5%. For the model M2 the same test gives similar results, yielding <1% error in all interesting scales and redshifts. We can then expect that when applying these fitting functions on top of  $\Lambda$ CDM power spectra, the intrinsic error is less than 1%



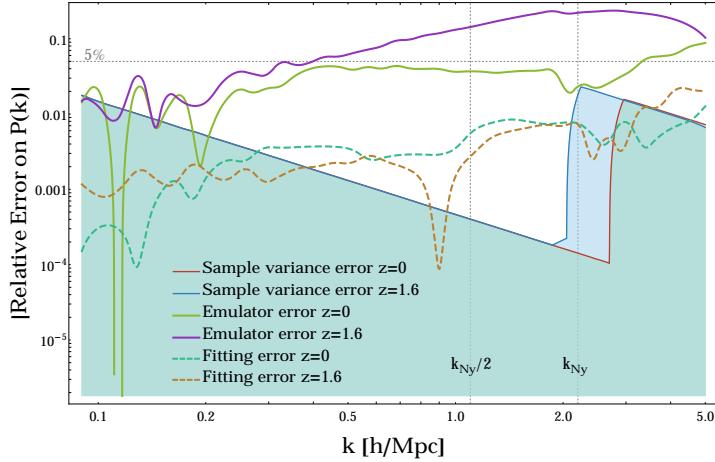
**FIGURE 4.2:** Error contour plot for the fitting functions of model M7 (left) and M2 (right) applied compared directly to the N-body simulations. We show that for the smallest coupling constant available in the simulations,  $\beta = 0.05$ , the error remains below 1% for the scales and redshifts we are interested in.



**FIGURE 4.3:** Relative error of the fitting functions Halofit (green) and CosmicEmulator (orange) (FrankenEmu) with respect to the CoDECS  $\Lambda$ CDM N-body power spectra at two different redshifts (solid lines:  $z = 0$ , dashed lines:  $z = 1.6$ ). While the relative error with respect to the CosmicEmulator remains below the 5% limit (horizontal red dashed line) for all interesting  $k$ -values, the error compared to Halofit is already bigger than 10% for  $k \gtrsim 0.5h/\text{Mpc}$ . Both the error of our simulation with respect to Halofit and to the CosmicEmulator increase as a function of redshift. The change of trend after the Nyquist frequency (marked with the vertical grey line) can be attributed to the use of the folding method for the CoDECS nonlinear power spectra.

and the extra sources of error are all given by the N-body simulation spectra and by the estimators of the non-linear  $\Lambda$ CDM power spectrum.

Since the fitting functions shown in the previous section are useful when applied on top of a  $\Lambda$ CDM non-linear power spectrum, we need to choose an estimator for the non-linear  $\Lambda$ CDM  $P(k)$ . Our tests show that *FrankenEmu* (Heitmann et al., 2014), an improved version of the original Coyote Cosmic Emulator, performs better than the revised version of Halofit by (Takahashi et al., 2012), which is included in recent versions of CAMB (Lewis, Challinor, and Lasenby, 1999). While at  $z = 0$  both estimators work similarly well with an accuracy at the 5% level in the



**FIGURE 4.4:** Different sources of error affecting the nonlinear power spectrum. Each source of error is shown at two different redshifts,  $z = 0$  and  $z = 1.6$ . The sample variance error (red solid line and blue solid line, together with their shaded regions) corresponds to the error induced by the limited number of available  $k$ -modes when extracting the power spectrum; it has a sharp increase at the Nyquist frequency, since there the folded mesh has fewer modes available than the top level mesh, see section 4.4 for more details. The fitting error (green and orange dashed lines) corresponds to the intrinsic error of the fitting functions with respect to an N-body simulation using the same parameters, calculated in section 4.5. The emulator error (green and purple thick lines) is the error of the Cosmic Emulator compared to a  $\Lambda$ CDM N-body simulation from CoDECS (these two lines correspond to the orange lines of figure 4.3). The relative error increases with redshift and scale and reaches more than 15% at the Nyquist frequency for the highest redshift. The vertical grey-dashed lines mark the scales  $k_{Ny}/2$  and  $k_{Ny}$ .

BAO range, Halofit performs much worse with increasing redshift and increasing  $k$ , as illustrated in figure 4.3. At  $z = 0$  the Cosmic Emulator shows a flat error curve for all scales up to the Nyquist frequency, below the error estimated for Halofit. A comparison between power spectrum estimators and N-body simulations has been performed also in (Fosalba et al., 2013a), where they found similar results: Halofit and the Cosmic Emulator perform similarly in the BAO range, but the errors introduced by Halofit is above the 10% level at scales of around  $k \approx 1\text{Mpc}/h$  and  $z \gtrsim 1$ . Therefore, we use the *FrankenEmu* as the preferred  $\Lambda$ CDM non-linear power spectrum estimator for our forecasting purposes. They claim to be accurate at the 1-3% percent level around the scales of interest and they have performed very careful resolution tests using hundreds of realizations.

Another source of error is the sample variance error of the power spectrum when extracted from the N-body simulation. This depends on the number on the number  $n_{mod}$  of independent modes available at each wavevector bin in  $k$  and its given by Feldman, Kaiser, and Peacock, 1994:  $\sigma_P = \sqrt{\frac{2}{n_{mod}}} P(k)$ . In figure 4.4 it can be seen as a blue shaded region marked by a red and blue solid line. For large scales this error is considerable, but there one usually uses just linear power spectra computed by Boltzmann codes, like CAMB or CLASS. At  $k = 0.1\text{h}/\text{Mpc}$  the binning error is at the percent level and decreases rapidly to negligible values, but then it increases again quickly at  $k \sim 2\text{h}/\text{Mpc}$  since there the folded mesh for the power spectrum has again only few modes to sample from, as explained in section

#### 4.4.

The intrinsic error of the fitting function is shown in figure 4.4 as a dashed green line and it remains well below the 1% level at all the scales of interest.

We include all errors discussed here in our Fisher forecast analysis. It turns out that they do not affect considerably the results for a survey like Euclid, which will measure such a high number of galaxies, that the sampling of the clustering signal will be not affected by small sources of noise in the data.

##### 4.6.0.1 Including sources of error in the Fisher formalism

In section 4.6 we discussed several sources of error affecting the non-linear power spectrum, the intrinsic errors of the coupled DE fitting functions, mode-binning errors in the N-body power spectrum and the estimation and interpolation error of the  $\Lambda$ CDM non-linear power spectrum obtained from the CosmicEmulator. We will take these sources of error into account in our Fisher forecast analysis by including them as extra noise affecting the observed power spectrum. The term in square brackets in eq. (2.26) corresponds to the inverse of the covariance  $C = P(k, z) + n(z)^{-1}$ . The “noise term”  $n(z)^{-1}$  is the number density of sampling points for the matter power spectrum (galaxies in a survey), which gives us an estimate of the signal-to-noise ratio we can expect from the forecast: for a higher number density, the power spectrum is better sampled and more information can be extracted from it. In order to take into account the theoretical and numerical errors on  $P(k, z)$ , we decrease  $n(z)$  by a factor that contains the relative errors on  $P(k, z)$ . In eq. (2.26), instead of  $n(z)$ , we then have an “effective” number density:

$$n_{\text{eff}}(k, z) = n(z)/(1 + n(z)\tilde{\sigma}_p(k, z)) \quad (4.1)$$

The term  $\tilde{\sigma}_p(k, z)$  is a scale- and redshift-dependent term which is the square root of the sum of the relative errors squared. We take into account all error sources which affect  $P(k, z)$  due to different reasons, as explained in section 4.6. One of them is the difference between our power spectrum estimator and the N-body simulation:  $\sigma_p(k, z) = (P_{\text{numerical}}(k, z) - P_{\text{true}}(k, z))/P_{\text{true}}(k, z)$ . If  $\tilde{\sigma}_p(k, z) = 0$  or it is negligible, the effective number density will be the observed one  $n_{\text{eff}}(z) = n(z)$ ; otherwise,  $n_{\text{eff}}(z) < n(z)$ , the effective number of sampling points being reduced, together with the amount of information one can extract from the power spectrum. As long as  $n(z)P(k, z) \gg 1$  for all  $z$  and  $k$ , the sampling will be always good enough to extract cosmological information from the power spectrum even in the presence of noise. For the specifications used in this work (see table 4.5 below),  $n(z)P(k, z)$  is larger than 1 in all scales of interest and therefore the theoretical and numerical error on  $P(k, z)$  does not have such a considerable effect on the parameter estimation, as one would expect naively. We test the inclusion of the effective number density  $n_{\text{eff}}(z)$  on the Fisher forecast analysis and we find that the relative 1- $\sigma$  marginalised errors on each cosmological parameter are between 8% and 15% higher when using the estimated uncertainties on the power spectrum.

##### 4.6.0.2 Systematic bias due to uncertainty in the power spectrum

In section 2.4.7 we have detailed the theory on how to calculate the systematic error bias on our cosmological parameters, when taking into account theoretical uncertainties on the determination of the non-linear power spectrum.

There we have seen in eq. (2.50) that the systematic-bias Fisher matrix is proportional to the derivative of the power spectrum with respect to the systematic

parameter  $\psi$ . For our case, we have then:

$$\partial_\psi P_\psi = -P_{true} + P_{num} = P_{true}\sigma_p(k, z) \quad (4.2)$$

and we just need to perform eqn. 2.50 with eqn. 2.45 in order to obtain the systematic biases on the cosmological parameters.

In the following table 4.4 we present the results on the systematic bias, for a standard  $\Lambda$ CDM forecast, for different maximum  $k$  coverages, up to a maximum  $k$  of 1.1h/Mpc. We will regard as a “true” power spectrum  $P_{true}$ , the one obtained by the Cosmic (Franken) Emulator Heitmann et al., 2014, since they have performed a careful analysis of resolution effects using a large set of simulations and claim to be accurate for  $k < 1.0$  h/Mpc at the 1% percent level compared to state of the art N-body simulations. On the other hand, the numerical “biased” power spectrum  $P_{num}$ , is the one obtained from the CoDECS  $\Lambda$ CDM run, which consists on only one realization. We have left out the CDE coupling parameter  $\beta$ , since in that case we do not have any other prediction in the non-linear regime to compare with.

Parameter	$h$	$\ln \mathcal{A}_s$	$n_s$	$\omega_b$	$\omega_c$
fiducial	0.7036	2.42	0.966	0.04503	0.2256
$k_{\max} = k_{Ny}/2 = 1.1h/\text{Mpc}$					
syst. bias with $\delta\psi = 1$	-0.0016	-0.15	0.061	0.0028	-0.0031
$k_{\max} = 0.35h/\text{Mpc}$					
syst. bias with $\delta\psi = 1$	-0.0094	-0.11	0.045	0.0021	-0.0039
$k_{\max} = 0.15h/\text{Mpc}$					
syst. bias with $\delta\psi = 1$	-0.0032	-0.04	0.018	0.00026	-0.0024

**TABLE 4.4:** Systematic bias on the  $\Lambda$ CDM cosmological parameters evaluated at our fiducial model. The systematic bias is higher when probing smaller scales, where uncertainties in the non-linear power spectrum are higher. This highlights the importance of modelling correctly the non-linear power spectrum in order to analyze data. Using the wrong non-linear power spectrum produces statistical errors which are larger or of the same order as the statistical results.

The results of table 4.4 show how important it is to model accurately the non-linear power spectrum in order to make forecasts and to analyze the upcoming data of large scale structure surveys like Euclid Amendola et al., 2012a. The systematic errors on the cosmological parameters can be bigger than the statistical errors (compare to table 4.6 and figure 4.5 in the results section below). This is the case if, as in our example scenario, we would use a non-linear power spectrum that is inaccurate by about 10-15% in the non-linear regime at higher redshifts (which was shown in figure 4.3). Therefore, it is well justified to choose for our Fisher forecasts the Cosmic Emulator as the “true”  $\Lambda$ CDM non-linear power spectrum estimator, since this is the most accurate predictor up to date. It would still be interesting to know how robust is the signal of the coupling parameter  $\beta$  with respect to changes in the other parameters or in the  $\Lambda$ CDM non-linear prediction, but as long as we do not have better and faster semianalytic methods applicable to general models of dark energy, the estimation of systematic biases of extra parameters is an impossible task.

#### 4.6.0.3 Choice of the $k_{max}$ integration limit in the Fisher formalism

There are at least three ways of setting the maximum  $k$  mode used in the Fisher forecast integration (eqn. 2.26). One common choice is to set a hard cut in  $k$  at all redshifts, and depending if one wants to include or not non-linear effects, this cut can be taken at linear scales, smaller than  $k = 0.1h/\text{Mpc}$ , or at non-linear scales  $k > 0.1h/\text{Mpc}$ . In the latter case if one is using a power spectrum calculated in linear theory, one needs to use some Lagrangian damping correction, as introduced originally in Seo and Eisenstein, 2007b; Seo et al., 2008, in order to take into account broadening effects on the BAO peak induced by the non-linear evolution of densities and velocities. Another option to cut off the power spectrum is to demand that the variance  $\sigma_8(z; k)$  stays below a specified value at each redshift, therefore implicitly changing the cutoff in  $k$  as a function of  $z$ . An usual choice for this is  $\sigma_8(z; k_{cut}) = 0.25$ , as was done previously in Amendola et al., 2012c. Since we are assuming to have a knowledge of the non-linear power spectrum up to the Nyquist frequency, we implement for our forecasts a hard-cut method, at  $k_{Ny}$  and at  $k_{Ny}/2$ , without the need of any Lagragian damping correction. However, to be conservative, we cite as our main results the ones in which the cut is performed at  $k_{Ny}/2$  in order to eliminate any possible unknown contribution from the numerical high-frequency noise entering the estimation of  $P(k)$  at the Nyquist frequency (see e.g. Colombi et al., 2009; Fosalba et al., 2013b for similar prescriptions on where to cut the non-linear power spectrum).

#### 4.6.1 Adding non-linear corrections to the power spectrum

We are interested in a Fisher forecast that includes information from non-linearities. In this case we cannot separate the power spectrum, into a power spectrum at redshift zero multiplied by the square of the normalized growth factor, but we need to evaluate directly the non-linear power spectra  $P(k, z)$  at different redshifts. A full non-linear correction for the redshift space distortions would be also desirable, but since the modelling of that effect is yet to be understood in general cases, we use as a first approximation an exponential damping of the form  $\exp(-k^2 \mu^2 \sigma_v^2)$ , where  $\sigma_v$  is the pairwise peculiar velocity of galaxies induced by non-linearities in the matter and velocity power spectrum. This is the first term of a set of corrections that can be applied to the Kaiser formula (Kaiser, 1987) for the clustering in redshift space (see e.g. Torre and Guzzo, 2012, Scoccimarro, 2004, Taruya, Nishimichi, and Saito, 2010, Wang, Chuang, and Hirata, 2012). We use a value of  $\sigma_v = 300\text{km/s}$  which is an approximate and conservative value based on the estimations by (Torre and Guzzo, 2012), in which the authors test a variety of redshift-space distortion models.

As already mentioned, the damping term, introduced by (Seo and Eisenstein, 2007b), which should correct the linear  $P(k)$ , especially the position of the BAO peaks, for non-linearities, is not included here, since we assume that we have a complete model of the non-linear power spectrum and therefore all possible corrections are already included in our fitting functions and power spectrum emulators.

In order to implement our model of coupled Dark Energy, we use for  $H(z)$  and  $D(z)$  tables precomputed using a modified version of CAMB, that includes the exponential and inverse-power law potentials for coupled dark energy Amendola et al., 2012c; Pettorino, 2013. We calculate these tables for each of the parameters  $\theta_i \pm \epsilon$ , where  $\epsilon = 0.03$ . We do the same for the linear perturbation quantity  $G(z)$ , whose logarithmic derivative with respect to  $\ln(a)$ , known as the growth rate  $f(z)$  enters the redshift space distortion term in ???. The background quantities  $H(z)$

and  $D(z)$  are important in the Fisher forecast for the Alcock-Paczynski geometrical term, which we take into account in the observed power spectrum.

The full non-linear power spectrum we use in our method is then obtained as follows.

- At linear scales  $k \lesssim 0.1h/\text{Mpc}$  the linear power spectrum is obtained from our modified version of CAMB which includes the effect of the DM-DE coupling.
- At non-linear scales,  $k \gtrsim 0.1h/\text{Mpc}$ , we use a combination of the power spectrum calculated with the cosmic emulator *FrankenEmu* and our fitting formulas for CDE that account for the non-linear dynamics in presence of a fifth force.
- The matching at  $k \approx 0.1h/\text{Mpc}$  is performed using different interpolation methods, either averaging on both sides and smoothing out or allowing for a small discontinuity. The matching point is left out of the Fisher integral and we check for this effect, showing that the different methods have a negligible effect (less than 2 percent) on the final absolute errors on the parameters.
- In order to be conservative in terms of numerical errors and noise, we cut the power spectra at half of the Nyquist frequency (we also test and compare with a cutoff at  $k_{Ny}$ ) and we include all sources of errors specified in section 4.6.0.1, as effective noise terms into our Fisher estimation.

## 4.7 Results

We now present results for galaxy clustering and weak lensing, using the specifications for a Euclid-like survey as described in tables 4.5 and ?? below. We use the Fisher formalism described in section ?? to forecast the errors in the cosmological parameters, using information from the non-linear power spectrum for coupled Dark Energy models, as obtained with the procedure described in section 4.4 together with the fitting functions obtained in section 4.5. To make our estimation more realistic, we also take into account all sources of error and systematics for the power spectrum which were discussed in section 4.6. As a way of testing our improvement on the parameter estimation, we also perform two extra Fisher forecasts, first using only linear power spectra for the CDE model and then correcting these linear  $P(k)$  with the latest version of Halofit Takahashi et al., 2012, which was designed for  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  only.

The fiducial parameters are  $\omega_c = 0.1117$ ,  $\omega_b = 0.0223$ ,  $n_s = 0.966$ ,  $\log \mathcal{A}_s = -19.8395$ ,  $h = 0.7036$ ,  $\beta^2 = 0.0025$ , which are consistent with WMAP7 results (see table 4.2). The fiducial values for the galaxy bias  $b(z)$  used for the GC probe are taken from the Euclid specifications (see Amendola et al., 2012a; Laureijs and others, 2011; Orsi et al., 2010) For our final results, we convert these parameters into the set  $p_i = \{\beta^2, h, 10^9 \mathcal{A}_s, n_s, \Omega_c, \Omega_b\}$  marginalizing over the bias  $b(z)$  (for the GC case) and using a Jacobian transformation to convert into the new set of parameters, which is allowed by the Fisher matrix formalism. We choose to forecast the error on the square of the coupling parameter  $\beta^2$ , because this is the quantity entering the modified gravitational Newton constant  $G_{eff}$  in the limit of linear perturbations (cf. eq. 1.77), therefore giving the strength of the “fifth force”. The corresponding fiducial value for the coupling,  $\beta = 0.05$ , is still compatible with recent limits set by analyzing the data from the Planck Satellite (see Collaboration, 2015; Pettorino, 2013).

Parameter	Value	Description
$A_{\text{survey}}$	$15000 \text{ deg}^2$	Survey area in the sky
$\sigma_z$	0.001	Photometric redshift error
$\sigma_v$	300 km/s	Fiducial pairwise velocity dispersion
$\Delta z$	0.2	Redshift bin width
$\{z_{\min}, z_{\max}\}$	{0.6, 2.0}	Min. and max. limits for redshift bins

TABLE 4.5: Specifications for the Fisher Matrix of an Euclid-like galaxy clustering survey.

Parameter	$\beta^2$	$h$	$10^9 \mathcal{A}_s$	$n_s$	$\Omega_b$	$\Omega_c$
fiducial	0.0025	0.7036	2.42	0.966	0.04503	0.2256
$k_{\max} = k_{Ny}/2$						
abs. error	0.000346	0.00160	0.01855	0.00267	0.00084	0.00088
relative error	14%	0.23%	0.77%	0.28%	1.9%	0.39%
$k_{\max} = k_{Ny}$						
abs. error	0.000305	0.00151	0.01808	0.00249	0.00081	0.00085
relative error	12%	0.22%	0.75%	0.26%	1.8%	0.38%

TABLE 4.6:  $1-\sigma$  fully marginalized errors on the cosmological parameters of the model for a galaxy clustering Fisher forecast. Two cases are presented, a hard cutoff of the power spectrum at  $k_{\max} = k_{Ny}/2$ , and a hard cut at  $k_{Ny}$ .

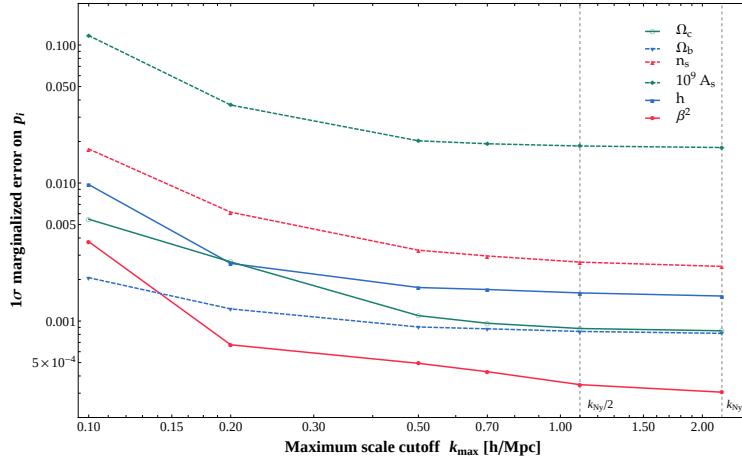
### 4.7.1 Galaxy clustering

Table 4.5 shows the specifications of a Euclid-like survey, which are used in our Fisher forecast. While Euclid specifications use 14 redshift bins of a width  $\Delta z = 0.1$  (see Amendola et al., 2012a, table 3 in that work), we use only 6 bins of a width of 0.2. We check in the case of  $\Lambda$ CDM, that this re-binning (done using the specified number of galaxies and the corresponding comoving volumes in our cosmology) has a very small effect (of a few percent) on the estimation of the  $1-\sigma$  errors on the parameters.

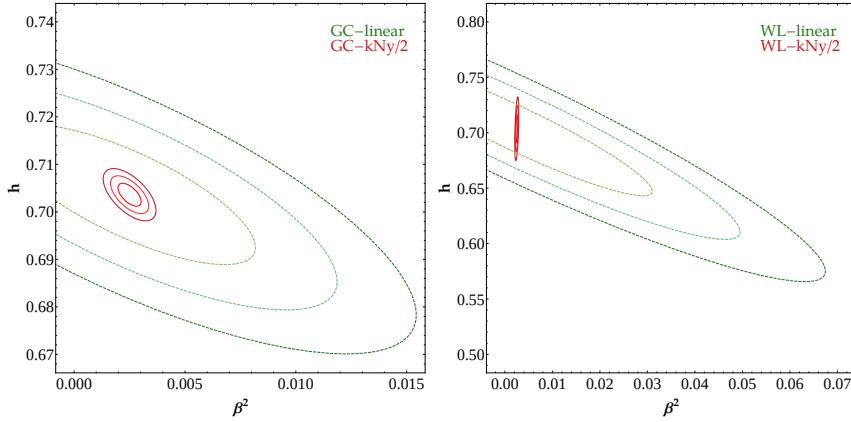
In table 4.6 we show the fully marginalized  $1-\sigma$  errors on the final cosmological parameters  $p_i = \{\beta^2, h, 10^9 \mathcal{A}_s, n_s, \Omega_c, \Omega_b\}$ , performing the non-linear power spectrum cut-off at two different scales:  $k_{\max} = k_{Ny}/2$  and  $k_{\max} = k_{Ny}$ . As explained above, we take as a reference result the one corresponding to a cutoff at  $k_{Ny}/2$ . The gain in constraining the  $\beta^2$  parameter when going from  $k_{Ny}/2$  to  $k_{Ny}$  is of two percent points in the relative errors, while for the other cosmological parameters the improvement is negligible.

#### 4.7.1.1 Variation of the $k_{\max}$ integration limit

We now test the gain in information obtained by including progressively more non-linear wavemodes  $k$  into the Fisher integration. We perform the same Fisher forecast, each time increasing the maximum mode  $k_{\max}$  at which the integration is cut off. In figure 4.5 we show how the  $1-\sigma$  fully marginalized error on the cosmological parameters  $p_i$  changes with an increase of  $k_{\max}$ . The error decreases steadily with an increase of  $k_{\max}$ , where the biggest gain is achieved when going from linear ( $k \approx 0.1h/\text{Mpc}$ ) to mildly non-linear ( $k \approx 0.3h/\text{Mpc}$ ) scales. For parameters like  $h$  and  $\Omega_b$ , an approximate plateau is reached already before  $k_{\max} \approx 1.0$ , while for  $\beta^2$  there is still a considerable gain in parameter constraints when going into smaller scales, even beyond  $k_{Ny}/2$  (consistent with table 4.6 above). This happens,



**FIGURE 4.5:** Change of the  $1-\sigma$  fully marginalized error on the set of cosmological parameters  $p_i$  for a galaxy clustering Fisher forecast, as a function of the maximum mode  $k_{max}$  used as a cutoff in the Fisher matrix integration. When increasing the maximum  $k_{max}$  the errors on the parameters get steadily smaller, especially when going from linear ( $k \approx 0.1h/\text{Mpc}$ ) to mildly non-linear ( $k \approx 0.3h/\text{Mpc}$ ) scales. The vertical dashed grey lines, mark the half and the full Nyquist frequencies.



**FIGURE 4.6:** Marginalized confidence contour regions  $1,2,3-\sigma$  for  $\beta^2$  and  $h$ . The plots correspond to a comparison between linear (green-dashed) and non-linear (red-solid) scales for GC (left) and WL (right) using the scale cutoff at  $k_{Ny}/2$ .

qualitatively, because at small scales we have a well-defined characteristic signal coming from non-linear interactions including the fifth force which itself involves the  $\beta$  coupling, while the information on the background cosmological parameters gets washed out (c.f. section 4.5.3 above).

### 4.7.2 Weak lensing

Table ?? show the specifications for a weak lensing probe in an Euclid-like survey. The redshift bins are chosen in such a way that they contain an equal number of galaxies (equipopulated bins). The bins are then given by:

$$n_i(z) = \frac{1}{2}n(z) \left[ \text{Erf} \left( \frac{\tilde{z}_{i+1} - z}{\sigma_{pz}\sqrt{2}} \right) - \text{Erf} \left( \frac{\tilde{z}_i - z}{\sigma_{pz}\sqrt{2}} \right) \right] \quad (4.3)$$

Parameter	Value	Description
$\mathcal{N}$	6	Number of redshift bins
$z_{peak}$	{0.59, 0.75, 0.90, 1.06, 1.28, 1.57}	$z$ -position of peak of the bin
$w_z$	{0.22, 0.23, 0.25, 0.27, 0.32, 0.51}	full width at half maximum of the peak
$\ell_{cut, k_1}$	{1686, 2070, 2410, 2753, 3155, 4344}	cutoff in multipole $\ell$ for $k_{max} = k_{Ny}/2$
$\ell_{cut, k_2}$	{3372, 4141, 4820, 5506, 6311, 8689}	cutoff in multipole $\ell$ for $k_{max} = k_{Ny}$
$z_{range}$	$0.5 \leq z \leq 3$	Total range in redshift of each bin

**TABLE 4.7:** Redshift bins specifications for an Euclid-like weak lensing survey using equipopulated redshift bins in the range  $0 \leq z \leq 3$  and the corresponding values for the cutoff applied in the multipoles  $\ell$  at each redshift bin, for two different cases: scales larger than  $k_1 = k_{Ny}/2$  and scales larger than  $k_2 = k_{Ny}$ .

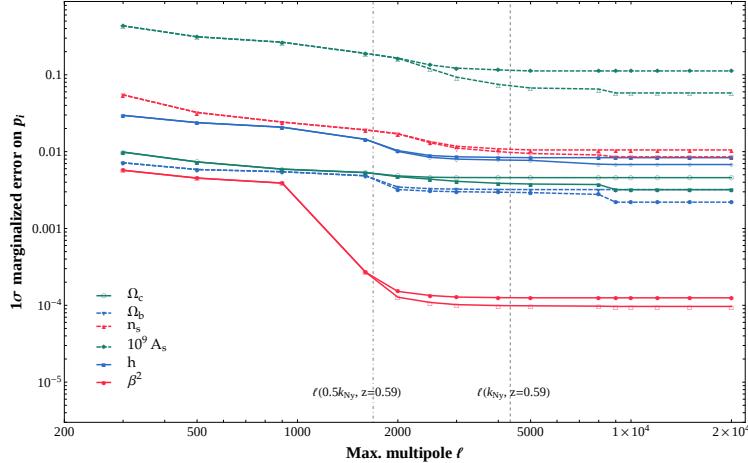
Parameter	$\beta^2$	$h$	$10^9 A_s$	$n_s$	$\Omega_b$	$\Omega_c$
fiducial	0.0025	0.7036	2.42	0.966	0.04503	0.2256
$\ell_{cut, k_{Ny}/2}$						
abs. error	0.000125	0.00835	0.112	0.0105	0.0032	0.0046
relative error	5.0%	1.2%	4.6%	1.1%	7.1%	2.0%
$\ell_{cut, k_{Ny}}$						
abs. error	0.000097	0.0068	0.058	0.0085	0.0022	0.0032
relative error	3.9%	0.97%	2.4%	0.88%	4.9%	1.4%

**TABLE 4.8:**  $1\sigma$  fully marginalized errors on the cosmological parameters of the model for a weak lensing Fisher forecast. Two cases are presented, a redshift-dependent cutoff  $\ell_{cut, k_{Ny}/2}$  and a cutoff  $\ell_{cut, k_{Ny}}$ , corresponding to cutting off the non-linear power spectrum at the half and at the full Nyquist frequency (analogously to the GC case) as explained in the main text. As opposed to the GC case, going into smaller scales in a WL survey does bring a noticeable improvement.

where  $\tilde{z}_i$  are the values of the bin intervals in the range  $z_{range} = 0.5 \leq z \leq 3$  chosen such that for each interval the integral over the galaxy distribution function  $n(z)$  (eqn. 2.32) is equal. The resulting peaks of the bins and their full width at half maximum are specified in table 4.7.

Analogously to the galaxy clustering case, we show in table 4.8 the fully marginalised  $1-\sigma$  errors on the parameters  $p_i$ . The sum over multipoles  $\ell$  in eq. (2.33) is performed from  $\ell_{min} = 5$  up to a maximum of  $\ell_{max} = 20000$ , but as explained in section 3.3.2, we perform a cutoff at each redshift bin, so that no scales in the non-linear power spectrum beyond the half of the Nyquist (for our reference case) or beyond the Nyquist frequency (for our second case) contribute to the WL signal. The values of these cutoffs,  $\ell_{cut}$  for the two different cases  $k_1 = k_{Ny}/2$  and  $k_2 = k_{Ny}$  are listed in table 4.7. In contrast to the GC case, going from  $k_{Ny}/2$  to  $k_{Ny}$  in a WL survey does bring a noticeable improvement on the estimation of parameters.

The dependence of the  $1-\sigma$  fully marginalized error on each parameter  $p_i$  with respect to  $\ell_{max}$  is shown in figure 4.7. When using just linear power spectra information, the error on the parameters does not improve if one increases the scale  $\ell_{max}$ , while in the case where non-linear information is used, increasing the maximum multipole  $\ell_{max}$  improves considerably the  $1-\sigma$  error on the parameters, especially on the coupling  $\beta^2$  and on the initial amplitude of scalar fluctuations  $10^9 A_s$ .



**FIGURE 4.7:** Variation in the  $1-\sigma$  fully marginalized errors for each cosmological parameter  $p_i$  as a function of the maximum multipole used in the weak lensing Fisher forecast. Increasing the observed multipole range improves considerably the determination of a parameter, especially on the coupling  $\beta^2$  (red solid line) and the initial amplitude of perturbations  $10^9 A_s$  (dashed green line). The double lines corresponding to each parameter, show how the error estimation is changed if scales up to  $k_{Ny}$  are included (lower line) compared to the upper line where only scales up to  $k_{Ny}/2$  contribute. At small  $\ell$  both lines are on top of each other and only start diverging at around  $\ell = 2000$ , when the extra amount of information contained in highly non-linear scales starts becoming important. The most significant gains occur again on the parameters  $\beta^2$  and  $10^9 A_s$ .

This is due to the fact that the extra signal on the coupling coming from the non-linear part of the power spectrum, the so called “bump”, greatly enhances the constraints on the parameter estimation. The double lines corresponding to each parameter in figure 4.7, show how the error estimation is changed if scales up to  $k_{Ny}$  are included (lower line) compared to the upper line where only scales up to  $k_{Ny}/2$  contribute. At small  $\ell$  both lines are on top of each other and only start diverging at around  $\ell = 2000$ , when the extra amount of information contained in highly non-linear scales starts becoming important. The most significant gains occur again on the parameters  $\beta^2$  and  $10^9 A_s$ .

### 4.7.3 Combined results

In figure 4.8 we show the  $1$ - $2$ - and  $3$ - $\sigma$  confidence contours from the Fisher forecast for WL and GC. These confidence regions for each pair of parameters are obtained after marginalizing over all the other parameters. As it can be seen, some degeneracies are broken when combining the confidence ellipses from two different observations, for example in the case of the plane  $\Omega_b, \beta^2$ . Other parameter combinations, as  $n_s, \beta^2$ , show the same orientation of the ellipses for WL and GC, so that the combination of both probes does not help to disentangle the degeneracies. While GC constraints much better the usual parameters  $\{h, 10^9 A_s, n_s, \Omega_c, \Omega_b\}$ , WL constrains the coupling parameter  $\beta^2$  much better which can be seen in the vertical orientation of the ellipses that correspond to  $\beta^2$ . Therefore combining the observations on GC and WL, as a future survey like Euclid will do, is a powerful way of constraining degenerate parameters in cosmology.

In table 4.9, we cite the  $1$ - $\sigma$  fully-marginalised errors on the parameters  $p_i$  for three different cases: a) using only linear CDE power spectra computed from our modified version of CAMB; b) applying a non-linear correction to these linear CDE

Parameter	$\beta^2$	$h$	$10^9 \mathcal{A}_s$	$n_s$	$\Omega_b$	$\Omega_c$
fiducial	0.0025	0.7036	2.42	0.966	0.04503	0.2256
<b>WL: 1-<math>\sigma</math> abs. error, using:</b>						
linear CDE	0.0189	0.040	0.221	0.0139	0.0062	0.0127
linear CDE+Halofit	0.0184	0.044	0.256	0.0109	0.0066	0.0079
non-linear CDE fitting functions	0.000125	0.00835	0.112	0.0105	0.0032	0.0046
<b>GC: 1-<math>\sigma</math> abs. error, using:</b>						
linear CDE	0.0038	0.0097	0.117	0.0176	0.0021	0.0055
linear CDE+Halofit	0.0011	0.0029	0.024	0.0023	0.0007	0.0006
non-linear CDE fitting functions	0.00035	0.0016	0.018	0.0027	0.0008	0.0009
<b>comb. WL+GC: 1-<math>\sigma</math> error, using:</b>						
non-linear CDE fitting functions (abs.)	0.000084	0.0010	0.0169	0.00251	0.00072	0.00080
non-linear CDE fitting functions (rel.)	3.4%	0.16%	0.7%	0.26%	1.6%	0.35%

**TABLE 4.9:** 1- $\sigma$  fully marginalized errors on the cosmological parameters for WL, GC and the combined Fisher matrix WL+GC, using three different power spectra. **Linear CDE:** Using only information from the linear power spectrum for the CDE model up to a scale of  $k = 0.1h/\text{Mpc}$ . **Linear CDE+Halofit:** Using the linear power spectrum for CDE plus a non-linear correction using the latest Halofit from Takahashi et al., 2012. **Non-linear CDE fitting functions:** Using the fully non-linear power spectra for CDE obtained from the fitting functions and the emulator as explained in 4.5, which we regard as the most reliable description of the model in this range of scales. In all these cases we are using our reference Fisher forecasts corresponding to the cutoff at  $k_{Ny}/2$ .

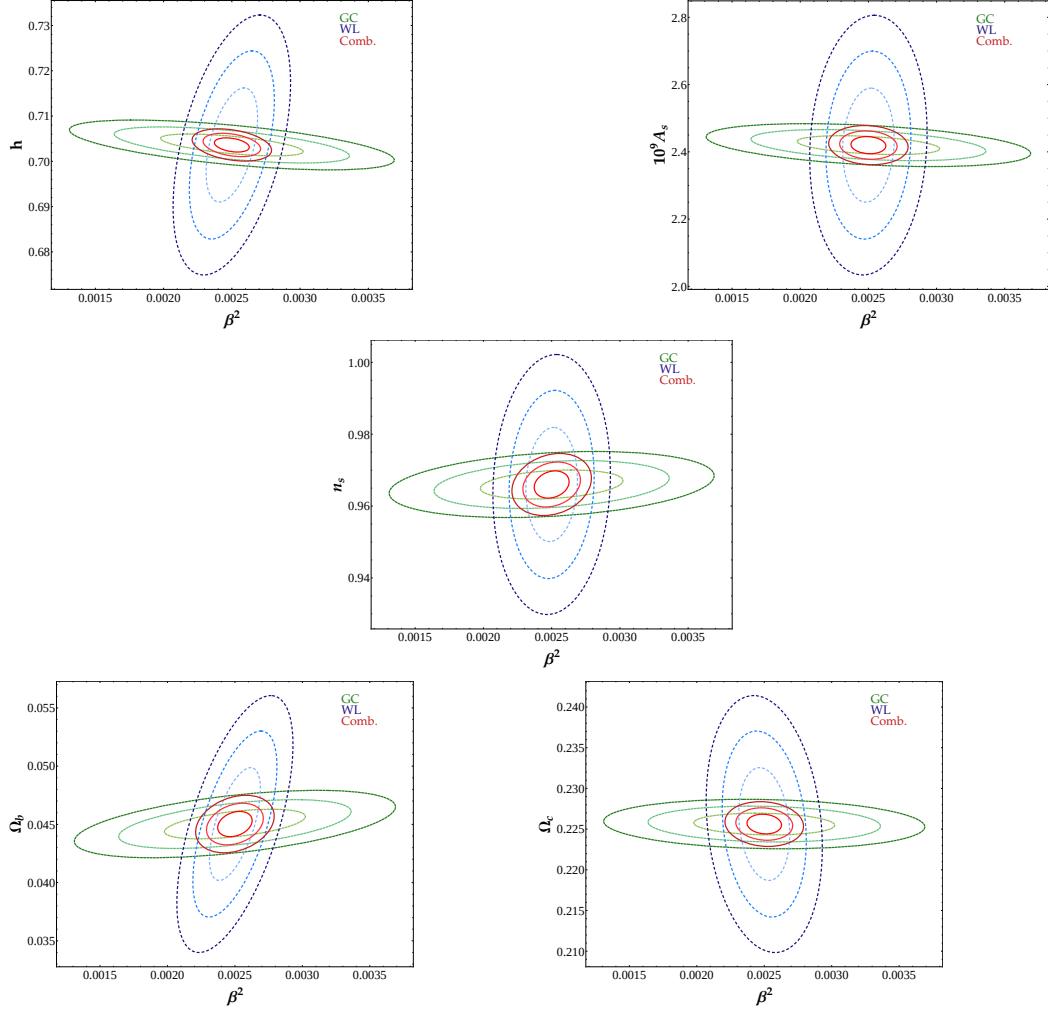
power spectra using the latest version of Halofit from Takahashi et al., 2012, which was designed for  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$ -only; c) using the full coupled DE non-linear power spectra computed with our fitting functions following the procedure explained in section 4.6.1.

This shows the value of using the N-body-calibrated fitting functions on the coupling  $\beta^2$ . Using the proper  $\beta$ -dependent non-linear correction instead of the standard Halofit correction, the constraints on  $\beta^2$  improve by more than an order of magnitude for WL and by a factor of order three for GC. This makes very clear the importance of applying non-linear corrections that depend on the parameter to be tested.

## 4.8 Conclusions

The goal of this paper is to exploit the cosmological information contained in the non-linear regime in order to improve parameter estimation from future large-scale observations. The main obstacle along this road is that we have accurate non-linear corrections for the matter power spectrum only for  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  and a few other relatively simple variants, but not for the large variety of modified gravity models that have been proposed in recent years.

The first part of this paper has then been devoted to the task of finding corrections to the linear power spectrum in the range of  $k \approx 0.1 - 1h/\text{Mpc}$  for a selected class of modified gravity models, namely coupled dark energy. This model is indeed one of the simplest possible extensions of Einstein's gravity and depends entirely on a single parameter, the coupling constant  $\beta$  (in addition to the standard ones). Employing the CoDECS suite of simulations (Baldi, 2012b) we build different fitting function models, such that when multiplied by the  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  non-linear power spectrum (we use the estimator provided in ref. (Heitmann et al., 2014) ) they reproduce the N-body results to an accuracy of 1%, for scales  $k$  between 0.1



**FIGURE 4.8:** Marginalized confidence contour regions (1,2,3- $\sigma$ ) for all cosmological parameters considered in this model. The blue dashed lines correspond to the WL Fisher forecast, while the green dashed lines correspond to the GC Fisher forecast both in our reference case. The red solid lines correspond to the combined Fisher matrix forecast. For combinations of the parameter  $\beta^2$ , WL and GC have similar figures of merit, but different orientations, while for other combinations of cosmological parameters, the estimation is dominated by the GC Fisher matrix estimation.

and  $5 \text{ } h/\text{Mpc}$  and a range in  $z$ , between 0 and 1.8. To achieve this accuracy in the fitting functions we need to perform a careful extraction and interpolation of the power spectrum from the simulation mesh.

The accurate fitting functions have been then employed to extend the regime of validity of the forecasts for future experiments. We focused on a Euclid-like survey that includes weak lensing and redshift-space distortions (galaxy clustering) and predicted the constraints in the cosmological parameters, with particular emphasis on the dark matter-dark energy coupling  $\beta$ . We find that  $\beta$  is better constrained by weak lensing than by galaxy clustering (contrary to all the other standard parameters). We find that the extension into non-linear scales improves the constraints by more than an order of magnitude compared to previous results using only linear power spectra, but also by more than an order of magnitude in WL and a factor of three in GC compared to using a wrong  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  Halofit non-linear correction. We

also show that using the wrong non-linear power spectrum, can bias systematically the estimation of errors on the cosmological parameters, yielding systematic errors of the same order of magnitude as the statistical ones. This makes very clear that it is important to include the proper non-linear corrections to the parameter to be tested, especially for models beyond  $\Lambda$ CDM in which the small-scale gravitational dynamics are modified.

To make our forecast more realistic, we take into account all known sources of error entering the estimation of the power spectra and the fitting functions in the way of a reduced effective number density of galaxies and then perform a conservative cut of the power spectrum at half of the simulation Nyquist frequency, to avoid other sources of unknown numerical noise affecting the results. In the case of GC we include also a first approximation to the correction to redshift space distortions, caused by peculiar pairwise velocities at non-linear scales. We find that a space probe like Euclid will be able to constrain the coupling parameter  $\beta^2$  around the fiducial value 0.0025 at  $1-\sigma$  with a relative accuracy of 14% when using weak lensing alone, 5% when using only galaxy clustering and at 3.4% when combining both probes.

It is interesting to note that the most stringent constraint we obtain amounts to  $\Delta\beta^2 \approx 8 \cdot 10^{-5}$ ; this level of precision on the dark matter-dark energy coupling is not far from the current best limits reached with Solar System observations on a coupling to baryons Olive et al., 2014, which can be translated in our notation as  $\beta^2 \leq 2 \cdot 10^{-5}$  at  $1-\sigma$ .

# Chapter 5

## Non-linear power spectra: Resummation for Horndeski models

As we have seen in previous chapters, non-linearities contain very valuable information on the parameters of the model governing the evolution of structures in the Universe. A proper understanding of the non-linear regime of structure formation is of fundamental importance in order to be able to analyze future observations of galaxy surveys and to discriminate between different cosmological scenarios.

Since this has become such an important issue in the last few years, there has been substantial progress in the theoretical and numerical treatment of non-linearities for cosmological structure formation. From very advanced N-body simulations ([cite Springel; Illustris; Teyssier; Baldi; Winther; COLA; gevolution](#)), to comprehensive semi-analytical methods ([cite Halofit; HMcode; Halo model; Cosmic Emu; PkAnn](#)) and complex resummation and renormalization methods ([cite RPT; eRPT; 2LPT; regPT; gRPT; tSPT; EFTofLSS; TRG; Coarse](#)). There has also been a great advance in new statistical tools for analyzing non-linear, non-Gaussian cosmic structures, see ([cite Large deviation; Minkowski functionals; Bispectrum; Separate Universe; analytic Covariance](#)).

Here we apply for the first time the Eikonal Renormalized Perturbation Theory (eRPT) developed by Anselmi and Pietroni, [2012a](#), ([cite Pietroni; recent; 2016](#)) to the case of Horndeski models which were treated in section [1.5.3](#). In order to do so, we will take some simplifying assumptions like the quasistatic limit and some specific variations of the  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  functions, previously defined in eqs. [\(1.59\)](#) to [\(1.60\)](#).

The chapter is organized as follows: In section [5.2](#) we start from the Vlasov-Poisson system and write down the fluid equations for a non-relativistic matter component. Then we show, using the quasistatic limit, which modified gravity functions we are going to take into account from Horndeski's theory. In ?? we write down the continuity, Euler and Poisson equations in a unified field notation, which is the basis of our resummation method. Finally in section [5.4](#) and section [5.5](#) we will detail the formalism of the eRPT method, computing the propagator and the evolution equation for the power spectrum, but mostly focusing on how it is modified in the Horndeski case. At the end of the chapter in section [5.9](#) we make a short excursion through computational techniques, like N-body simulations and semi-analytical methods, which will be of importance for discussing this and the next chapter.

To do [\(24\)](#)

The equations, the results and most of the text of this chapter are based on a paper in preparation together with Dr. Massimo Pietroni and Dr. Valeria Pettorino.

## 5.1 Growth of perturbations for a Dark Matter component

Before dealing with non-linear perturbation equations in modified gravity, let us review the derivation of the evolution of the growth factor for a single Cold Dark Matter (CDM) component in linear theory. This will help us introduce some quantities and relations that we will make use of in the next sections. We will introduce the quasistatic approximation and then we will find a simple analytic formula for the growth factor  $D_+(a)$  of CDM perturbations which will be useful later on. We will make use of the linearized Einstein equations in the conformal Newtonian gauge, introduced in chapter 1, where we follow the sign and naming conventions of the seminal work by **MaBertschinger**

If we transform eq. (1.35) and eq. (1.36) to Fourier space, we obtain in the case of CDM which has a very simple equation of state  $w = 0$  and vanishing sound of speed and anisotropic velocity dispersion  $c_s^2 = \sigma = 0$ :

$$\dot{\delta}(\tau, \mathbf{k}) = -\theta(\tau, \mathbf{k}) + 3\dot{\Phi}(\tau, \mathbf{k}) \quad , \quad (5.1)$$

$$\dot{\theta}(\tau, \mathbf{k}) = -\mathcal{H}\theta(\tau, \mathbf{k}) + k^2\Psi(\tau, \mathbf{k}) \quad , \quad (5.2)$$

where  $\tau$  is the conformal time  $d\tau = dt/a$  and an overdot represents a derivative with respect to  $\tau$ .

Derivating the first of the above equations with respect to  $\tau$  and eliminating  $\dot{\theta}$  and  $\theta$  using both equations, one obtains the second order differential equation for the density contrast:

$$\ddot{\delta} + \mathcal{H}\dot{\delta} = 3\mathcal{H}\dot{\Phi} + 3\ddot{\Phi} - k^2\Psi \quad , \quad (5.3)$$

for simplicity, we have dropped the arguments of the scale and time dependent functions.

At this stage we introduce the quasistatic (QS) approximation. In this approximation, the first and second derivatives of the gravitational potential  $\Phi$  are taken to be negligible compared to the spatial gradients of  $\Psi$ . This is justified since the potentials vary only at cosmological time scales and we are focusing on evolutions of the perturbations at subhorizon scales, where  $aH/k \gg 1$ . Now we apply the QS limit and use the relativistic Poisson equation 1.37 to substitute the Laplacian of  $\Psi$  with a source term that depends on  $\delta$ :

$$\ddot{\delta} + \mathcal{H}\dot{\delta} = 4\pi G a^2 \bar{\rho}_m \delta \quad . \quad (5.4)$$

In order to solve this equation, it is easier if we first transform our time variable to the scale factor  $a$ . To do so, we can define some transformations between conformal time and the scale factor:

$$\mathcal{H} = \frac{\dot{a}}{a} = a \frac{da}{dt} = aH \quad (5.5)$$

$$\dot{\mathcal{H}} = \frac{\ddot{a}}{a} - \mathcal{H}^2 \quad (5.6)$$

$$\frac{d}{d\tau} = a^2 H \frac{d}{da} \quad , \quad (5.7)$$

furthermore, from eq. (1.9) and eq. (1.16), we can find the relation:

$$\frac{4\pi G}{H^2(a)} \rho_m(a) = \frac{3}{2} \Omega_m(a) \quad , \quad (5.8)$$

where,

$$\Omega_m(a) = \frac{H_0^2 \Omega_{m,0} a^{-3}}{H^2(a)} . \quad (5.9)$$

Finally the transformed equation for  $\delta$  has the form:

$$\delta'' + \left( \frac{3}{a} + \frac{H'}{H} \right) \delta' = \frac{3}{2} \frac{\Omega_m(a)}{a^2} \delta . \quad (5.10)$$

This second order differential equation has two solutions: a decaying one,  $D_-(a)$  and a growing one  $D_+(a)$ . The decaying solution is  $\delta \propto H$  and it can be shown easily by inspection in the matter dominated case where all the energy is non-relativistic matter (see ([cite Dodelson book](#))). In that case,  $H \propto a^{-3/2}$  and all terms scale as  $a^{-7/2}$ , so that passing all terms to the left hand side, the coefficients  $\{\frac{15}{4}, -\frac{9}{4}, -\frac{3}{2}\}$  indeed cancel out. It can be shown that this decaying solution is satisfied even if  $H$  contains other energy components. This can be done with the interesting relation between derivatives of  $H$  and the matter species density fraction:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{H''(a)}{H(a)} + \frac{H'(a)(aH'(a) + 3H(a))}{aH(a)^2} = \\ \frac{3H_0^2 (\Omega_{m,0} + (w_{\text{DE}} + 1)(3w_{\text{DE}} + 1)\Omega_{\text{DE}} a^{-3w_{\text{DE}}})}{2a^5 H^2} , \end{aligned} \quad (5.11)$$

where for generality, we have taken a  $w\text{CDM}$  cosmology, with Hubble function:

$$H^2 = H_0^2 \left( \Omega_{m,0} a^{-3} + \Omega_{\text{DE}} a^{-3(w_{\text{DE}}+1)} \right) , \quad (5.12)$$

and Dark Energy equation of state  $w_{\text{DE}}$ . With  $w_{\text{DE}} = -1$ , one can readily transform the r.h.s. of eq. (5.10) and prove the validity of the decaying solution.

The growing mode of eq. (5.10) can be found by trying the Ansatz  $u = \delta/H$  and by using the relation above eq. (5.12), between matter density and derivatives of  $H$ , we can find the evolution equation for  $u$ :

$$u'' + 3 \left[ \frac{H'}{H} + \frac{1}{a} \right] u' = 0 . \quad (5.13)$$

Since there are no terms proportional to  $u$ , this can be expressed as a first order equation of  $v \equiv u'$ :

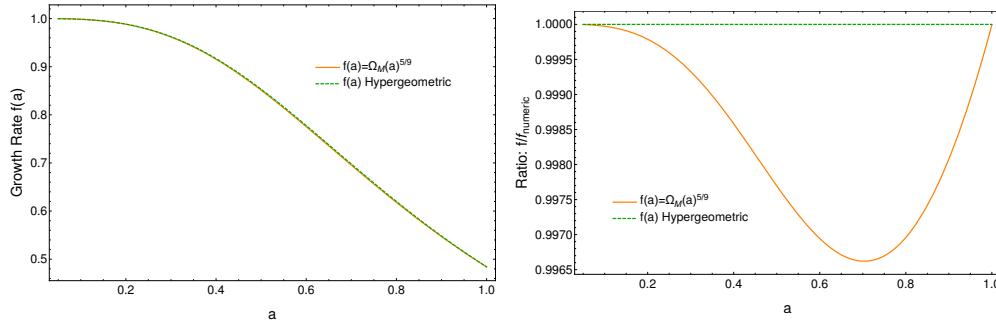
$$\begin{aligned} v' &= -3 \left[ \frac{H'}{H} + \frac{1}{a} \right] v \\ \ln v &= -3 \ln(aH) \\ v &\propto (aH)^{-3} . \end{aligned} \quad (5.14)$$

This can be further integrated to find the growing mode,  $D_+(a) \equiv \delta(a) = u(a)H(a)$  as the integral:

$$D_+(a) = \frac{5\Omega_{m,0}}{2a_{\text{ini}}} \frac{H(a)}{H_0} \int_0^a \frac{d\tilde{a}}{(\tilde{a}H(\tilde{a})/H_0)^3} , \quad (5.15)$$

where the proportionality constant has been obtained by enforcing  $D_+ = a$  at early matter-dominated times, when  $H = H_0 \Omega_{m,0}^{1/2} a^{-3/2}$ , see ([cite Dodelson book](#)) and

$a_{\text{ini}}$  is the scale factor at which the initial condition  $\Omega_m(a_{\text{ini}}) = 1$ , has been set. In this way, eq. (5.15) matches exactly the numerical solution of eq. (5.10).



**FIGURE 5.1:** **Left:** growth rate function  $f(a)$ , calculated by two different methods. In orange, the  $\Omega^\gamma$ -approximation, with  $\gamma = 5/9$ , while in green the exact analytical solution from eq. (5.18). **Right:** Ratio of each of the two methods to the numerical solution of eq. (5.20), same coloring as before. The exact and numerical solution agree exactly, while the  $\gamma$ -approximation is fine at the per mille level.

Usually, this integral in this form can only be expressed analytically for an open Universe without Dark Energy (see ([cite Dodelson book](#))). However, by doing a further transformation into e-folding time:  $N \equiv \ln a$ , we can find a closed analytical expression for the late-time  $\Lambda$ CDM scenario, with matter and a cosmological constant. In this variable, the Hubble function looks like:

$$H(N) = H_0 \sqrt{\Omega_{m,0} \exp(-3N) + \Omega_{\Lambda,0}} \quad , \quad (5.16)$$

while the integral of eq. (5.15) transforms to:

$$D_+(N) = \frac{5\Omega_{m,0}}{2a_{\text{ini}}} H_0^2 H(a) \int_{-\infty}^N \frac{e^{-2\tilde{N}} d\tilde{N}}{H^3(\tilde{N})} \quad . \quad (5.17)$$

It turns out that eq. (5.17) has a closed analytical solution in the case of a cosmological constant and a total matter component. It can be expressed in terms of Hypergeometric functions as:

$$D_+(N) = \frac{1}{a_{\text{ini}}} e^N {}_2F_1\left(\frac{1}{3}, 1; \frac{11}{6}; -\frac{e^{3N}\Omega_{\Lambda,0}}{\Omega_{m,0}}\right) \quad . \quad (5.18)$$

The growth rate which is defined as:

$$f(a) = \frac{d \ln D_+(a)}{d \ln a} \quad , \quad (5.19)$$

and it is usually approximated as  $f(a) = \Omega^\gamma(a)$ , with  $\gamma \approx 5/9$ , can also be expressed in terms of Hypergeometric functions, as:

$$f(N) = 1 - \frac{6e^{3N}\Omega_{\Lambda,0}}{11\Omega_{m,0}} {}_2F_1\left(\frac{4}{3}, 2; \frac{17}{6}; -\frac{e^{3N}\Omega_{\Lambda,0}}{\Omega_{m,0}}\right) / {}_2F_1\left(\frac{1}{3}, 1; \frac{11}{6}; -\frac{e^{3N}\Omega_{\Lambda,0}}{\Omega_{m,0}}\right) \quad . \quad (5.20)$$

It can be shown that  $f(N)$  satisfies exactly the growth rate equation, which can be derived from eq. (5.10) and we express here in terms of the e-folding time  $N = \ln a$ :

$$\frac{df}{dN} + f^2 + \left( 2 + \frac{d \ln H}{dN} \right) f = \frac{3}{2} \Omega_m . \quad (5.21)$$

In fig. 5.1 we show the result for the formulas presented above. In the left panel, we show  $f(a)$  for the  $\gamma$  approximation (orange solid line) compared to the exact  $f(a)$  solution of eq. (5.20). The difference is almost unnoticeable by eye. Notice how at early times, when most of the energy of the Universe consisted on non-relativistic matter, the growth rate is equal to unity and it decreases due to the later dominance of Dark Energy. In the right panel of fig. 5.1, we plot the ratio between the  $\gamma$ -approximation and the numerical solution of eq. (5.20) in orange solid lines, while in dashed green we plot the ratio of the exact solution to the numerical one. The latter agrees exactly, while the  $\gamma$ -approximation is accurate at the per mille level.

## 5.2 The non-linear fluid equations

In order to study large scale structure (LSS) formation we will treat the Dark Matter distribution as a perfect fluid of collisionless particles coupled to gravity. These particles, with positions  $\mathbf{x}$ , mass  $m$  and momenta  $\mathbf{p}$ , are described by the Vlasov equation in phase-space, with the phase space density  $f(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}, \tau)$ :

$$\frac{df}{d\tau} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial \tau} + \frac{\mathbf{p}}{ma} \nabla f - am \nabla \Psi \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{p}} . \quad (5.22)$$

This equation together with the Poisson equation eq. (1.39), form the Vlasov-Poisson system (see Bernardeau et al., 2001). Since we are interested in the evolution in time of the spatial distribution, we can take momentum moments of the Vlasov equation. This will yield an infinite hierarchy of coupled differential equations, where the zeroth-moment of the phase-space distribution ( $\rho$ ) is coupled to the first-moment ( $\mathbf{u}$ ), the first-moment to the second  $\sigma_{ij}$  and so on (see Bernardeau et al., 2001). For our purposes we will neglect the anisotropic stress tensor  $\sigma_{ij}$ , which describe velocity dispersion and anisotropic pressure. and so on. This is the so-called *single stream approximation* and is one of the main limitations of Eulerian perturbation theory, since the theory breaks down as soon as shell crossing and multi-streaming start being important.

From the first two momentum-moments of the Vlasov equation, giving rise to the continuity and Euler equations, together with the Poisson equation, we can find the fluid equations of the system, where we will add from the start two general terms  $\mathcal{A}(\mathbf{x}, \tau)$  and  $\mathcal{B}(\mathbf{x}, \tau)$  in real space, which account for modifications of gravity either in the Einstein or Jordan frames (see Pietroni, 2008a):

$$\dot{\delta}(\mathbf{x}, \tau) + \nabla \cdot [(1 + \delta(\mathbf{x}, \tau)) \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}, \tau)] = 0 \quad (5.23)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{v}}(\mathbf{x}, \tau) + \mathcal{H}(\mathbf{x}, \tau) + [\mathcal{A}(\mathbf{x}, \tau) \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}, \tau)] \\ + (\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}, \tau) \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}, \tau) = -\nabla \Psi(\mathbf{x}, \tau) \end{aligned} \quad (5.24)$$

$$\nabla^2 \Psi(\mathbf{x}, \tau) = \frac{3}{2} \mathcal{H}^2(\tau) \Omega_m(\tau) (\delta(\mathbf{x}, \tau) + [\mathcal{B}(\mathbf{x}, \tau) \delta(\mathbf{x}, \tau)]) \quad (5.25)$$

Here, as usual in our notation,  $\tau$  is the conformal time, and an overdot represents a derivative with respect to  $\tau$ . The symbols  $\delta_c(\mathbf{x}, \tau)$  and  $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}, \tau)$  are respectively the matter density contrast and the peculiar velocity.  $\Psi(\mathbf{x}, \tau)$  is the 00-gravitational potential and the functions  $\mathcal{A}(\mathbf{x}, \tau)$  and  $\mathcal{B}(\mathbf{x}, \tau)$  are general functions of space and time that parameterize different cosmologies, for example when particles' geodesics are modified, or when there is an extra "fifth-force" acting between Dark Matter particles. This can happen due to couplings with a scalar field or more general modifications of gravity, see chapter 1 for more details. However, in the Jordan frame, where Horndeski's theory is formulated, the Euler equation is not modified and there is only a space-time dependent modification to the Poisson equation, which will be connected to the scale-time dependent function  $\mu(k, t)$ , defined below and used extensively in the previous chapter 3. Within this chapter,  $\Omega_m(\tau)$  is the function representing the cold dark matter (CDM) density of the Universe. For simplicity, we will neglect baryonic matter and neutrinos.

In the following, we will stay within the quasi-static limit, i.e. restrict to scales much smaller than the cosmological horizon ( $k/aH \gg 1$ ) and well inside the Jeans length of the scalar field  $c_s k \gg 1$ , so that terms containing  $k$  dominate over terms containing time derivatives. So that eq. (5.4) is the equation governing the evolution of matter perturbations.

For general modified gravity theories, the deviation of the gravitational potentials from General Relativity, can be parameterized with two arbitrary functions of scale and time:  $\mu(k, a)$  and  $\eta(k, a)$ , as was explained in chapter 1, section 1.5.4. However, in the quasistatic limit for Horndeski theories, these two functions have a specific form, given by (cite **amendola; observables; bellini**):

$$\mu(k, a) \equiv -\frac{2k^2\Psi}{3\Omega_m\delta_m} = h_1 \left( \frac{1 + (k/k_*)^2h_5}{1 + (k/k_*)^2h_3} \right) \quad (5.26)$$

where  $h_1, h_3, h_5$  are functions of time only. A similar expression, with different time dependent coefficients  $h_2, h_4$ , holds for the gravitational slip  $\eta$ :

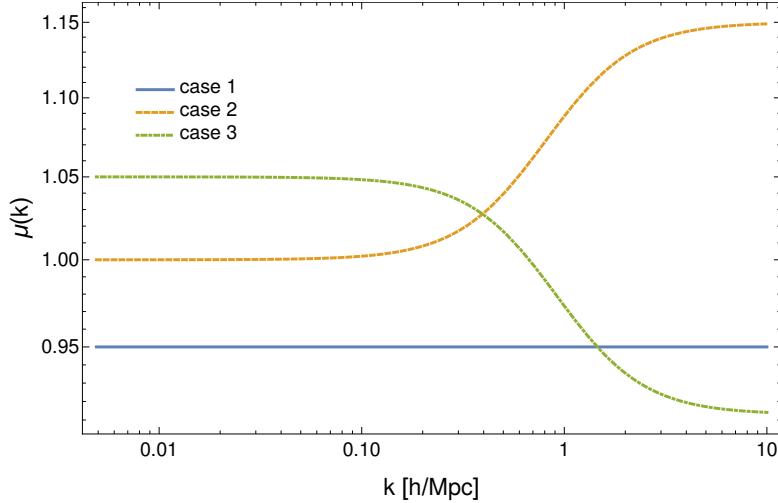
$$\eta(k, a) \equiv -\frac{\Phi}{\Psi} = h_2 \left( \frac{1 + (k/k_*)^2h_4}{1 + (k/k_*)^2h_5} \right). \quad (5.27)$$

For the remainder of this chapter, we will consider all  $h_i$  functions as constants in order to simplify our computations and to show the main effects of MG, without specifying a model. The scale  $k_*$  is an arbitrary pivot scale, which can be chosen accordingly. As it can be seen from eq. (5.26) and eq. (5.27), the functions  $h_5$  and  $h_3$  are degenerate as well as  $h_4$  and  $h_5$ . The  $\Lambda$ CDM case is recovered when  $\mu = \eta = 1$ , which implies  $h_5 = h_4 = h_3$  and an amplitude  $h_1 = h_2 = 1$ .

Since we are in the QS limit, the only MG function entering the perturbation equations is  $\mu(a, k)$ . The function  $\eta(a, k)$  could enter the equations if we would not neglect the derivatives of the gravitational potential  $\Phi$ , as was shown in chapter 3. In the following we will only consider the scale-dependence of  $\mu$ , therefore  $\mu(k, a) = \mu(k)$  (although perturbations require two functions of time and scale to fully specify the model). In particular, we will test the following cases:

1. Scale independent  $\mu$  with modified amplitude:  $h_5 = h_3$  and  $h_1 > 1$  or  $h_1 < 1$ .
2. Scale dependent  $\mu$  with unity amplitude:  $h_1 = 1$  and  $h_5 > h_3$  or  $h_5 < h_3$ .
3. Scale dependent  $\mu$  with modified amplitude:  $h_1 \neq 1$  and  $h_5 > h_3$  or  $h_5 < h_3$ .

An example of these  $\mu(k)$  functions is shown in fig. 5.2, where we show the function  $\mu(k)$  for three different cases. The solid blue line stands for case 1, in which only the amplitude of  $\mu$  changes, but there is no scale dependence. The orange dashed line in this figure, stands for case 2, in which the amplitude is unity at large scales and there is a  $k$ -dependence at smaller scales. Finally, in dot-dashed-green, we show case 3 in which both the amplitude and the scale-dependence deviate from standard GR.



**FIGURE 5.2:** Function  $\mu(k)$  for three different cases specified in the text. The solid blue line stands for case 1, in which only the amplitude of  $\mu$  changes, but there is no scale dependence. The orange dashed line is case 2, in which the amplitude is unity at large scales and there is a  $k$ -dependence at smaller scales. In dot-dashed-green, we show case 3 in which both the amplitude and the scale-dependence deviate from standard GR.

### 5.3 The field notation

We can express eqs. (5.23) to (5.25) in a compact form, known as the field notation, which was introduced in the literature of standard perturbation theory (SPT) and renormalized perturbation theory (RPT) (see [crocce\\_renormalized\\_2005](#); [Bernardeau et al., 2001](#); [Pietroni, 2008a](#)). To do so, we will transform eqs. (5.23) to (5.25) into Fourier space. In linear theory, this is a straightforward computation, since partial derivatives transform into  $\partial \rightarrow ik$ . However, if we take into account the non-linear terms, these become convolutions in Fourier space. First we decompose the velocity such that:

$$\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{k}) = \mathbf{v}_\theta(\mathbf{k}) + \mathbf{v}_\omega(\mathbf{k}) \quad , \quad (5.28)$$

where:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v}_\omega(\mathbf{k}) &= 0 \\ \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{v}_\theta(\mathbf{k}) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

According to linear theory the vorticity component  $\mathbf{v}_\omega(\mathbf{k})$  decays with the expansion of the Universe as  $a^{-1}$ , so if we assume non-vortical initial conditions, we can

neglect this term and look only at the velocity divergence  $\theta = i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ , which is now a scalar function. Inverting this last relation to get:  $\mathbf{v} = -\frac{i\mathbf{k}}{k^2}\theta$ , allows us to perform the Fourier transforms explicitly:

$$\begin{aligned} FT\{\nabla \cdot (\delta_m \mathbf{v})\} &= +i\mathbf{k} \int d^3q d^3p \delta_D(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{k}) \frac{-i\mathbf{p}}{p^2} \delta_m(\mathbf{q}, \tau) \theta(\mathbf{p}, \tau) \\ &= \int d^3q d^3p \delta_D(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{p} - \mathbf{q}) \underbrace{\frac{(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q}) \cdot \mathbf{p}}{p^2}}_{\alpha(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q})} \delta_m(\mathbf{q}, \tau) \theta(\mathbf{p}, \tau) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} FT\{\nabla \cdot [(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \cdot \mathbf{v}]\} &= i\mathbf{k} \cdot \int d^3q d^3p \delta_D(\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}) \left( \frac{-i\mathbf{q}}{q^2} \cdot i\mathbf{p} \right) \frac{-i\mathbf{p}}{p^2} \theta(\mathbf{q}, \tau) \theta(\mathbf{p}, \tau) \\ &= \mathbf{k} \cdot \int d^3q d^3p \delta_D(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{p}) \left( \frac{\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{q}}{p^2 q^2} \right) \mathbf{p} \theta(\mathbf{q}, \tau) \theta(\mathbf{p}, \tau) \\ &= \int d^3q d^3p \delta_D(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{p}) \underbrace{\frac{(\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{q})^2 \mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{q}}{2p^2 q^2}}_{\beta(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p})} \theta(\mathbf{q}, \tau) \theta(\mathbf{p}, \tau) \end{aligned}$$

where in the last step we used the symmetry between  $\mathbf{p}$  and  $\mathbf{q}$ . The terms marked with an underbrace, are the ones responsible for the mode-mode coupling:

$$\alpha(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}) = \frac{(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q}) \cdot \mathbf{q}}{q^2} = \alpha(-\mathbf{q}, -\mathbf{p}); \quad \beta(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}) = \frac{(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q})^2 \mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{q}}{2p^2 q^2} = \beta(-\mathbf{q}, -\mathbf{p}) \quad (5.29)$$

Defining a field doublet  $\varphi_a$ , with index  $a$  as:

$$\varphi_a(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = e^{-\eta} \begin{pmatrix} \delta_m(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \\ -\theta(\mathbf{k}, \eta)/\mathcal{H} \end{pmatrix} \quad , \quad (5.30)$$

we obtain the Euler, continuity and Poisson equations in a compact form:

$$\partial_\eta \varphi_a(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = -\Omega_{ab}(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \varphi_b(\mathbf{k}, \eta) + e^\eta \gamma_{abc}(\mathbf{k}, -\mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{q}) \varphi_b(\mathbf{p}, \eta) \varphi_c(\mathbf{q}, \eta) \quad . \quad (5.31)$$

In the above equation we have defined a new time variable which will prove to be very convenient for our calculations:

$$\eta \equiv \ln \frac{a}{a_{in}} \quad . \quad (5.32)$$

The r.h.s. of eq. (5.31) contains two terms, the first one corresponds to the “linear” evolution of perturbations, where the  $\Omega_{ab}$  matrix encodes the cosmology dependence:

$$\Omega_{ab}(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -\frac{3}{2}\Omega_m(\eta)(1 + \mathcal{B}(\mathbf{k}, \eta)) & 2 + \frac{\mathcal{H}'}{\mathcal{H}} + \mathcal{A}(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \end{pmatrix} \quad , \quad (5.33)$$

where here the functions  $\mathcal{B}(\mathbf{k}, \eta)$  and  $\mathcal{A}(\mathbf{k}, \eta)$  are the Fourier space transforms of the same functions defined in the Vlasov-Poisson system and encode possible modifications of gravity. In Horndeski theories under the QS limit, we can identify:

$$(1 + \mathcal{B}(\mathbf{k}, \eta)) = \mu(\eta, k) \quad (5.34)$$

$$\mathcal{A}(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = 1 \quad . \quad (5.35)$$

On the r.h.s. of eq. (5.31), the second term represents all the nonlinearities in real space and therefore non-localities in Fourier space. The  $\gamma_{abc}$  functions in this formalism can be understood as interaction vertices and its non-vanishing components are precisely given by the mode-mode coupling functions  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , defined in eq. (5.29) :

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma_{121}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) &= \frac{1}{2}\delta_D(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q})\alpha(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) & \gamma_{121}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}) = \gamma_{112}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) \\ \gamma_{222}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) &= \delta_D(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q})\beta(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q})\end{aligned}\quad (5.36)$$

In this notation and throughout this chapter, an *integration over  $\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}$*  is understood and  $\mathbf{k}$  is always the “external” momentum. The integral symbols will be added only if they are needed due to possible confusions with the notation.

Equation 5.31 is the starting point for all renormalization and resummation methods, like the ones introduced by [crocce\\_renormalized\\_2005](#); [bernardeau\\_constructing\\_2012](#); [valageas\\_matter\\_2013](#); [anselmi\\_next-leading\\_2010](#); Anselmi and Pietroni, [2012a](#); Bernardeau, [2013](#). The linear part can be easily solved and the function relating the initial primordial density perturbations to the final one, is called the linear propagator and will be studied in section 5.4. The nonlinear part, cannot be solved analytically, nor with a simple numerical integration. However, a perturbative approach using tools from Quantum Field Theory can be used to regularize its divergences which are caused by the fact that the density perturbations (which is at the same time the perturbation variable) grows with time and increasing wave vector. For this part we will use the resummation technique of Anselmi and Pietroni, [2012a](#) and this will be explained in detail in section 5.5.

Resumming and renormalizing perturbation theory can help in finding the evolution of the nonlinear power spectrum at small scales and late times, but even if we could calculate exactly its result at all loop orders, there are still intrinsic limitations given by the starting equations 5.23-?. Apart from neglecting vorticity in the later stages of evolution, the initial equations are derived in the single-stream-approximation. This means that at a single point in space, the velocity field can only have one value, therefore no two particles can cross their paths. This condition clearly breaks down in the virialization regime and even before during late stages of structure formation, when shell-crossing happens. Resummation methods can be extended and improved by including these other sources of density power into the equations in an effective way, see the discussion in Manzotti et al., [2014a](#); Pietroni et al., [2011](#) and recent results in the effective field theory of large scale structures [pajer\\_renormalization\\_2013](#); [senatore\\_ir-resummed\\_2014](#); Baumann et al., [2012a](#); Carrasco, Hertzberg, and Senatore, [2012](#).

In the following sections, we will show how to solve the linear part of the fluid equations for a general time and scale-dependent growth (see section 5.4) and then we will use these results in section 5.5 to solve the evolution equation of the matter power spectrum, which will yield the non-linear evolution of the density perturbations.

## 5.4 The linear propagator

As was explained above, in eqn. 5.31 the non-linearity of the Vlasov-Poisson system of equations is fully encoded in the vertex  $\gamma_{abc}$  which represents the mode-mode coupling. Without this term, we recover the linear equation:

$$\partial_\eta \varphi_a(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = -\Omega_{ab}(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \varphi_b(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \quad (5.37)$$

which is valid for a fully scale and time dependent  $\Omega_{ab}$ . The linear propagator is the function that connects the initial density perturbations with the final ones, or in other words solves the above equation (5.37) (see ([cite scoccimarro; pietroni](#))). The linear propagator gives the linear evolution of the field  $\varphi_a$ :

$$\varphi_a(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = g_{ab}(\mathbf{k}, \eta, \eta') \varphi_b(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \quad , \quad (5.38)$$

and it has to fulfill following properties:

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_\eta g_{ab}(\mathbf{k}, \eta, \eta') &= -\Omega_{ac}(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \cdot g_{cb}(\mathbf{k}, \eta, \eta') \\ \lim_{\eta' \rightarrow \eta} g_{ab}(\mathbf{k}, \eta, \eta') &= \mathbb{I}_{ab} \\ g_{ab}(\mathbf{k}, \eta, \eta') \cdot g_{bc}(\mathbf{k}, \eta', \eta'') &= g_{ac}(\mathbf{k}, \eta, \eta'') \end{aligned}$$

### 5.4.1 The linear propagator in the general case

We can show that the linear propagator can be written in general for the scale and time dependent decaying (-) and growing (+) modes of the growth rate  $f_\pm(\mathbf{k}, \eta)$  as:

$$g(\mathbf{k}, \eta, \eta') = \Theta(\eta - \eta') \left[ e^{-\int_{\eta'}^\eta (\Omega_{11} + \Omega_{12} f_+) dx} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{f_+(\mathbf{k}, \eta)}{f_+(\mathbf{k}, \eta')} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{M}^+(\mathbf{k}, \eta') \right. \\ \left. + e^{-\int_{\eta'}^\eta (\Omega_{11} + \Omega_{12} f_-) dx} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{f_-(\mathbf{k}, \eta)}{f_-(\mathbf{k}, \eta')} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{M}^-(\mathbf{k}, \eta') \right] \quad , \quad (5.39)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}^\pm$  are projection operators which we will specify in the following calculation (see Pietroni, [2008a](#) for more details).

If the linear equation eq. (5.37) has solutions of the form :

$$\varphi_{sol}(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ f(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \end{pmatrix} \varphi(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \quad , \quad (5.40)$$

then we can find an equation that describes the evolution of the growth of perturbations. For the index  $a = 1$ :

$$\partial_\eta \varphi = -\Omega_{11} \varphi - \Omega_{12} f \varphi = -(\Omega_{11} + \Omega_{12} f) \varphi \quad (5.41)$$

For the index  $a = 2$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_\eta(f \varphi) &= f \partial_\eta \varphi + \varphi \partial_\eta f = -\Omega_{21} \varphi - \Omega_{22} f \varphi \\ \Rightarrow \partial_\eta f &= \Omega_{12} f^2 + (\Omega_{11} - \Omega_{22}) f - \Omega_{21} \end{aligned} \quad (5.42)$$

$$\Rightarrow \partial_\eta f = \Omega_{12}(f - \bar{f}_+)(f - \bar{f}_-) \quad (5.43)$$

Equation 5.42 is what we usually know as the growth rate equation for  $f = d \ln D / d \ln a$ , being  $D$  the growth factor of density perturbations and in this general case it can have a time and scale dependent solution. The zeros of eq. (5.43) are given by:

$$\bar{f}_\pm(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = \frac{(\Omega_{22} - \Omega_{11}) \mp \sqrt{(\Omega_{22} - \Omega_{11})^2 + 4\Omega_{21}\Omega_{12}}}{2\Omega_{12}} \quad (5.44)$$

With these equations, we can find the solution of eq. (5.41) and eq. (5.43) as:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(\eta) &= e^{-\int_{\eta'}^{\eta} (\Omega_{11} + \Omega_{12}f) dx} \varphi(\eta') \\ f(\eta)\varphi(\eta) &= e^{-\int_{\eta'}^{\eta} (\Omega_{21} + \Omega_{22}f) dx} f(\eta')\varphi(\eta') \\ &= e^{-\int_{\eta'}^{\eta} (\Omega_{11} + \Omega_{12}f) dx} \varphi(\eta')f(\eta') \frac{f(\eta)}{f(\eta')} \end{aligned}$$

One can identify the basis solutions by setting their initial conditions as:

$$f_\pm^{in} = \bar{f}_\pm(\mathbf{k}, \eta_i) \quad , \quad (5.45)$$

where  $\eta_i$  is an initial time that can be set at high redshift where the Universe is approximately Einstein-de Sitter (E-dS), therefore matter dominated.

For E-dS,  $\Omega_m = 1$  we have very simple background quantities:  $\mathcal{H}' \setminus \mathcal{H} = -1/2 - 3w_{eff}/2 = -1/2$ , so that the  $\Omega_{ab}$  from equation 5.33 is simply:

$$\Omega_{ab} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad , \quad (5.46)$$

which gives the following initial conditions for the growing  $u$  and decaying  $v$  modes:

$$u_a = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ f_+^{in} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.47)$$

$$v_a = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ f_-^{in} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.48)$$

The growing mode will be the mode of interest that we will use in section 5.5, when we want to calculate the evolution of the power spectrum.

The instantaneous projectors on the two basis solutions are defined as:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M}^+(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ f_+(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ f_+(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \end{pmatrix} \\ \mathbf{M}^+(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ f_-(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \end{pmatrix} &= 0 \\ \mathbf{M}^-(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ f_-(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ f_-(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \end{pmatrix} \\ \mathbf{M}^-(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ f_+(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \end{pmatrix} &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

In this case, the growing projector can be written explicitly by subtracting the decaying projector from the unity matrix:

$$\mathbf{M}^+(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = \mathbb{1} - \mathbf{M}^-(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = \frac{1}{f_- - f_+} \begin{pmatrix} f_- & -1 \\ f_- - f_+ & -f_+ \end{pmatrix} \quad . \quad (5.49)$$

For the Einstein-de Sitter case, the projectors do not evolve in time, since  $u_a$  and  $v_a$  are constant, and they are given by:

$$\mathbf{M}^+ = \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{M}^- = \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -2 \\ -3 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

In the E-dS case, since there is no  $k$ -dependence in any quantity and the growing mode is constant, this would reduce to :

$$g(\eta, \eta') = \Theta(\eta - \eta') \left[ \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -2 \\ -3 & 3 \end{pmatrix} e^{-5/2(\eta-\eta')} \right] . \quad (5.50)$$

#### 5.4.2 The linear propagator in the Horndeski case

Using the same procedure as we employed for the general case, we will calculate the linear propagator for the Horndeski case, in which the growth factor  $D$  is scale and time dependent. Then the linear propagator can be used to calculate its fully nonlinear renormalized version, which then is a crucial ingredient of the evolution equation in section 5.5.

Using eq. (5.26) as the modification of the Poisson equation we can write the general  $\Omega_{ab}$  matrix as:

$$\Omega_{ab}(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -\frac{3}{2}\mu(k)\Omega_m(\eta) & \frac{\mathcal{H}'}{\mathcal{H}} + 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.51)$$

in this case, the initial conditions from eq. (5.44) are:

$$f_-^{in} = -\frac{1}{2}(\Sigma + \omega) \quad (5.52)$$

$$f_+^{in} = \frac{1}{2}(\Sigma - \omega)$$

where  $\omega = 1 + \frac{\mathcal{H}'}{\mathcal{H}}$  and  $\Sigma = \sqrt{6Y\Omega_m + \omega^2}$  are quite general functions of scale and time. Inserting this into eq. (5.39), one can find the most general form of the propagator for the Horndeski theory.

For models which are close to  $\Lambda$ CDM, it is more convenient to change the time variable from  $\eta = \ln \frac{a}{a_{in}}$  to  $\mathcal{X} = \ln \frac{D(\tau)}{D(\tau=\tau_{in})}$ , where  $D(\tau)$  is the growth function usually written as the growing solution of the linear density perturbation equation :  $\delta(\tau) = D_+(\tau)\delta^{in}$ . The doublet 5.30 can be redefined as:

$$\tilde{\varphi}_a = \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{\varphi}_1 \\ \tilde{\varphi}_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-\mathcal{X}}\delta_c \\ -e^{-\mathcal{X}}\frac{\theta}{\mathcal{H}f} \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.53)$$

Substituting in the previous equations the derivatives  $\delta' = e^{\mathcal{X}}(\varphi'_1 + \varphi_1)$ ,  $\theta' = -e^{\mathcal{X}}f(\mathcal{X})\mathcal{H}\left(\tilde{\varphi}_2\left(1 + \frac{f'(\mathcal{X})}{f(\mathcal{X})} + \frac{\mathcal{H}'}{\mathcal{H}}\right) + \tilde{\varphi}'_2\right)$  we get:

$$\tilde{\varphi}'_1 + \tilde{\varphi}_1 - \tilde{\varphi}_2 - \alpha e^{\mathcal{X}}\tilde{\varphi}_1\tilde{\varphi}_2 = 0 \quad (5.54)$$

$$-\tilde{\varphi}'_2 - \tilde{\varphi}_2\left(1 + \frac{f'}{f} + \frac{1}{f} + \frac{\mathcal{H}'}{\mathcal{H}}\right) + \beta e^{\mathcal{X}}\tilde{\varphi}_2\tilde{\varphi}_2 = -\frac{3}{2}\Omega_m\mu\frac{\tilde{\varphi}_1}{f^2}$$

$$\Rightarrow -\tilde{\varphi}'_2 - \frac{3}{2}\frac{\Omega_m\mu}{f^2}\tilde{\varphi}_2 + \frac{3}{2}\frac{\Omega_m\mu}{f^2}\tilde{\varphi}_1 + \beta e^{\mathcal{X}}\tilde{\varphi}_2\tilde{\varphi}_2 = 0 \quad (5.55)$$

where we have omitted for notational simplicity the momentum and time dependence. In the last step we used the growth rate equation  $\ddot{\delta}_m + \dot{\delta}_m\left(1 + \frac{\dot{\mathcal{H}}}{\mathcal{H}}\right) = \frac{3}{2}\Omega_m\delta_m\mu$ , where in this case an overdot represents a derivative with respect to  $\eta = \ln \frac{a}{a_{in}}$ , since the ' $'$ -symbol is now reserved for the  $\mathcal{X}$  time variable.

Comparing eqs. (5.54) to (5.55) with 5.31, we get the following transformed  $\tilde{\Omega}_{ab}$  matrix:

$$\tilde{\Omega}_{ab}(\mathbf{k}, \mathcal{X}) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -\frac{3}{2}\frac{\Omega_m(\mathcal{X})}{f_+^2(\mathcal{X})}\mu(k) & \frac{3}{2}\frac{\Omega_m(\mathcal{X})}{f_+^2(\mathcal{X})}\mu(k) \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.56)$$

#### First approximation: Assuming a constant $\mu \neq 1$

Assuming a constant  $\mu$  different from 1 and the approximation that  $\Omega_m(\mathcal{X})/f_+^2(\mathcal{X}) = 1$  at late times (which is exact only for E-dS but turns out to be a very good approximation (much more accurately than 1%) for the  $\Lambda$ CDM evolution), we can follow the steps given above in section 5.4 and obtain the initial growing and decaying modes:

$$u_a = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} , \quad (5.57)$$

$$v_a = \frac{-2}{3\mu} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\frac{3\mu}{2} \end{pmatrix} . \quad (5.58)$$

Using these modes, we can find the projectors:

$$\mathbf{M}^+ = \frac{1}{2+3\mu} \begin{pmatrix} 3\mu & 2 \\ 3\mu & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{M}^- = \frac{1}{2+3\mu} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -2 \\ -3\mu & 3\mu \end{pmatrix}$$

The linear propagator would then have the following form:

$$g(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}') = \Theta(\mathcal{X} - \mathcal{X}') \left[ \frac{1}{2+3\mu} \begin{pmatrix} 3\mu & 2 \\ 3\mu & 2 \end{pmatrix} \right. \\ \left. + \frac{1}{2+3\mu} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -2 \\ -3\mu & 3\mu \end{pmatrix} e^{-\frac{(2+3\mu)}{2}(\mathcal{X}-\mathcal{X}')} \right] \quad (5.59)$$

As a first approximation, we will use eq. (5.59) as the linear propagator, even if we are treating more general cases where  $\mu(k)$  is an arbitrary function and  $\Omega_m/f^2 \neq 1$ . This approximation can be justified better in the next section, when we will see that  $g(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}')$  only enters in the evolution equation of the power spectrum inside the 1-loop quantities, which should contribute only sub-dominantly to the final power spectrum.

## 5.5 The Evolution Equation for the Power Spectrum

In this section we are interested in computing the non-linear matter power spectrum, which is defined as the two-point correlation function of the density-velocity doublet eq. (5.30):

$$(2\pi)^3 \delta^{(D)}(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{k}') P_{ab}(k; \eta, \eta') \equiv \langle \varphi_a(\mathbf{k}, \eta) \varphi_a(\mathbf{k}', \eta') \rangle , \quad (5.60)$$

where  $\delta^{(D)}$  is the Dirac delta and the power spectrum is a symmetric matrix, containing in the  $(1, 1)$ -component, the correlation between density fluctuations, in the  $(2, 2)$ -component the velocity-velocity correlation and the  $(1, 2)$ -component is naturally the cross correlation between velocity and density fluctuations. The evolution equation governing the growth in time and the coupling between the modes of  $P_{ab}(k; \eta, \eta')$ , is given in the Eikonal Renormalized Perturbation Theory framework (introduced by Anselmi and Pietroni, 2012a and further detailed in (cite cite Peloso; Pietroni; 1609.06624)), by:

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_{\mathcal{X}} \tilde{P}_{ab}(k; \mathcal{X}) = & -\tilde{\Omega}_{ac}(\mathbf{k}; \mathcal{X}) \tilde{P}_{cb}(\mathbf{k}; \mathcal{X}) - \tilde{\Omega}_{bc}(\mathbf{k}; \mathcal{X}) \tilde{P}_{ac}(\mathbf{k}; \mathcal{X}) \\ & + H_{\mathbf{a}}(k; \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}_{in}) \tilde{P}_{ab}(\mathbf{k}; \mathcal{X}) + H_{\mathbf{b}}(k; \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}_{in}) \tilde{P}_{ab}(\mathbf{k}; \mathcal{X}) \\ & + \int ds \left[ \tilde{\Phi}_{ad}(k; \mathcal{X}, s) G_{bd}^{eik}(k; \mathcal{X}, s) + G_{ad}^{eik}(k; \mathcal{X}, s) \tilde{\Phi}_{db}(k; \mathcal{X}, s) \right] , \end{aligned} \quad (5.61)$$

where  $\mathcal{X} = \ln(D(a)/D(a_{in}))$ . Notice our different notation, since in the papers by Anselmi and Pietroni, 2012a and (cite cite Peloso; Pietroni; 1609.06624),  $\eta$  is the time variable connected to the growth factor. The first line of this equation corresponds to the linear evolution equation of the power spectrum already discussed before. The second and third lines contain the 1PI (one-particle-irreducible) functions: the so-called self-energy  $\Sigma_{ab}$  and the mode-coupling term  $\tilde{\Phi} G_{ab}^{AB}$  accounting for the contributions at the large- and small- $k$  limits of non-linear structure formation.

If we transform this equation to  $\eta = \ln \frac{a}{a_{in}}$ , using the variable transformation  $\partial \mathcal{X} / \partial \eta = \frac{d \ln D(a)}{d \ln a} = f(\eta)$ , where  $f(\eta) \equiv f(N(\eta))$  and the relation between  $N$  and  $\eta$  is given by  $N = \eta + \ln(a_{in})$ , we have to transform also the power spectrum since the field has been redefined (see eq. (5.53)):

$$\tilde{P}_{ab} = e^{-2\mathcal{X}(\eta)} e^{2\eta} (\delta_{a1} + \frac{1}{f(\eta)} \delta_{a2})(\delta_{b1} + \frac{1}{f(\eta)} \delta_{b2}) P_{ab}(\eta) \quad (5.62)$$

where we can call this transformation  $\Xi_{ab}$ :

$$\tilde{P}_{ab} = \Xi_{ab} P_{ab}(\eta) , \quad (5.63)$$

and its inverse would be:

$$\Xi_{ab}^{-1} = e^{2\mathcal{X}(\eta)} e^{-2\eta} (\delta_{a1} + f(\eta) \delta_{a2})(\delta_{b1} + f(\eta) \delta_{b2}) . \quad (5.64)$$

However, eq. (5.61) is only invariant under the transformation:

$$\Upsilon_{ab}(\eta) = f(\eta) \Xi_{ab}^{-1} = f(\eta) e^{2\mathcal{X}(\eta)} e^{-2\eta} (\delta_{a1} + f(\eta) \delta_{a2})(\delta_{b1} + f(\eta) \delta_{b2}) \quad (5.65)$$

since we also have to transform the derivatives and the  $\Omega_{ab}$  matrix.

Inserting these transformations into eq. (5.61), and generalizing to the case where the growth rate is  $k$ -dependent,  $f(\eta, k)$ , we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_\eta P_{ab}(k; \eta) = & -\Omega_{ac}(\mathbf{k}; \eta)P_{cb}(\mathbf{k}; \eta) - \Omega_{bc}(\mathbf{k}; \eta)P_{ac}(\mathbf{k}; \eta) \\ & + [H_{\mathbf{a}}(k; \mathcal{X}(\eta, k), \mathcal{X}(\eta_{in}, k))f(\eta, k)P_{ab}(k; \eta) \\ & + H_{\mathbf{b}}(k; \mathcal{X}(\eta, k), \mathcal{X}(\eta_{in}, k))f(\eta, k)P_{ab}(k; \eta)] \\ & + \Upsilon_{ab}(\eta, k) \times \int ds \left[ \tilde{\Phi}_{ad}(k; \mathcal{X}(\eta, k), s)G_{bd}^{eik}(k; \mathcal{X}(\eta, k), s) \right. \\ & \left. + G_{ad}^{eik}(k; \mathcal{X}(\eta, k), s)\tilde{\Phi}_{db}(k; \mathcal{X}(\eta, k), s) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (5.66)$$

The evolution equation as it is written in eqn. 5.61 relies on three different assumptions: the power spectrum is well behaved for  $k \rightarrow 0$ , which is in our cosmology a good assumption, since it behaves just as a power law  $k^n$  at very large and very small scales; there is a clear separation of scales between “hard” and “soft” modes, or in other words, the *eikonal* limit is fulfilled. This means that the modes  $k$  we are interesting in are much bigger than the internal coupling modes  $p, q$ . The third assumption is of course the single-stream approximation, which is used in all forms of resummed and renormalized perturbation theories in cosmology as was explained already in section 5.2.

The purpose of this work is to solve eq. (5.66) for the Horndeski models stated above in section 5.2. We will proceed in two different steps, where we will start with rough approximations and we will gradually improve our method.

- First approximation: include inside the  $\Omega_{ac}(\mathbf{k}; \eta)$  functions, the full scale dependence of the parametrized Horndeski models. These terms will have a dominant effect on the evolution of  $P(\mathbf{k})$ . We will use the linear propagator for a constant  $\mu$  case and the 1-loop integrals will be calculated within the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM model.
- Second approximation: Here, we will use the  $\Omega_{ac}(\mathbf{k}; \eta)$  functions in the Horndeski case, compute a linear propagator for a varying  $\mu$ , but we will still keep the 1-loop integrals within the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM model.
- Third approximation: In this case we will also include the modification given by  $\mu$  into the calculation of the 1-loop integrals, by taking into account a constant  $\mu \neq 1$ .

## 5.6 The 1-loop integrals in the Horndeski $\mu \neq 1$ case

Now we give the general expression for the 1PI functions  $\Sigma_{ab}^{(1)}(k; \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}')$ ,  $H_a(k; \mathcal{X}, -\infty)$  and  $\Phi_{ab}^{(1)}(k; \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}')$ , appearing in the evolution equation (5.66) and computed at 1-loop in eRPT for the Horndeski case. In this section we define the constant:  $Y \equiv \mu_{\text{const}} \neq 1$ , to specify that we are just looking at constant values of  $\mu$ , different from unity.

The general expression for  $\Sigma_{ab}^{(1)}(k; \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}')$  is given by (see Anselmi and Pietroni, 2012a):

$$\begin{aligned}\Sigma_{ab}^{(1)}(k; \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}') = & \\ & 4e^{\mathcal{X}+\mathcal{X}'} \left[ \int d^3q \gamma_{acd}(\mathbf{k}, -\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{k}) u_c \right. \\ & \left. P^0(q) u_e \gamma_{feb}(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{q}, -\mathbf{k}) g_{df}(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}') \right] \end{aligned}\quad (5.67)$$

Inserting for  $g_{ab}$  the linear propagator from 5.59 and the coupling vertices  $\gamma_{abc}$  from 5.36 we have to perform an the angular integration of  $d^3q$ , in order to get the  $H_1(k; \mathcal{X}, -\infty)$ ,  $H_2(k; \mathcal{X}, -\infty)$  functions. These are the time integration of the  $\Sigma_{ab}^{(1)}(k; \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}')$  quantities in the internal time  $s$  from minus infinity to the external time  $\eta$ :

$$H_1(k; \mathcal{X}, -\infty) = \int_{-\infty}^{\eta} ds \Sigma_{1b}^{(1)}(k; \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}') u_b \quad (5.68)$$

$$H_2(k; \mathcal{X}, -\infty) = \int_{-\infty}^{\eta} ds \Sigma_{2b}^{(1)}(k; \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}') u_b \quad (5.69)$$

We will name them with a subscript  $Y$ , denoting that these are the quantities computed for Horndeski  $Y \equiv \mu_{\text{const}} \neq 1$ . They have the following form after performing the time integrations:

$$\begin{aligned}H_{1Y}(k; \mathcal{X}, -\infty) = & -\frac{\pi k^3 e^{2\mathcal{X}}}{3(3Y+4)} \int dr \left[ 16 + 3Y(3r^4 - 8r^2 + 1) \right. \\ & \left. - \frac{9Y}{2r} (r^2 - 1)^3 \log \left| \frac{1+r}{1-r} \right| \right] P^0(kr) \end{aligned}\quad (5.70)$$

$$\begin{aligned}H_{2Y}(k; \mathcal{X}, -\infty) = & -\frac{\pi k^3 e^{2\mathcal{X}}}{3(3Y+4)} \int dr \left[ -\frac{9Y}{r^2} + 9r^2 \mu + 4(9Y+4) \right. \\ & \left. - \frac{9Y}{2r^3} (r^2 - 1)^3 \log \left| \frac{1+r}{1-r} \right| \right] P^0(kr) \end{aligned}\quad (5.71)$$

The third line of the evolution equation eq. (5.66) contains the mode-coupling function, which is obtained by integrating the counter-term 1-loop quantity (see Anselmi and Pietroni, 2012a):

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{\Phi}_{ad}^{(1)}(k; \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{X}') = & 2e^{\mathcal{X}+\mathcal{X}'} \int d^3q \gamma_{acd}(\mathbf{k}, -\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}) u_c P^0(q) u_d \\ & \times u_e P^0(p) u_f \gamma_{bef}(\mathbf{k}, -\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}) \quad ,\end{aligned}\quad (5.72)$$

together with the renormalized propagator from Crocce-Scoccimarro (see Crocce and Scoccimarro, 2006b), namely  $\bar{G}_{bd}^L(k; \eta, s)$ . This integral can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned}\int ds \left[ \tilde{\Phi}_{ad}(k; \mathcal{X}, s) \bar{G}_{bd}^L(k; \mathcal{X}, s) + \bar{G}_{ad}^L(k; \mathcal{X}, s) \tilde{\Phi}_{db}(k; \mathcal{X}, s) \right] \\ = \tilde{\Phi} G_{ab}^A(k; \mathcal{X}) + \tilde{\Phi} G_{ab}^B(k; \mathcal{X}) \quad ,\end{aligned}\quad (5.73)$$

where the  $B$  terms are (for any indices  $a$  and  $b$ ):

$$\tilde{\Phi}G_{ab}^B(k; \chi) = u_a u_b y^2 \left( \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} (2y^2 + 1) \operatorname{Erf}(y) + (e^{-y^2} - 2) y \right) P^0(k) \quad (5.74)$$

This expression,  $\tilde{\Phi}G_{ab}^B(k; \eta)$ , has to be switched off in the small  $k$ -limit since it contains 2-loop expressions valid only at large  $k$ , therefore it has to be “filtered” by a momentum-cutoff function:

$$\tilde{\Phi}G_{ab}^A(k; \eta) + \frac{(k/\bar{k})^4}{1 + (k/\bar{k})^4} \tilde{\Phi}G_{ab}^B(k; \eta) \quad (5.75)$$

The  $\bar{k}$  quantity can be set to a reasonable scale at which the large scale expression starts to be applicable, usually we can set here  $\bar{k} = 0.2h/\text{Mpc}$ . The  $A$  terms are not the same for each component  $a, b$ , they read:

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\Phi}G_{11}^A &= y(\Phi_{11}^{(1)} - \Phi_{11}^{(1)})\mathcal{B}(y^2; W) \\ &+ \frac{\sqrt{\pi}\operatorname{Erf}(y)}{W+1}(\Phi_{11}^{(1)}W + \Phi_{12}^{(1)}) \quad , \end{aligned} \quad (5.76)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\Phi}G_{12}^A &= \frac{y\mathcal{B}_{12}(y^2; W)}{(1+W)^2(2+W)}(\Phi_{12}^{(1)} - \Phi_{22}^{(1)} - W(\Phi_{11}^{(1)} - \Phi_{12}^{(1)})) \\ &+ \frac{\sqrt{\pi}\operatorname{Erf}(y)}{2(W+1)}(W(\Phi_{11}^{(1)} + \Phi_{12}^{(1)}) + \Phi_{12}^{(1)} + \Phi_{22}^{(1)}) \quad , \end{aligned} \quad (5.77)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\Phi}G_{22}^A &= \frac{yW}{(W+1)^2}(\Phi_{22}^{(1)} - \Phi_{12}^{(1)})\mathcal{B}(y^2; W) \\ &+ \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{(W+1)}\operatorname{Erf}(y)(\Phi_{12}^{(1)}W + \Phi_{22}^{(1)}) \quad . \end{aligned} \quad (5.78)$$

Here we have introduced for simplicity a new variable  $W = \frac{3}{2}Y$  and we have used the combination of generalized Hypergeometric functions:

$$\mathcal{B}(y^2; W) = {}_2F_2\left(\frac{1}{2}, 1; \frac{W}{2} + 1, \frac{W}{2} + \frac{3}{2}; -y^2\right) \quad (5.79)$$

$$+ \frac{W+1}{W+2} {}_2F_2\left(\frac{1}{2}, 1; \frac{W}{2} + \frac{3}{2}, \frac{W}{2} + 2; -y^2\right) \quad (5.80)$$

$$- \frac{1}{W+2} {}_2F_2\left(1, \frac{3}{2}; \frac{W}{2} + \frac{3}{2}, \frac{W}{2} + 2; -y^2\right) \quad (5.81)$$

$$\mathcal{B}_{12}(y^2; W) = (2+W) {}_2F_2\left(\frac{1}{2}, 1; \frac{W}{2} + 1, \frac{W}{2} + \frac{3}{2}; -y^2\right) \quad (5.82)$$

$$- {}_2F_2\left(1, \frac{3}{2}; \frac{W}{2} + \frac{3}{2}, \frac{W}{2} + 2; -y^2\right) \quad (5.83)$$

Assuming a general scale-dependent function  $\mu(k)$  would turn out impossible to find an analytic expression for the 1-loop quantities A numerical implementation of this method would be too computationally expensive for the possible insight gained. Therefore, using the fact that the  $\mu$  function behaves as a step function

in  $\ln k$ , having a well defined minimum and maximum value, we can use simply a constant at both extreme scales and check its effect on the 1-loop corrections. Besides, we will focus on viable alternatives to  $\Lambda$ CDM, in which  $\mu$  can differ from unity by about 15-20%.

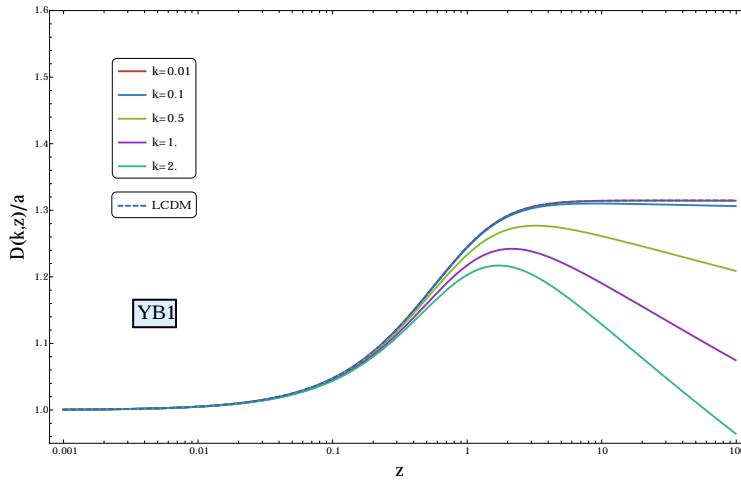
## 5.7 Preliminary Results

Equation eq. (5.66) is the main equation we want to solve and it represents a coupled differential equation in time of three independent components, for each external momentum  $k$  that we want to compute. Therefore, if we want to calculate the power spectrum on a grid with 100 points in  $k$ -space, we need to solve 100 times a differential equation. For this reason, parallelizing the numerical implementation plays an important role.

In our numerical implementation, we first compute the linear growth function for a specific Horndeski model, using eq. (5.56) and the corresponding linear propagator. With it we obtain the growth rate and the growth factor, which are then used to calculate terms in the 1-loop integrals. The initial power spectrum at a high redshift ( $z \approx 100$ ) is obtained from CAMB (see Lewis, Challinor, and Lasenby, 2000) and it is evaluated at 100 points in  $k$ -space. Finally, we compute the 5.61 for each  $k$  mode in a parallel evaluation in Wolfram Mathematica. The computing time to evaluate the power spectrum up to  $z = 0$ , using 4 cores on a personal computer, is of about 30 seconds.

Now we will show preliminary results for a Horndeski model which we will label as YB1, and has  $h_1 = 1.0$ ,  $h_5 = 1.15$  with a pivot scale  $k_* = 0.9h/\text{Mpc}$ . See eq. (5.26) for the definition of the coefficients entering  $\mu$ .

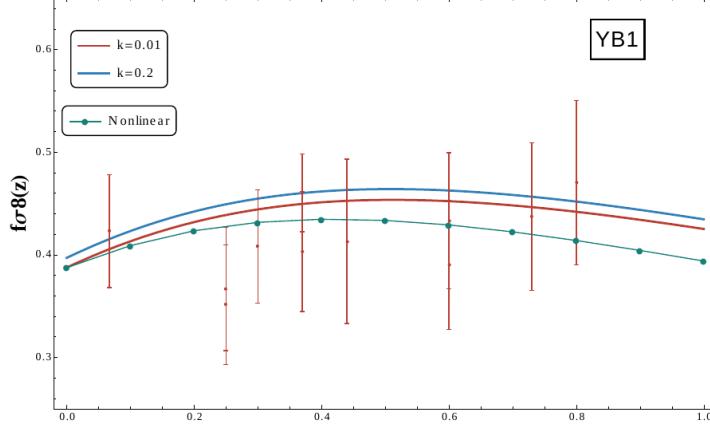
In figure fig. 5.3 we show how the growth factor changes as a function of scale  $k$ . In the Horndeski model chosen here, we see that for non-linear scales,  $k \gtrsim 0.1$ , the growth is suppressed at high redshifts  $z \gtrsim 1$ . For the same model, we



**FIGURE 5.3:** Comparison between the growth factor  $D_+(z, k)$  in a Horndeski model at different scales  $k$  to the one in the  $\Lambda$ CDM case, with equal cosmological parameters. In this model, for non-linear scales  $k \gtrsim 0.1$ , the growth is suppressed at high redshifts  $z \gtrsim 1$ .

can compare how the  $f\sigma_8$  curve would behave if we include linear or non-linear calculations. This is shown in fig. 5.4, where we are using the data points from (cite Macaulay et al. (2013)). The solid red and blue lines, stand for a linear

calculation of  $f\sigma_8$  at  $k = 0.01\text{h/Mpc}$  and  $k = 0.2\text{h/Mpc}$ , respectively. The green line with dots, is a non-linear calculation at  $k = 0.01\text{h/Mpc}$ . We see that the inclusion of non-linearities can play an important role. This simplified Horndeski model, would be still compatible with the data points shown in red. Finally, we show in



**FIGURE 5.4:** For a simple Horndeski model  $YB1$ , we show the  $f\sigma_8$  in three different cases. The solid red and blue lines, stand for a linear calculation of  $f\sigma_8$  at  $k = 0.01\text{h/Mpc}$  and  $k = 0.2\text{h/Mpc}$ , respectively. The green line with dots, is a non-linear calculation at  $k = 0.01\text{h/Mpc}$ . The red data points, are taken from ([cite Macaulay et al. \(2013\)](#)).

fig. 5.5, for the same Horndeski model  $YB1$ , its non-linear power spectrum vs. the one in  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$ , with the same cosmological parameters. As a reference, we also show the input linear power spectrum, extrapolated to  $z = 0$ , using linear theory. We can see that the model  $YB1$  (blue line), has a 1% higher power spectrum at scales  $k \approx 0.1$ , compared to  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$ , increasing up to 5% at  $k \gtrsim 0.5$ . As we have seen in previous discussions in this dissertation (see chapter 3 and chapter 4), this is an effect that can be measured by future galaxy redshift surveys.

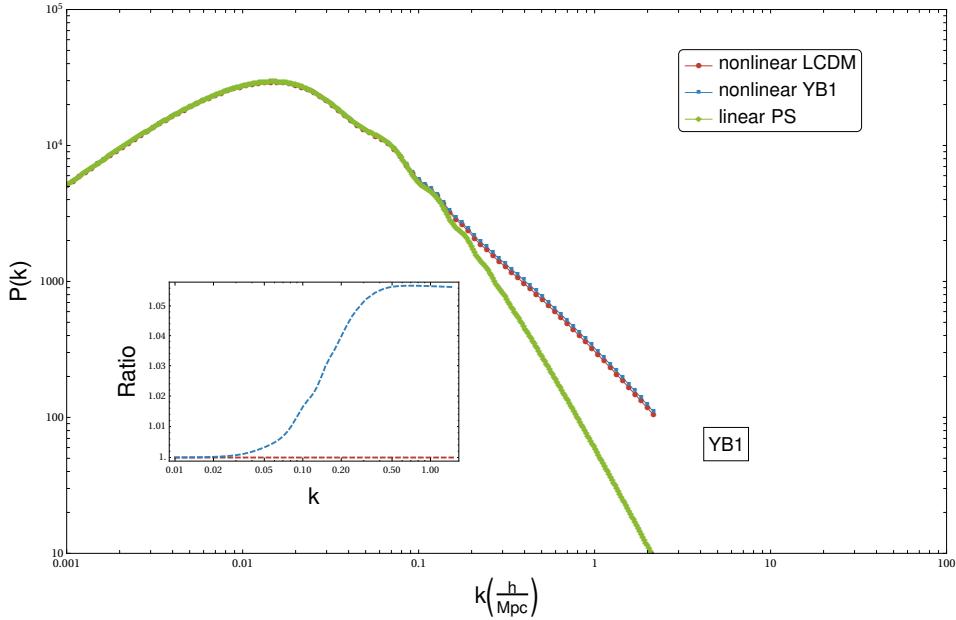
## 5.8 Summary

In this chapter we have shown first of all how to obtain the linear and non-linear equations governing the density perturbations of a Cold Dark Matter (and therefore, non-relativistic) component, under the influence of gravity.

For the linear theory, we have shown in section 5.1 that there are several ways to tackle the problem and that the growth of perturbations can be even solved analytically, see eq. (5.18).

For the non-linear theory, we have shown that the full set of fluid equations complicates considerably. As we have seen, there has been a tremendous progress in the treatment of these equations in the last 10 years and many different and complimentary techniques have been developed.

Here we chose a specific resummation technique called eikonal Renormalized Perturbation Theory (eRPT, see Anselmi and Pietroni, [2012a](#) and ([cite Peloso; Pietroni; 2016](#))) and we applied it for the first time to Horndeski models of modified gravity within the quasistatic approximation. We have been able to compute the linear propagator and the 1-loop integrals in a specific case and we have produced the first numerical results. As already stated in the introduction, this is work in progress and the results still have to be confirmed and checked against N-body



**FIGURE 5.5:** For the simple model Horndeski model, YB1, we show its non-linear power spectrum (blue lines)  $P(k)$ , compared to the  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  case (red lines), with the same parameters. The green thick line is the linear input power spectrum. The ratio to  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  is shown in the inside box, where the red line is  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  and therefore equal to 1, while the blue line is the model YB1. The maximum difference to  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  is of the order of 5% at scales  $k \gtrsim 0.5$ .

simulations and other semi-analytic methods. In recent years there has been substantial progress in this direction, with more N-body simulations and semi-analytic methods, capable of calculating structure formation in modified gravity theories (see, (cite Winther; Baldi; COLA 2016; Li)). Moreover, we will also profit from recent Boltzmann codes like EFTCAMB by Hu et al., 2014 and HI-CLASS by zumalacarregui that can provide a more exact initial power spectrum in the models we are studying here.<sup>1</sup>

## 5.9 Excursion into other computational techniques: N-body simulations

As we have seen repeatedly in the previous chapters, non-linear structure formation is of extreme importance for the era of precision cosmology. In order to connect our analytic and semi-analytic methods presented in chapter 3 and chapter 5 with a fully non-linear N-body treatment discussed in chapter 6 below, we will review in this section some of the fundamental properties of N-body simulations.

The progress in this field has been impressive and nowadays N-body codes are capable of simulating trillions of particles (cite Illustris; Coyote; DEUS), including not only gravitational physics, but also star formation, galactic and supernova feedback, magnetic fields and many more complicated astrophysical phenomena (cite Illustris; Springel).

<sup>1</sup>The results of this chapter so far, will be published in a paper together with Dr. Massimo Pietroni and Dr. Valeria Pettorino.

<sup>2</sup> To perform an exact evolution of the density fluctuations, beyond linear perturbations, the density field has to be represented by a set of fictitious discrete particles with a certain mass. These particles do not represent real galaxies or clusters of galaxies, they just sample the underlying density field. For current cosmological simulations, depending on the desired resolutions, the particle masses are around  $m_p \approx 10^9 - 10^{12} M_\odot$  ( $M_\odot = 1$  solar mass =  $1.99 \times 10^{30}$  kg), see [kuhlen\\_numerical\\_2012](#).

The equations of motion for each particle depend on solving for the gravitational field due to all the other particles, finding the change in particle positions and velocities over some small time step. Then, particle positions and velocities have to be updated and the gravitational potentials have to be recalculated in order to start a new iteration. For cosmological simulations, where we suppose the Universe to be isotropic and homogeneous at large scales and described by a smooth FLRW metric, we use the fact that at smaller scales the Universe must tend to locally inertial frames where Newton's laws are valid. Therefore we can just use Newtonian dynamics and the expansion history of the Universe is taken into account by using comoving coordinates, where the expansion rate  $a(t)$  is factored out (see [peacock\\_cosmological\\_1999](#); [dehnen\\_n-body\\_2011](#)). As was mentioned in ([cite Coley; Wiltshire; 2017](#)), standard cosmological simulations can be expressed by: "*Friedmann tells space how to curve and Newton tells matter how to move*". However, in the past couple of years, there has been an increasing interest in fully general-relativistic codes, either imposing an FLRW metric and treating the equations perturbatively (([cite gevolution; Adamek; Durrer; Kunz; 2016](#))) or solving the full non-linear equations, without imposing any background in a numerical-relativity framework (([cite Giblin; Mertens; Starkman; 2015](#))).

Returning to our equations of motion, we obtain for the comoving velocity  $u$  the following relation:

$$\frac{d}{dt} \vec{u} = -2 \frac{\dot{a}}{a} u - \frac{1}{a^2} \nabla \Psi \quad (5.84)$$

where  $\Psi$  is the Newtonian gravitational potential due to density perturbations. If we change the time variable from  $t$  to  $a$  we obtain:

$$\frac{d}{d \ln a} (a^2 \vec{u}) = \frac{a}{H} \vec{g} = \frac{G}{a H} \sum_i m_i \frac{\vec{x}_i - \vec{x}}{|\vec{x}_i - \vec{x}|^3} \quad (5.85)$$

We see that in order to get the gravitational acceleration for one single particle, we have to sum the contributions from all other particles, which leads to the exact solution, but it is computationally prohibitive for a large number of particles, since the number of needed computations grows as  $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ .

Since we have only finite resources for computation, we need to calculate the particles in a finite box of size  $L$  and a finite number of particles  $N$ . In this case the walls of the box would break our desired homogeneity and isotropy, therefore we need to introduce periodic boundary conditions, such that the cubic box is actually a 3-torus, where the walls on opposite sides are identified. Then the gravitational potential can be described as ([dehnen\\_n-body\\_2011](#)):

$$\Phi(\mathbf{x}, t) = -G \sum_{\mathbf{n}} \int d\mathbf{x}' \frac{\rho(\mathbf{x}' + \mathbf{n}L, t)}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{n}L|} \quad (5.86)$$

---

<sup>2</sup>Parts of the following text have appeared as part of papers by the author (see attached list of papers) and as part of the author's Master thesis, submitted at the University of Heidelberg, 2013.

where the sum is performed over  $\mathbf{n} = (N_x, N_y, N_z)$  and accounts for all periodic replica. Usually all the  $N_i$  are the same in all directions. Because of the fact, that performing an infinite sum of replicas is in practice not possible, the sum is approximated using Ewald's method (see [ewald\\_berechnung\\_1921](#)), which was originally developed for periodic crystals in solid state physics and was first adapted to this field by [hernquist\\_application\\_1991](#).

The gravitational Newtonian force has a singularity when two particles approach too close to each other, that is why a so-called softening term has to be added to the force equation in order to avoid unphysical accelerations during close encounters. The force can be modified for small distances to something like (see [trenti\\_gravitational\\_2008](#)):

$$\vec{F}_i = - \sum_{j \neq i} G m_i m_j \frac{\vec{x}_i - \vec{x}_j}{\left( |\vec{x}_i - \vec{x}_j|^2 + \epsilon^2 \right)^{3/2}} \quad (5.87)$$

where  $\epsilon > 0$  is the softening or smoothing length, which is a typical size below which the gravitational interaction is suppressed. In current cosmological N-body simulations, the softening length is found to be:  $1.0 h^{-1} \text{kpc} \leq \epsilon \leq 150 h^{-1} \text{kpc}$ . The choice of gravitational softening length is a difficult one, since making it too small increases computational effort (due to smaller time steps), but allows for more realistic gravitational potentials and on the other hand it introduces spurious two-body relaxation effects that can cause artificial fragmentation of structure (see [kuhlen\\_numerical\\_2012](#) and references therein).

Many alternatives to direct summation of forces, have been developed in the last 20 years, also using hybrid approaches. The most relevant ones for our purposes are the following (see reviews by [trenti\\_gravitational\\_2008](#); [dehnen\\_n-body\\_2011](#); [kuhlen\\_numerical\\_2012](#)):

- **Particle Mesh PM:** Since the problem is to solve Poisson's equation, a faster approach is to use Fourier methods for discretized systems, such as the FFT (see ??) and solve directly for Poisson's equation in Fourier space:

$$(\nabla \Psi)_k = -i \Psi_k \mathbf{k} = \frac{-i 4 \pi G a^2 \bar{\rho}}{k^2} \delta_k \mathbf{k} \quad (5.88)$$

Then we can eliminate the matter density in terms of  $\Omega_m$  and for a given particle, the equation of motion would be:

$$\frac{d}{d \ln a} (a^2 \mathbf{u}) = \sum \mathbf{F}_k \exp(-i \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x}), \quad \mathbf{F}_k = -i \mathbf{k} \frac{\Omega_m H a^2}{2 k^2} \delta_k \quad (5.89)$$

By interpolating the density field  $\rho_k$  over a finite grid, one can solve Poisson's equation and then use the FFT again to calculate the forces and velocities on the particles. The complicated part of the algorithm is the assignment of the mass of the particles onto the grid cells and then interpolating back the evaluated force onto the particles, for consistency the same procedure has to be used for both these steps. Particles do not interact with each other but only through the mean field, which causes that the maximum force resolution to be limited to about the size of the mesh. The computational advantage of this method is that the number of computations is now of the order  $\mathcal{O}(N_g \log(N_g))$ , for  $N_g$  the number of grid cells. This is the scaling of the FFT method also (see ??).

- **Particle-particle-particle-mesh P<sup>3</sup>M** : Since PM codes are gravitationally softened below the mesh size and the resolution is therefore low, this hybrid method uses a coarse grid to calculate forces at larger scales between distant cells and for particles in the same or neighbouring cell, a direct summation between particles is performed, increasing the force resolution, but also in some way the computational time, if there is a strong clustering of particles.
- **Adaptive Mesh Refinement AMR:** The dynamic range of particle-mesh codes can be increased by using instead of a static grid, an adaptive one, which has more concentrated grid elements in the high density regions, where the forces are also more varying and stronger. This allows to truncate the error to the desired precision level by refining the mesh at specific points. The complicated part of this method is to match the solution at the grid interfaces, where they might change drastically. Since the force softening can change along a particle's orbit, this method can lead to an unphysical violation of energy conservation. To accelerate the calculation of an AMR code, one can evolve the particles asynchronously, leaving the particles in the coarse grid, while evolving with smaller time steps the ones in the finer grid and using the coarser grid potential as a boundary condition.
- **Tree Codes:** If close encounters are not important and the force contributions from distant particles do not have to be calculated at high accuracy, this method is well suited for cosmological simulations. The simulation box is split into eight cubic cells, containing a determined number of particles, each cubic cell containing fewer than  $n_{max}$  number of particles is split again into eight cubic child cells of half their parent's particle size. This results in a tree-like binary (oct) hierarchy of cubic nodes, containing the root box (that contains all  $N$  particles) at his bottom. For each cubic cell, the total mass and center of mass is calculated and stored as an information on the node. Then at the moment of calculating the force acting on a particle at position  $\vec{x}$ , one just adds the contributions from different cells with center of mass  $\vec{z}_a$ , depending on some opening angle:  $\sin(\theta) = |\vec{x} - \vec{z}_a| / w_a$ , where  $w_a$  is the linear size of the box (this is the easiest approximation, for a formal derivation of the tree code, using Taylor expansions and multipoles, see ([cite dehnen\\_n-body\\_2011; springel](#))). If the opening angle is bigger than wanted, one applies the algorithm to the daughter cells. In this way one gets the contributions from all possible groups of particles. This method offers a computational time that scales like the depth of the tree, therefore being of order  $\mathcal{O}(N \ln(N))$ , which is similar to the above mentioned methods. For nearby particles, a standard particle-particle interaction is calculated. The complicated aspect of the tree method is, among others, how to visit each cell only once, in a highly parallelizable way. Really efficient methods have been developed, using Peano-Hilbert curves, such as in the Gadget-2 code, which is a Tree-PM code (see Springel, [2005](#)). A drawback of this method is that each interaction is only one-sided, meaning that the force of a single particle on the group of particles of a distant cell is not calculated and therefore Newton's third law is violated. This can lead to fluctuations in the total energy of the N-body system, but it has been shown that these spurious effects can be kept quite small (see [dehnen\\_n-body\\_2011](#)).

maybe (28)



# Chapter 6

# Growing Neutrino Quintessence

## 6.1 Introduction

The observed accelerated expansion of the Universe is currently well described by the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM scenario, where a cosmological constant leads the background of the Universe to a final de Sitter state. Such a scenario, however, raises a “coincidence” (or “why-now”) problem, as it is not understood why dark energy becomes important just recently, marking the present cosmological epoch as a special one within cosmic history. Alternative models of dynamical dark energy or modified gravity should address the “why now problem” and the associated fine tuning of parameters. At the same time they need to explain why dark energy is almost static in the present epoch, such that the present dark energy equation of state  $w$  is close to the observed range near  $-1$ .

To do (29)

## 6.2 Numerical treatment of growing neutrino cosmologies

### 6.2.1 Modified Boltzmann code

For the early stages of the evolution of the growing neutrino quintessence model, neutrinos behave as standard relativistic particles and the coupling to the cosmon field is suppressed. Therefore the Klein-Gordon equation can be linearized and no important backreaction effects are present. The Einstein-Boltzmann system of equations for the relativistic neutrinos and all other species has been solved using a modified version of the code CAMB Lewis, Challinor, and Lasenby, 2000 (hereafter referred to as nuCAMB), used and developed already in previous papers on mass-varying and growing neutrino cosmologies. We refer the reader to previous publications Brookfield et al., 2007; Mota et al., 2008; Pettorino et al., 2010; Wintergerst et al., 2010 for details about its implementation. These equations are valid until neutrinos become non-relativistic and as long as perturbations are still linear. The neutrinos can be seen as a weakly-interacting gas of particles in thermal equilibrium with a phase space distribution  $f(p)$  with  $p$  denoting the momentum. The statistical description is in the case of neutrinos a Fermi-Dirac distribution, given by

$$f_{FD}(p) = \frac{1}{e^{(E(p)-\mu)/T} + 1} , \quad (6.1)$$

where  $\mu$  is the chemical potential and  $E(p) = \sqrt{m^2 + p^2}$  the particle energy. Then, the number density of neutrinos, the energy density and the pressure are given respectively by

$$n_\nu = \frac{2}{(2\pi)^3} \int d^3 p f_{FD}(p) , \quad (6.2)$$

$$\rho_\nu = \frac{2}{(2\pi)^3} \int d^3 p E(p) f_{FD}(p) , \quad (6.3)$$

$$P_\nu = \frac{2}{(2\pi)^3} \int d^3 p \frac{p^2}{E(p)} f_{FD}(p) . \quad (6.4)$$

The solution of the Boltzmann hierarchy of neutrinos coupled to the perturbed Einstein equations ?? and ??, together with the solution of the background Klein-Gordon equation 1.83, form the basis of the modification of nuCMB with respect to the standard code CAMB, which handles dark matter, photons and baryons altogether. We recall that for growing neutrino quintessence, the neutrino mass depends on the cosmon field  $\phi$  and therefore on the scale factor  $a$ .

The ratio of the initial mass of the neutrinos to their temperature (given in eV), is calculated in nuCMB as follows

$$\hat{r}_{\nu eV} \equiv \left(\frac{m}{T}\right)_{\nu, camb} = \frac{(7/8)(\pi^4/15)}{(3/2)\zeta(3)} \times \frac{\rho_{cr}\Omega_{\nu, input}}{\rho_\nu} . \quad (6.5)$$

The first fraction comes from the relation  $m_\nu \approx \rho_\nu/n_\nu = ((\frac{7}{8}\frac{\pi^4}{15})/\frac{3}{2}\zeta(3))T_\nu$ , which is valid in the non-relativistic limit of eqns.6.1-6.4; the critical density is defined as usual:  $\rho_{cr} = \frac{3H_{0, input}^2}{8\pi G}$ . The second fraction is a re-scaling that corrects the neutrino density in order to match the wanted  $\Omega_{\nu, input}$  given as input value. The code performs an iterative routine that varies initial conditions in such a way that the input parameters are obtained at present time. Since this is not exact, the final values of  $H_0$  and  $\Omega_\nu$  might vary slightly with respect to the given input values. The ratio  $\hat{r}_{\nu eV}$  depends on the input parameters  $H_{0, input}$  (via the critical density) and on  $\Omega_{\nu, input}$ <sup>1</sup>. Furthermore, the neutrino energy density  $\rho_\nu$  and the photon energy density  $\rho_\gamma$  at relativistic times are related as

$$\rho_\nu = N_\nu \times \frac{7}{8} \times \left(\frac{4}{11}\right)^{4/3} \rho_\gamma \quad (6.6)$$

where  $N_\nu = 3$  is the number of neutrino species. The use of these formulae is valid if initial conditions are set when neutrinos are non-relativistic, where the linear regime still applies. For initial conditions set at earlier time relativistic corrections have to be taken into account. After solving the Einstein-Boltzmann system, realizations of the fields  $\delta_\nu(\mathbf{k})$  and  $v_{pec,\nu}(\mathbf{k})$  at an early time are obtained from nuCMB and are then used as the initial conditions for the neutrino distribution in the growing neutrino quintessence N-body simulation. This will be explained more in detail at the end of the following section.

### 6.2.2 N-body simulation

For N-body simulations, we use here the code developed in Ayaita, Weber, and Wetterich, 2013, 2012; Ayaita et al., 2016 and then refined in Führer and Wetterich, 2015 and in the present work, which uses a particle-mesh approach for the neutrino

---

<sup>1</sup> $\hat{r}_{\nu eV}$  is also the conversion factor between the mass units in the N-Body code and units in eV.

and dark matter particle evolution and a multi-grid approach for solving the non-linear scalar field equations. In table 6.1 we describe the parameters of the models discussed in this paper. We consider 5 models with different neutrino masses.

Our N-body simulation differs from standard Newtonian N-body codes in many ways, the most important one being that we evolve the cosmon  $\phi$  and the gravitational potentials  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  separately. While neutrinos, dark matter and the cosmon are non-linear in the N-body simulations, we assume that the gravitational potentials  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  are small, which is valid in cosmological applications, even for large deviations of standard  $\Lambda$ CDM and at small scales. The perturbation in the dark energy scalar field  $\delta\rho_\phi$  can be calculated from the perturbation of the energy density of the cosmon field

$$\delta\rho_\phi = \frac{\bar{\phi}'\delta\phi}{a^2} + V(\bar{\phi})\delta\phi . \quad (6.7)$$

The evolution of the homogeneous potential of the cosmon field can be obtained through its energy density and pressure in the following way

$$V_\phi(a) = \frac{1}{2}(\rho_\phi(a) - p_\phi(a)) , \quad (6.8)$$

while the perturbations in the potential can be approximated by

$$\delta V_\phi(a) = -\frac{1}{2}(\delta\rho_\phi(a) + 3\delta p_\phi(a)) . \quad (6.9)$$

The cosmon field can cluster and therefore its spatial gradients are non-vanishing, so that after averaging over the volume of the box the energy density of the cosmon field is

$$\bar{\rho}_\phi = \frac{1}{2}\overline{\dot{\phi}^2} + \frac{1}{2a^2}\overline{(1+2\Phi)\partial_i\phi\partial_j\phi\delta^{ij}} + \overline{V(\phi)} , \quad (6.10)$$

while its pressure reads

$$\bar{P}_\phi = \frac{1}{2}\overline{\dot{\phi}^2} - \frac{1}{6a^2}\overline{(1+2\Phi)\partial_i\phi\partial_j\phi\delta^{ij}} + \overline{V(\phi)} . \quad (6.11)$$

We will use for the following a convention in which bars denote spatial averages, while angular brackets denote time averaged quantities. The evolution of the cosmon field is solved using a multigrid relaxation algorithm, known as the Newton-Gauß-Seidel solver, which was originally developed for  $f(R)$  modified gravity simulations Puchwein, Baldi, and Springel, 2013 and has also been implemented into the growing neutrino N-body simulations in Ayaita et al., 2016. The bottom part of table 6.1 lists the results of the six models computed using the N-body simulations.

In the case of neutrinos, the mass is a time-varying quantity following eq.1.86. Neutrinos obey a modified geodesic equation

$$\frac{du^\mu}{d\tau} + \Gamma_{\nu\lambda}^\mu u^\nu u^\lambda = \beta(\phi)\partial^\mu\phi + \beta(\phi)u^\nu u^\mu\partial_\nu\phi , \quad (6.12)$$

in which the right hand side gets a contribution from the coupling.

Simulations start at an initial value of  $a_{in} = 0.02$ . Until  $a \approx 0.30$  the dark matter particles, the cosmon field and the gravitational potentials are evolved on the grid. For dark matter particles we take standard initial conditions from nuCMB and start the particle-mesh algorithm that solves the Poisson equation ?? at an initial redshift of  $z = 49$ . This is not the most accurate way of setting initial conditions for cosmological dark matter simulations (see for example recent N-body comparisons

Cosmological parameters	Growing neutrino models					
Linear values	M1	M2	M3	M4	M5	M6
$\Omega_{\nu 0} + \Omega_{\phi 0}$	0.686	0.688	0.692	0.701	0.693	0.697
$\Omega_{\nu 0}$	$3.8 \times 10^{-3}$	$2.6 \times 10^{-2}$	$1.64 \times 10^{-2}$	$4.7 \times 10^{-2}$	$6.1 \times 10^{-2}$	$9.4 \times 10^{-2}$
$h$	0.671	0.673	0.6818	0.701	0.722	0.740
$m_{\nu 0}$ [eV]	0.060	0.407	0.239	0.730	1.000	1.712
$\langle m_{\nu} \rangle [0.4 : 0.6]$ [eV]	0.040	0.067	0.134	0.277	0.399	0.701
$\langle m_{\nu} \rangle [0.8 : 1.0]$ [eV]	0.099	0.152	0.318	0.661	0.907	1.51
$\langle w_{\nu\phi} \rangle [0.9 : 1.0]$	-0.97	-0.97	-0.95	-0.92	-0.90	-0.85
<b>N-body values</b>						
$\Omega_{\nu 0} + \Omega_{\phi 0}$	0.688	0.690	-	-	-	-
$\Omega_{\nu 0}$	$2.5 \times 10^{-2}$	$1.9 \times 10^{-2}$	-	-	-	-
$m_{\nu 0}$ [eV]	0.038	0.078	-	-	-	-
$\langle m_{\nu} \rangle [0.4 : 0.6]$ [eV]	0.048	0.069	0.1436	0.280	0.401	0.676
$\langle m_{\nu} \rangle [0.8 : 1.0]$ [eV]	0.120	0.164	-	-	-	-
$\langle w_{\nu\phi} \rangle [0.9 : 1.0]$	-0.95	-0.96	-	-	-	-
$a_{\text{final}}$	1.0	1.0	0.84	0.70	0.65	0.67

**TABLE 6.1:** Table of parameters for the six models considered in this work. The top part refers to the output values computed with the linear nuCMB code. The bottom part refers to values computed within the N-body simulation. Quantities denoted with a subscript 0 are values at present time,  $a = 1.0$ . The  $\langle m_{\nu} \rangle [a_1 : a_2]$  is the root mean squared (RMS) value of the neutrino mass in units of eV computed between  $a = a_1$  and  $a = a_2$ . The same notation is also valid for  $\langle w_{\nu\phi} \rangle [a_1 : a_2]$  corresponding to the equation of state of the combined cosmon and neutrino fluid which represents dynamical dark energy.  $a_{\text{final}}$  is the final time at which simulations were computed accurately. Therefore, for the models M3-M6 we cannot cite values of present time quantities or averages at times beyond  $a_{\text{final}}$ . The input values for nuCMB corresponding to all models can be found in table 6.2 of appendix 6.8.

by Schneider et al., 2016), but since in this work we are not interested in detailed substructures of dark matter halos or a percent-accurate power spectrum, we find that our approach gives a correct description at the scales of interest. Neutrinos are first treated differently from other particles, as a distribution of relativistic particles in thermal equilibrium and no backreaction effects from neutrino structures are taken into account. Starting from a scale factor of approximately  $a_{\text{ini}} \approx 0.30$  (depending on the exact parameters of each model), which is when neutrinos become non-relativistic, neutrinos are also projected on the grid: their phase-space distribution is sampled using effective particles. Since their equation of state is non-relativistic, we can approximate the phase-space distribution by

$$f_{\nu}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) = \bar{n}_{\nu} f_{FD}(|\mathbf{v}_{\nu} - \mathbf{v}_{\text{pec},\nu}(\mathbf{x})|)(1 + \delta_v(\mathbf{x})) , \quad (6.13)$$

where  $f_{FD}$  is the Fermi-Dirac distribution (6.1). The thermal velocities of the neutrinos are the difference between their total velocities and their peculiar velocities  $\mathbf{v}_{th,\nu} = \mathbf{v}_{\nu} - \mathbf{v}_{\text{pec},\nu}$ . We obtain  $\delta_v(\mathbf{x})$  and  $\mathbf{v}_{\text{pec},\nu}(\mathbf{x})$  by Fourier transforming the momentum-space realization of those fields obtained at the time  $a_{\text{ini}}$  from nuCMB. Equation 6.13 is solved for  $\mathbf{v}_{th,\nu}$  in order to obtain the correct thermal distribution of particles and we duplicate the number of neutrino particles in each grid, assigning to each of them a thermal velocity which is equal in magnitude but opposite in direction, to avoid a distortion of the distribution of peculiar velocities at larger scales than a single grid cell size. For a large enough number of effective neutrino particles (i.e. when there is much more than one particle per cell), the

distortion of the peculiar velocities by thermal velocities should be negligible. The correct neutrino density one would obtain from the Fermi-Dirac distribution for a non-relativistic particle reads

$$\langle \rho_\nu(\mathbf{x}) \rangle_{f_\nu} = \int d^3v m_\nu f_\nu(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) = m_\nu \bar{n}_\nu(1 + \delta_v(\mathbf{x})) . \quad (6.14)$$

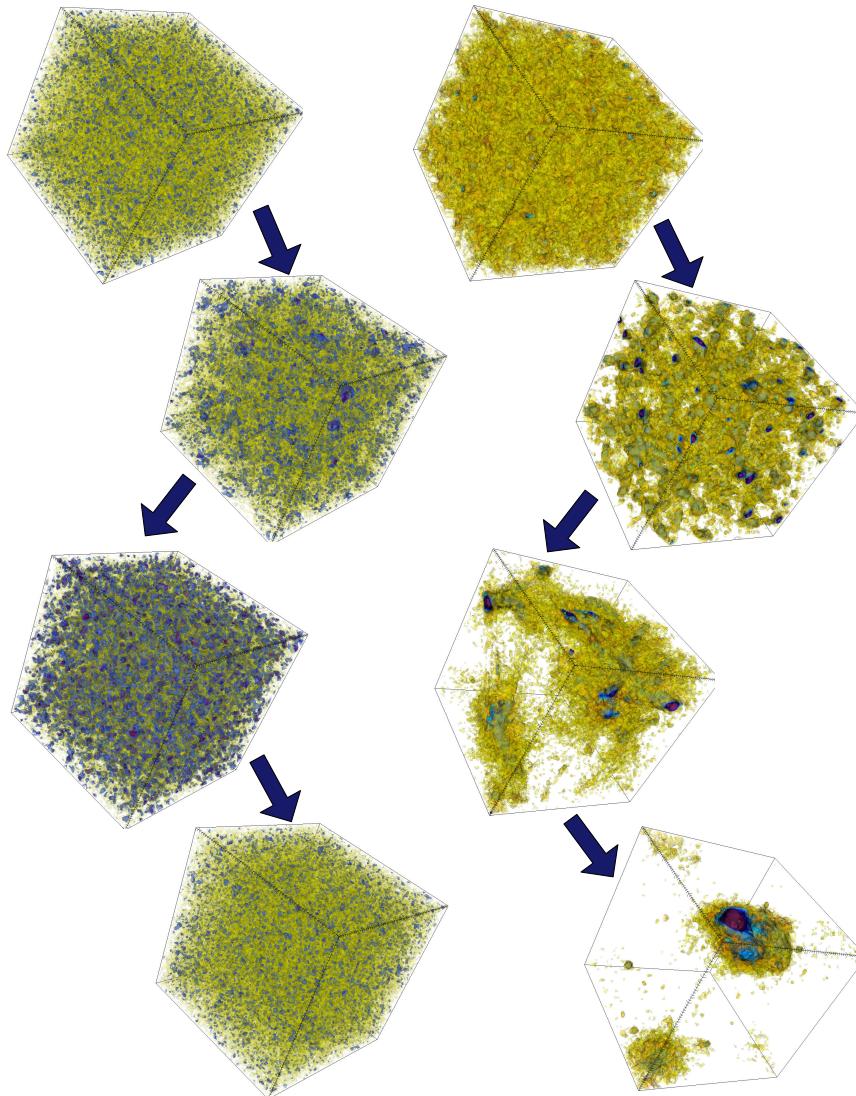
Since we need to enforce the right hand side of 6.14 at each grid cell of comoving volume  $a^3 \Delta V$ , where the mass of the neutrinos is given by the scalar field, we have a condition on the number of particles  $N_{part}$ , such that

$$\frac{M_\nu \langle N_{part} \rangle}{a^3 \Delta V} = m_\nu \bar{n}_\nu(1 + \delta_v(\mathbf{x})) , \quad (6.15)$$

is fulfilled (more details of these method can be found in Ayaita, Weber, and Wetterich, 2012). When neutrinos enter as particles into the N-body simulation and therefore backreaction effects from neutrino structures start becoming important, the calculation of the fields and the potentials becomes computationally demanding, due to the non-linearity of the terms sourcing the continuity 1.82 and Klein-Gordon equations 1.83. Since these equations cannot be linearized due to the large values of the coupling parameter  $\beta(\phi)$ , the multigrid Newton-Gauß-Seidel solver is of crucial importance. For the parallelization of the code, we use a simple *OpenMP* approach, which calculates in parallel, for the available processing cores, the equations of motion of the particles and the fast Fourier transforms. In Tab.6.3 we describe all parameters related to the N-body simulations, including box and grid size.

### 6.3 Lump dynamics and the low mass - high mass divide

We find two different regimes for the non-linear evolution of neutrino lumps, depending on the average value of the neutrino mass. For light neutrino masses, during the lump formation process, the neutrinos are accelerated to relativistic velocities. Subsequently, the lumps dissolve and form again periodically, as described in detail in ref. Ayaita et al., 2016; Baldi et al., 2011. We demonstrate this behavior in the left panel of fig. 6.1. The repeated acceleration epochs heat the neutrino fluid to a huge effective temperature, such that neutrinos have again an almost relativistic equation of state during alternating periods of time.



**FIGURE 6.1:** Snapshots of the number density contrast of neutrinos  $\delta n_\nu(\vec{x}) \equiv n_\nu(\vec{x})/\bar{n}_\nu - 1$  at different times. **Left:** Model M2, at scale factors  $a = 0.45, 0.7, 0.75$  and  $0.95$  from top to bottom. The overdensity oscillates between values close to 1 (represented as yellow tones) at early times, where there are no lumps, to values close to 10 (dark blue and purple tones), where several concentrated lumps form at intermediate times. At later times lumps dissolve and the overdensity decreases back to values close to unity. **Right:** Model M4, at scale factors:  $a = 0.35, 0.42, 0.53$  and  $0.64$  from top to bottom. The neutrino lumps start growing at early times and merge progressively into larger and more concentrated structures. At the end, almost all neutrinos are attracted to a single very massive lump.

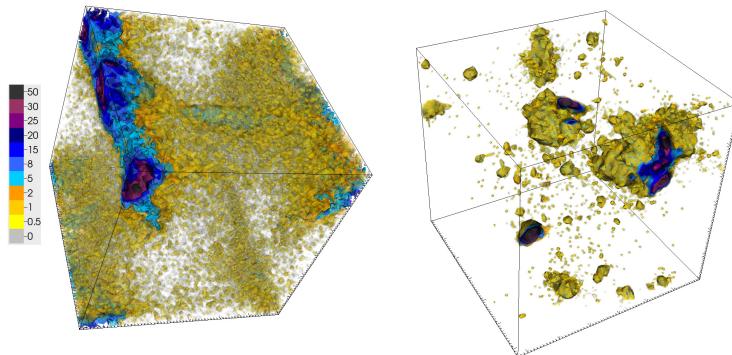
In contrast, the behavior for large neutrino masses is qualitatively different. The concentration of the lumps continues to grow after their first formation. Lumps merge, and typically do not dissolve. The neutrino number density contrast reaches high values at late times. This is demonstrated on the right panel in fig.6.1 for an average value of the neutrino mass  $m_{\nu,av} = 0.4\text{eV}$  in the range  $0.4 < a < 0.6$ . This behavior resembles the one found for a constant cosmon-neutrino coupling in Ayaita, Weber, and Wetterich, 2013, 2012; Baldi et al., 2011.

Due to the increasing value of the concentration and the increasing cosmon-neutrino coupling, the characteristic time scale becomes very short and gradients

very large. This exceeds the present numerical capability of our simulations, typically at a value of the scale factor somewhat larger than  $a = 0.6$ . In fig. 6.2 we show snapshots for two different values of neutrino masses shortly before the simulation breaks down.

The transition between the “heating regime” for small neutrino masses and the “concentration regime” for large neutrino masses occurs in the range  $\langle m_\nu \rangle [0.4 : 0.6] \approx 0.07\text{eV} - 0.14\text{eV}$ , where the time average is taken for  $0.4 < a < 0.6$ . The present value of the neutrino mass can be substantially larger due to oscillations and the continued increase of the mass and the temperature. For example, the phenomenologically viable model with  $\langle m_\nu \rangle [0.4 : 0.6] = 0.07\text{eV}$  corresponds to a present neutrino mass of around  $0.08\text{eV}$ , but the time oscillations grow the neutrino mass to values of up to  $0.5\text{eV}$  for very short intervals in the scale factor  $a$ . (compare with fig. 6.5 below).

In fig. 6.1 we show the distribution of the number (over)density contrast  $\delta n_\nu(\vec{x}) \equiv n_\nu(\vec{x})/\bar{n}_\nu - 1$  at four different times and for two different models considered here, namely M2 (left panels) and M5 (right panels). For M2 as well as for models with smaller masses (not shown here), the neutrino lumps form and dissolve very quickly. The lumps are never stable and neutrinos accelerate to relativistic velocities when they fall into the gravitational potentials. The small lumps are also distributed homogeneously across the simulation box (see the third panel from above on the right of fig. 6.1). The lumps reach maximal number density contrasts of about  $\delta n_\nu \approx 10$ . For M5 and for bigger masses, the neutrino lumps become stable, accreting more and more particles with the passing of time and increasing their concentrations. This leads to strong backreaction effects, changing the background cosmological evolution. After some time all neutrinos are concentrated in very big lumps, reaching very high values of  $\delta_\nu \approx 50 - 100$ , where  $\delta_\nu \equiv \rho_\nu(\vec{x})/\bar{\rho}_\nu - 1$ , see fig. 6.2. After this point, the numerical framework for the growing neutrino quintessence evolution breaks down and we can no longer solve reliably the coupled system of equations.



**FIGURE 6.2:** Snapshots of the neutrino overdensity field  $\delta_\nu(\vec{x})$  for models M4 (top left) and M6 (bottom left) at scale factors of  $a = 0.64$ , and  $0.62$ , respectively. In these models, neutrino lumps cluster into large stable structures with a high concentration, starting from a bottom-up approach, as was shown for model M4 in fig. 6.1. Neutrino structures occupy large parts of the simulation box, corresponding to scales of  $\sim 50$  Mpc. At these scale factors, the forces introduced by the cosmon coupling are too strong to be resolved by our numerical approach and our simulation breaks down.

## 6.4 Cosmological evolution in the light neutrino regime

As we have seen in the previous section, there is a qualitative difference between the cosmological evolution of a model with a light or a heavy neutrino mass, the boundary being a present neutrino mass value of roughly  $\approx 0.5\text{eV}$  (calculated in linear theory). In this section we explore more in detail the evolution of background quantities in the light mass model M2 whose parameters are shown in detail in table 6.1 for the linear calculation in nuCMB (top panel) and for the N-body computation (bottom panel). We study in detail the differences appearing in the evolution of background quantities, when non-linear physics and backreaction are taken into account.

The standard definition for the homogeneous energy density fraction of the cosmon field  $\phi$  is

$$\Omega_\phi = \frac{8\pi G}{3H^2} \bar{\rho}_\phi , \quad (6.16)$$

where  $\bar{\rho}_\phi$  is the background energy density of a homogeneous scalar field  $\bar{\rho}_\phi = K(\phi) + V(\phi)$  and  $K(\phi)$  its kinetic energy. In linear theory, the homogeneous term would be the only term entering into  $\Omega_\phi$ ; on the contrary, within the N-body simulation, the field is non-homogeneous and the combined energy density of the coupled neutrino-cosmon fluid receives also a contribution from the perturbations  $\delta\rho_\phi$  of the non-homogeneous cosmon field, given by eq.6.7. The important quantity determining the evolution of a dynamical dark energy is not the energy density of the cosmon alone, but the energy density of the combined cosmon-neutrino fluid, given by

$$\Omega_{\phi+\nu} = \frac{8\pi G}{3H^2} (\bar{\rho}_\phi + \bar{\rho}_\nu) . \quad (6.17)$$

The average energy density of the neutrinos is not individually conserved and its evolution is given by the continuity equation with a coupling term on the r.h.s. Ayaita, Weber, and Wetterich, 2012; Baldi et al., 2010

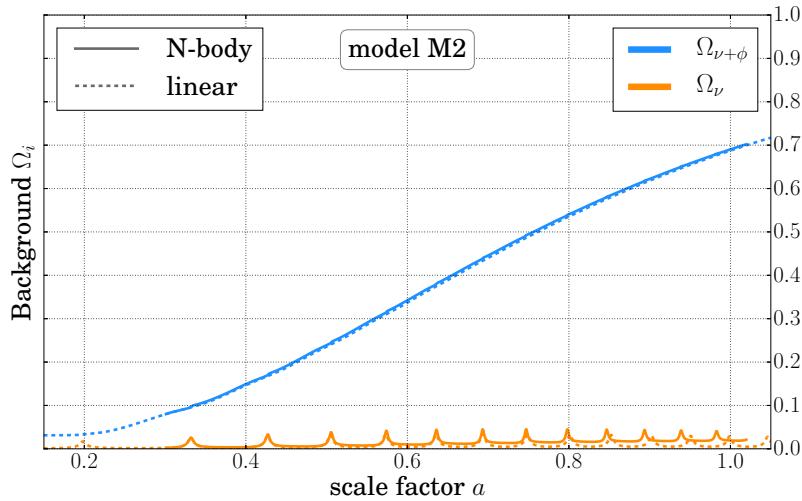
$$\rho_\nu + 2\mathcal{H}\rho_\nu = -\beta(\phi)\phi'\rho_\nu , \quad (6.18)$$

where  $\phi'$  is the time derivative of the field with respect to conformal time  $\tau$ . The corresponding equation of state of the coupled fluid can then be defined as the sum of the pressure components divided by the sum of the density components

$$w_{\nu+\phi} = \frac{\bar{p}_\phi + \bar{p}_\nu}{\bar{\rho}_\phi + \bar{\rho}_\nu} . \quad (6.19)$$

In the literature Brookfield et al., 2007; Das, Corasaniti, and Khouri, 2006; Perrotta and Baccigalupi, 2002; Perrotta, Baccigalupi, and Matarrese, 1999, there are several definitions of the effective equation of state or the observed equation of state in the case in which the scalar field is coupled to other particles. We argue that 6.19 is actually the equation of state one would observe from the evolution of the Hubble function (i.e. with Supernovae and standard candle methods of redshift distance measurements). In appendix 6.9 we comment further on this and show a comparison between the “observed” and theoretical equation of state of dark energy in fig.6.10.

In fig.6.3 we plot for model M2 the background evolution of the neutrino energy density  $\Omega_\nu$  (orange lines) and the combined cosmon+neutrino fluid energy density  $\Omega_{\nu+\phi}$  (blue lines) as defined in eq.6.17. The dashed lines correspond to the linear

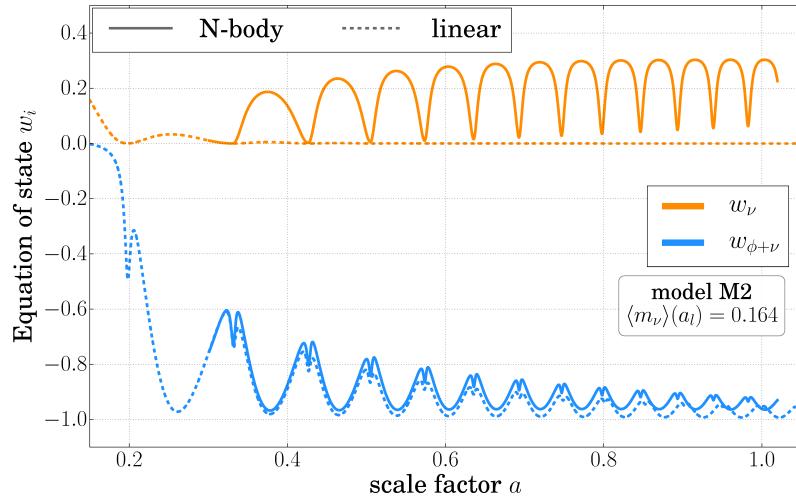


**FIGURE 6.3:** Evolution of  $\Omega_{\phi+\nu}$  (blue lines) and  $\Omega_\nu$  (orange lines) for Model M2, compared between the linear output from nuCMB (dashed lines) and the non-linear calculation of the N-body simulation (solid lines). The total cosmon-neutrino fluid has the same background evolution in the simulation as in the linear calculation. The neutrino energy density is somewhat larger in the simulation and shows a phase-shift in its oscillations, as discussed in the text.

computation in nuCMB, while the solid lines correspond to the results of the N-body simulation. One can see that the effect of non-linearities and backreaction is quite small and it is mostly just visible as a phase shift in the oscillations of  $\Omega_\nu$ , which is due to the dynamics of the oscillating lumps, that alter the field-dependent mass of the neutrinos as a function of time and space. The same trend is observed in model M1 (not shown here). This behavior tells us that for small neutrino masses, the effects of backreaction on the background evolution are practically negligible and a linear computation is enough to analyze those models further, with a considerable simplification with respect to a joint linear and non-linear analysis done in Pettorino et al., 2010.

We show in fig.6.4 the neutrino equation of state  $w_\nu$  (orange lines) as well as the combined cosmon-neutrino fluid equation of state  $w_{\nu+\phi}$  as defined in equation 6.19 (blue lines), both for the case of the linear computation with nuCMB (dashed lines) and the non-linear computation (solid lines). In the linear analysis, the neutrinos are treated initially as relativistic particles: as the mass increases, they become more and more non-relativistic, reaching a  $w_\nu$  of exactly zero at late times. On the contrary, the N-body simulation is able to follow the oscillations in the equation of state of neutrinos, which are caused by the fact that neutrinos get accelerated to relativistic velocities when they fall into deep gravitational and cosmon potentials. Once they are in these lumps, and they have acquired high speeds, their pressure increases and they tend to escape again from these lumps, causing the oscillating neutrino structures. When they are far away from the cosmon potentials, their velocities decrease and they become non-relativistic again. The fifth force acting among neutrinos attracts them again to the cosmon potential wells and the whole cycle repeats itself.

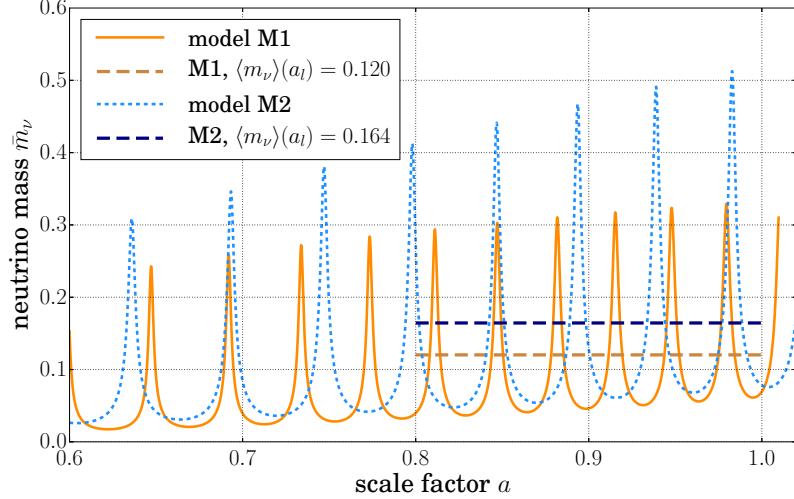
For the combined equation of state  $w_{\nu+\phi}$ , we find that the simulation predicts a slightly higher value than the linear one; this can be explained by studying how the neutrino fluid is heated due to the strong oscillations of the lumps. By falling



**FIGURE 6.4:** Equation of state of the combined neutrino-cosmon fluid  $w_{\phi+\nu}$  (blue) and equation of state of neutrinos  $w_\nu$  (orange). We compare the linear output (dashed lines) to the non-linear one obtained from the N-body simulation (solid lines) for model M2. This model has a time averaged RMS mass  $\langle m_\nu \rangle(a_l) = 0.164$ , where  $a_l = 0.9$  in the label denotes the center of the time interval  $a = [0.8 - 1.0]$  used to take the average. For  $w_\nu$ , the linear output does not capture the oscillating equation of state of neutrinos due to the formation of structures, while for  $w_{\phi+\nu}$ , both codes agree relatively well. At late times the equation of state predicted by the simulation has a somewhat higher value and is phase-shifted due to the heating of the neutrino fluid.

repeatedly in the cosmon potential wells and increasing their kinetic energy, the neutrinos temperature increases and therefore neutrinos do not manage to become again completely non-relativistic. This can be seen in the dashed orange lines of plot 6.4, where the curve of  $w_\nu$  does not touch the zero axis after  $a \approx 0.5$ . We will see in section 6.5 that neutrinos depart from their initial Fermi-Dirac distributions and reach temperatures which are high compared to the photon background.

In fig.6.5, we show the evolution of the spatial average of the neutrino mass in the N-body simulation as a function of the scale factor  $a$ . One can see that the value of  $\bar{m}_\nu$  varies along an order of magnitude, from approx. $10^{-2}$  to  $10^{-1}$ , throughout a cosmological time interval. Due to a phase shift in the oscillation pattern, which sets in at around  $a \approx 0.8$ , the present day value of the average neutrino mass can be quite different to the one estimated with the linear analysis (and this change depends on the precise parameters of the model), so that the best estimate for the average cosmological neutrino mass today, is a time average of  $\bar{m}_\nu(\phi)$  at late times, between  $a = 0.8 - 1.0$ . We can see that the big discrepancies between the masses of model M1 and M2 calculated in linear theory (e.g. 6.1) are washed away when non-linearities and backreaction effects are taken into account i.e. for small neutrino masses. Even if the present neutrino masses for model M1 and M2 differ by an order of magnitude in linear theory, we find a very similar time averaged value between the two models in the N-body simulation: respectively  $\langle m_\nu \rangle[0.8 : 1.0] = 0.120$  and  $\langle m_\nu \rangle[0.8 : 1.0] = 0.164$ . The oscillation pattern of the neutrino mass for the more massive model (M2) contains higher peaks and has a smaller frequency than compared to the oscillations in the less massive model M1. For other models, this comparison can be seen in table 6.1.



**FIGURE 6.5:** Neutrino mass  $\bar{m}_\nu$  (average over simulation volume) in model M2 (firebrick red line) and model M1 (dodger blue line), as a function of the scale factor  $a$ , for the N-body simulation. The horizontal lines, show the time averaged RMS value at a late time  $a_l = 0.9$ , denoting the center of the time interval of  $[0.8 : 1.0]$  considered for taking the average. For model M2, the time averaged neutrino mass is  $\langle m_\nu \rangle(a_l) = 0.164$  (blue dashed lines), while for model M1 it is somewhat smaller  $\langle m_\nu \rangle(a_l) = 0.120$  (red dashed lines). One can observe that the oscillation frequency is higher for the smaller  $\langle m_\nu \rangle$  mass and the peaks are higher for the larger  $\langle m_\nu \rangle$ . The present neutrino masses of the two models calculated in linear theory differ by an order of magnitude, on the contrary the time averaged masses are very close to each other.

## 6.5 Heating of the neutrino fluid

The repeated acceleration of neutrinos to relativistic velocities during the periods of lump formation and dissolution lead to an effective heating of the neutrino fluid. While we do not expect a thermal equilibrium distribution of neutrino momenta and energies it is interesting to investigate how close the distribution is to the Fermi-Dirac distribution of a free gas of massive neutrinos. This distribution depends on only two parameters, the neutrino mass and the temperature. At a given time we associate the neutrino mass to the space averaged neutrino mass. The temperature can be associated to the mean value of the momentum.

The energy of a relativistic particle is given by

$$E(p, m) = \sqrt{p^2 + m^2}, \quad (6.20)$$

while its kinetic energy  $E_k = E(p, m) - m$ . Equivalently, the kinetic energy is defined by

$$E_k = \int \vec{v} \cdot d\vec{p}, \quad (6.21)$$

which yields  $E_k = m(\gamma - 1)$  and reduces in the limit of very small velocities ( $v \ll c$ ) to the usual  $E_k = mv^2/2$ . From there the Fermi-Dirac distribution as a function of momentum  $p = |\vec{p}|$  can be obtained in the standard way. It depends on  $m$  and  $T$ . For  $m \ll T$  it can be approximated by the relativistic distribution while for  $m \gg T$  we recover the Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution. The distribution of particle momenta is then given by

$$\mathcal{P}(p)dp = \frac{4\pi p^2}{(1 + e^{(E(p,m)-\mu)/T})} dp \quad (6.22)$$

where the factor  $4\pi$  comes from the angular integration of the three-dimensional momentum. In the ultra-relativistic limit we can analytically integrate the momentum  $p$  over its distribution eq.6.22 and invert  $\bar{p}(\bar{T})$  to yield the mean temperature as a function of the mean momentum

$$\bar{T} = \frac{180\zeta(3)}{7\pi^4} \bar{p} \quad (6.23)$$

We neglect the chemical potential in 6.22, because the exponential term in the denominator is 2 or 3 orders of magnitude larger than unity. Since in our case, the average momentum and mass of the neutrinos are of the same order, we cannot use either a non-relativistic or an ultra-relativistic limit. We need to consider both the mass and the momentum in the relativistic energy equation 6.20. Therefore for each model and each time, we numerically find  $\bar{T}$  as a function of the mean momentum  $\bar{p}$ .

We extract for  $a = 1$  the temperatures

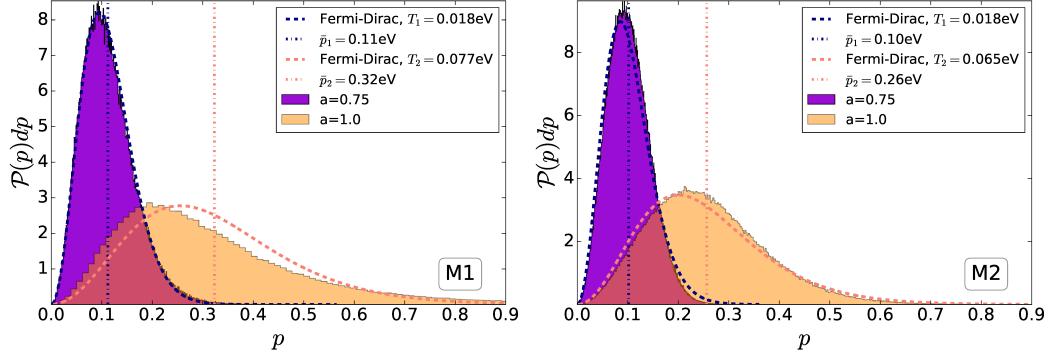
$$\bar{T} = 0.077\text{eV (M1, } \bar{m}_\nu = 0.2404), \quad \bar{T} = 0.065\text{eV (M2, } \bar{m}_\nu = 0.2327). \quad (6.24)$$

They are higher by a factor 327 (M1) or 276 (M2) as compared to the CMB photon temperature  $2.35 \times 10^{-4}\text{eV}$ . This demonstrates the unconventional heating of the neutrino fluid due to the formation and dissolution of lumps. The high temperatures are connected with the almost relativistic equation of state of the neutrinos seen in fig. 6.4. Overall, the observed momentum distributions come rather close to the thermal equilibrium distribution. This also holds for the distribution of kinetic energies. With the bulk quantities as momenta and kinetic energies roughly distributed thermally this is an example of prethermalization Berges, Borsanyi, and Wetterich, 2004.

In fig. (6.6) we fit the distribution of momenta of the neutrino particles on the grid (shown with an histogram) with a Fermi Dirac distribution. The actual distribution of momenta fits the thermal equilibrium distribution very well. At later times (orange shade), the fit is slightly less good: neutrinos might be accelerating towards or away from lumps giving them an extra kick that shifts the peak of the distribution of momenta.

When comparing the equation of state of neutrinos obtained from the N-body simulation to a neutrino equation of state  $w_\nu = p_\nu/\rho_\nu$ , using our Fermi-Dirac fit to the particle distribution and eqns.6.4 and 6.3, we get a very good agreement, taking into account that for the Fermi-Dirac fit, we are neglecting the spatial variation of the neutrino mass  $m_\nu(\phi)$ . For model M2 at the scale factor  $a = 0.75$  we obtain from the N-body simulation a neutrino equation of state of  $w_\nu = 0.081$  while using the Fermi-Dirac fit to the distribution of particles with a mean temperature of  $\bar{T} = 0.018\text{eV}$  and an average neutrino mass  $\bar{m}_\nu = 0.1835$ , the proper calculation yields  $w_\nu = 0.086$ . For a later time, at  $a = 1.0$  the N-body simulation gives us a value of  $w_\nu = 0.207$  while the Fermi-Dirac fit with a mean temperature of  $\bar{T} = 0.065\text{eV}$  and an average neutrino mass  $\bar{m}_\nu = 0.2327$  amounts to a neutrino equation of state of  $w_\nu = 0.182$ .

To visualize the evolution of  $w_\nu$ , we can observe from fig.6.4 that neutrinos in the N-body simulation start as non-relativistic particles and oscillate between being almost relativistic and completely non-relativistic in the interval  $a = [0.3, 0.6]$ .



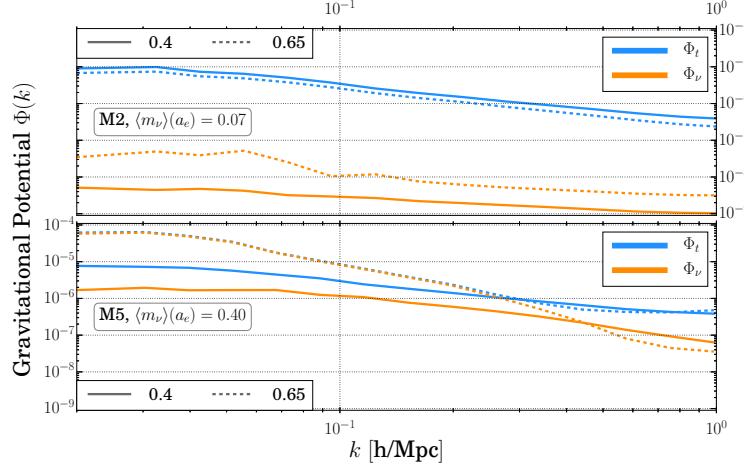
**FIGURE 6.6:** Distribution of the momenta of the neutrino particles in the simulation, for two different times,  $a = 0.75$  (purple shade) and  $a = 1.0$  (orange shade), compared against a Fermi-Dirac distribution with a temperature given by the mean of the distribution (dashed lines). **Left:** For model M1 the Fermi-Dirac fits very well for temperatures of  $\bar{T} = 0.018\text{eV}$  and  $\bar{T} = 0.077\text{eV}$  for each scale factor respectively. **Right:** For model M2 the fit is also good, the corresponding temperatures being  $\bar{T} = 0.018\text{eV}$  and  $\bar{T} = 0.065\text{eV}$ . The CMB photon temperature is  $2.35 \times 10^{-4}\text{eV}$ , this means that the non-linear cosmon-neutrino interactions heat the neutrino background by more than a factor 100.

However, at later times  $a \gtrsim 0.7$  the neutrino equation of state still oscillates but never reaches a value of zero again. This is in agreement with our description of the heating of the neutrino fluid. Since the mean temperature of the neutrino fluid is increasing with time and therefore its mean kinetic energy and pressure, the minimum of the oscillations of the neutrino equation of state increases also in time and departs from zero, once neutrinos are heated to very high temperatures due to the collapsing and dissolving of the neutrino-cosmon lumps.

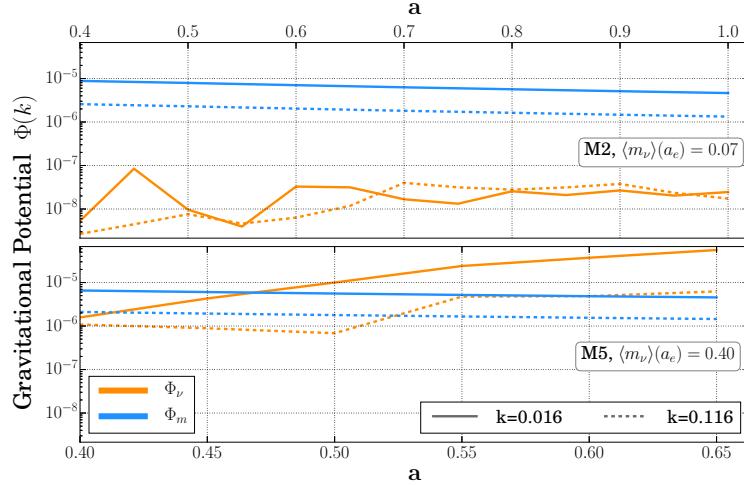
## 6.6 Gravitational Potentials of Neutrino Lumps

The gravitational potential  $\Phi$  is a good measure of the physics going on in structure formation. We know from observational constraints, that  $\Phi$  is of the order of  $10^{-5}$  on cosmological scales Brouzakis et al., 2011; Pettorino et al., 2010. In  $\Lambda$ CDM, the gravitational potential is sourced mainly by dark matter perturbations. In figures 6.7 and 6.8 we show that for models with small neutrino masses, the neutrino contribution to  $\Phi$  remains several orders of magnitude smaller than the CDM contribution, at all scales and at all times. Moreover, one can observe an oscillation in time of the neutrino gravitational potential. For models with large neutrino masses, the neutrino contribution grows monotonically with time. At large scales  $k \lesssim 0.3\text{h/Mpc}$  and at late times the neutrino lump induced potential dominates over the cold dark matter gravitational potential. This renders the total potential  $\Phi_{tot}$  too big to be compatible with present cosmological constraints.

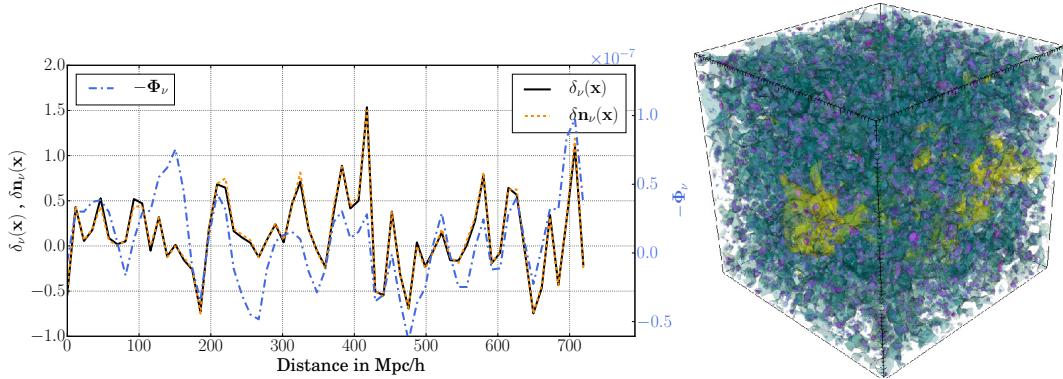
We show the scale dependence of the total gravitational potential and the neutrino induced gravitational potential  $\Phi_\nu$  at two different cosmic time scales  $a = 0.4$  and  $a = 0.65$  in fig.6.7. While for  $a = 0.4$  (solid lines) the neutrino contribution is still subdominant for both models M2 and M5, this changes at  $a = 0.65$  for model M5 (bottom panel). For model M2 the total gravitational potential decreases in time, as it is expected due to the effect of dark energy, while  $\Phi_\nu$  increases especially at large scales. For model M5, since the neutrino contribution dominates at



**FIGURE 6.7:** Power spectra of the total gravitational potential  $\Phi_t$  (blue lines) and of the neutrino contribution  $\Phi_\nu$  (orange lines) for model M2 and model M5 at the scale factors  $a = 0.40$  (solid lines) and  $a = 0.65$  (dashed lines), as a function of scale. Model M2 has an RMS time averaged neutrino mass  $\langle m_\nu \rangle(a_e) = 0.07$ , where  $a_e = 0.5$  stands for the central time in the interval  $a = [0.4 - 0.6]$  used to take the average. Model M5 has in the same interval a higher RMS mass of  $\langle m_\nu \rangle(a_e) = 0.40$ . In the first model,  $\Phi_t$  at large scales is of the order of  $10^{-5}$ , while  $\Phi_\nu$  is 3 to 4 orders of magnitude smaller at both cosmological times. For model M5, in which neutrino lumps are stable and growing, one sees that at large scales, the total  $\Phi_t$  starts with a value of  $10^{-5}$  at  $a = 0.4$ , but reaches  $10^{-4}$  at later times. At  $a = 0.65$  the neutrino contribution is dominant and neutrino structures have migrated from small scales to large scales, as can be seen from the dip in  $\Phi_\nu$  at modes between  $k = 0.2 - 1.0$  h/Mpc.



**FIGURE 6.8:** Power spectra of the matter gravitational potential  $\Phi_m$  (blue lines) and of the neutrino contribution  $\Phi_\nu$  (orange lines) at two different scales,  $k = 0.016$  (solid lines) and  $k = 0.116$  (dashed lines) as a function of scale factor  $a$  with two different scales on the top and bottom axis. For model M2 the matter gravitational potential  $\Phi_m$  is at most  $10^{-5}$  at all times, while the neutrino contribution is 2-3 orders of magnitude smaller and displays time oscillations. In clear contrast, the neutrino contribution from model M5 for very large scales, reaches and dominates over the matter contribution for  $a \gtrsim 0.5$  and pushes the total  $\Phi$  to high values that would be ruled out by observations, see also fig. 6.7. The RMS neutrino mass has been taken in the same interval range as for fig. 6.7, where  $a_e = 0.5$ .



**FIGURE 6.9:** **Left:** Line plot through the main diagonal of the simulation box, for model M2 at  $a = 0.75$ . The negative of the neutrino contribution to the gravitational potential  $\Phi_\nu$ , (blue dot-dashed lines) oscillates between  $\pm 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$ . This is correlated to the neutrino density contrast (black lines) and the number density contrast  $\delta n_\nu = n_\nu(\vec{x})/\bar{n}_\nu - 1$  (orange dashed lines) reaching values of up to 1.5. **Right:** Snapshot of the same simulation, showing a equipotential contour of the gravitational potential, for  $\Phi_\nu = +1.0 \times 10^{-7}$  in yellow, and the small but dense neutrino lumps in blue, purple and red, corresponding to density contrasts  $\delta n_\nu$  of 1.5, 2.0 and 4.0 respectively.

$a = 0.65$ , the total gravitational potential is raised to values of  $10^{-4}$  at large scales, while at small scales ( $k \gtrsim 0.4$ ) the neutrino contribution is still subdominant.

In fig.6.8 we show the power spectra of the total gravitational potential  $\Phi$  (blue lines) and of the neutrino contribution to it (orange lines) at two different scales,  $k = 0.016$  (solid lines) and  $k = 0.116$  (dashed lines) as a function of the scale factor  $a$ . For model M2, corresponding to an average early time neutrino mass of 0.07 eV, the total gravitational potential  $\Phi(k)$  is  $10^{-5}$  at all times, while the neutrino contribution is 2-3 orders of magnitude smaller and shows time oscillations. In clear contrast, the neutrino contribution from model M5 (corresponding to an average early time neutrino mass of 0.40 eV)) for very large scales reaches and dominates over the matter contribution (at  $a \gtrsim 0.5$ ) and pushes the total  $\Phi$  to high values that would be ruled out by observations. This is due to the fact that neutrino lumps do not dissolve, but rather grow with continuously growing concentration and higher gravitational potential.

There is also anticorrelation between the neutrino structures and the neutrino induced gravitational potential, as expected from the fact that neutrinos will tend to fall into gravitational potential wells. In the left panel of fig.6.9, we plot the values of the neutrino number density contrast  $\delta n_\nu = n_\nu(\vec{x})/\bar{n}_\nu - 1$  and the negative neutrino induced gravitational potential  $\Phi_\nu$ , along a diagonal line through the simulation box. The correlation of peaks and troughs (corresponding to an anticorrelation of  $\delta n_\nu$  and  $\Phi_\nu$ ) is very clear and it is valid for even small substructures of the order of a few Mpc. By plotting the neutrino density contrast  $\delta_\nu$ , we also show that at this time  $a = 0.75$ , the neutrino number density and the energy density are proportional, meaning that neither local mass variations or relativistic speeds are having any effect in the neutrino total energy. In the right panel of fig.6.9 we visualize the neutrino induced gravitational potential as a yellow region marking the equipotential surface  $\Phi_\nu = +1.0 \times 10^{-7}$  and the neutrino number overdensity structures colored blue, purple and red, corresponding to density contrasts  $\delta n_\nu$  of 1.5, 2.0 and 4.0 respectively. For this model (M2) and at this specific time, the neutrino structures are spread almost homogeneously throughout the simulated volume.

## 6.7 Conclusions of Dynamics of Neutrino Lumps

We have investigated the dynamics of neutrino lumps in growing neutrino quintessence and how it depends on the mass of neutrinos. As a main result of this paper we found a characteristic divide in the qualitative behavior between small and large neutrino mass.

For light neutrino masses the combined effects of oscillations in the neutrino masses and the cosmon-neutrino coupling lead to rapid formation and dissociation of the neutrino lumps. The concentration in the neutrino structures never grows to very large overdensities. As a consequence, backreaction effects remain small. The effects of lump formation and dissociation lead to an effective heating of the neutrino fluid to temperatures much higher than the photon temperature. Due to this heating, the neutrino equation of state becomes again close to the one for relativistic particles. For a small present average neutrino mass  $m_\nu = 0.06\text{eV}$  it has been found earlier Pettorino et al., 2010 that the cosmology of growing neutrino quintessence resembles very closely a cosmological constant, making differences to the  $\Lambda\text{CDM}$  model difficult to detect. We extend this qualitative feature to a whole range of light neutrino masses.

For large neutrino masses, one finds a qualitatively different behavior. Big neutrino lumps form, due to the strong cosmon-mediated fifth-force between neutrinos. These lumps are stable and keep growing in concentration and density. The strong clumping of the cosmic neutrino background induces large backreaction effects on the overall cosmic evolution. As a result, the combined cosmon-neutrino fluid does not act effectively as a cosmological constant anymore and compatibility with observations is difficult to achieve. This situation is similar to the case of a constant cosmon-neutrino coupling Führer and Wetterich, 2015.

The divide in the characteristic behavior reflects the competition between heating of the neutrino fluid and lump concentration. We have not yet established a quantitatively accurate value of the parameter  $\hat{m}_\nu$ , where the divide is located, since the numerics are rather time consuming. In principle, this divide will lead to an upper bound on the present neutrino mass, as seen in terrestrial experiments. For models in the vicinity of model M2, which seem compatible with observations so far, spatial average neutrino masses as large as  $0.5\text{eV}$  can occur at the peak of oscillations, c.f. fig.6.5. We note that if we live inside a neutrino lump the neutrino mass will be reduced as compared to the cosmological value.

We have further computed the strength of the neutrino-induced gravitational potential. For light masses, this potential is found to be rather small, rendering a detection of the neutrino lumps difficult. As neutrino masses increase towards an intermediate mass region, before reaching the heavy mass range incompatible with observation, the neutrino-induced gravitational potentials will get stronger. By continuity we expect that in the intermediate mass region the clumped neutrino background becomes observable.

## 6.8 Initial parameters for generating the models in nuCAMB and in the N-Body simulation

CAMB values	M1	M2	M3	M4	M5	M6
input: $\Omega_\nu h^2$	0.048	0.048	0.075	0.018	0.038	0.098
$\tilde{m}_\nu$ amplitude factor	$8.35 \times 10^{-5}$	$2.0 \times 10^{-4}$	$6.0 \times 10^{-4}$	$9.9 \times 10^{-3}$	$8.8 \times 10^{-3}$	$8.8 \times 10^{-3}$
input $\hat{r}_{\nu eV}$ factor	1.5045	1.5045	2.3508	0.5642	1.1911	3.0718
$V_i$	$0.99 \times 10^{-7}$					

**TABLE 6.2:** Table of initial parameters for each model computed with nuCAMB.  $\tilde{m}_\nu$  is the neutrino mass amplitude used in the simulations,  $\hat{r}_{\nu eV}$  is the neutrino mass units conversion factor between the simulations and nuCAMB.  $V_i$  is the initial value of the cosmon potential.

N-body parameters	Values	Meaning
$L$	428	Box side length in Mpc/h
$N_g$	64	Grid size per dimension
$N_{pdm}$	262144	Number of dark matter particles in the simulation
$N_{p\nu}$	524288	Number of neutrino particles in the simulation
$n_{\text{ngs}}^{\text{acc}}$	$1.0 \times 10^{-5}$	Numerical accuracy for the NGS solver

**TABLE 6.3:** Table of numerical parameters for each N-body simulation run. Several tests were performed varying these parameters, but the overall behavior for the purposes of this paper was the same. We also tested model M2 with grid sizes of 128 and 8 times the number of particles, not noticing any qualitative difference in the dynamics. Only deviations of the order of 10% in perturbation quantities were observed when varying the grid size or the number of particles.

## 6.9 The effective and observed equation of state of dark energy

The equation of state  $w$  of a species is defined in terms of its pressure and density as

$$w = \frac{p}{\rho} . \quad (6.25)$$

For the case of coupled species, there have been several definitions in the literature (c.f. Brookfield et al., 2007; Das, Corasaniti, and Khoury, 2006; Perrotta and Baccigalupi, 2002; Perrotta, Baccigalupi, and Matarrese, 1999). This is due to the fact that when there is an exchange of energy and momentum between a particle and a scalar field, the time evolution of matter does not correspond anymore to the volume dilution rule  $\rho(a) = \rho_0 a^{-3}$ . Therefore the equation of state of the dark energy field will not be as simple as the equation of state of a homogeneous scalar field, namely

$$w_\phi = \frac{p_\phi}{\rho_\phi} = \frac{(1/2a^2)\dot{\phi}^2 + V(\phi)}{(1/2a^2)\dot{\phi}^2 - V(\phi)} . \quad (6.26)$$

In Brookfield et al., 2007; Das, Corasaniti, and Khoury, 2006 two definitions of the equation of state (e.o.s) of dark energy were investigated. The first one, called the effective e.o.s.  $w_{\text{eff}}$ , given by

$$w_{\text{eff}} \equiv w_\phi + \frac{\beta \dot{\phi}}{3H} \frac{\rho_\nu}{\rho_\phi} \quad (6.27)$$

To do (31)

and the second one named “apparent” e.o.s.  $w_{ap}$ , defined by

$$w_{ap} \equiv \frac{w_\phi}{1+x} , \quad (6.28)$$

with

$$x = -\frac{\rho_{\nu,0}}{a^3 \rho_\phi} \left[ \frac{m_\nu(\phi)}{m_\nu(\phi_0)} - 1 \right] , \quad (6.29)$$

where a 0 subscript denotes quantities at  $z = 0$ . Notice that by construction,  $w_{ap}$  at the present epoch is identical to  $w_\phi$  and that  $w_{ap}$  can be smaller than  $-1$ . We find that none of these two definitions of e.o.s. describe the dynamical dark energy field present in our model.

Since in our model the neutrino and cosmon field behave together as a tightly coupled fluid, we are interested in the conserved equation of state for the combined fluid. This is given by the sum of both contributions from the pressure, divided by the sum of both densities. Therefore, we define  $w_{\nu+\phi}$  as

$$w_{\nu+\phi} \equiv \frac{\bar{p}_\phi + \bar{p}_\nu}{\bar{\rho}_\phi + \bar{\rho}_\nu} . \quad (6.30)$$

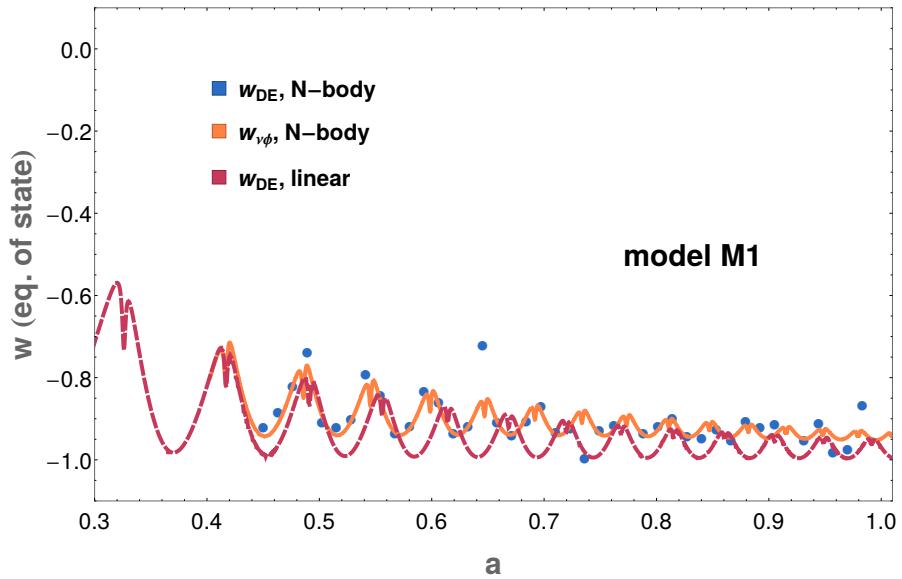
This definition should agree with what we can extract directly from observations of the Friedmann equation. The equation of state  $w_{DE}(z)$  of a general dark energy component that fulfills the continuity equation (if it is composed by two coupled fluids, the continuity equation is fulfilled for the sum of densities and pressures), appears in the Friedmann equation as

$$E^2(z) \equiv \frac{H^2(z)}{H_0^2} = \left[ \Omega_{r,0}(1+z)^4 + \Omega_{m,0}(1+z)^3 + \Omega_{DE,0} \exp \left\{ \int_0^z \frac{3(1+w_{DE}(\tilde{z}))}{1+\tilde{z}} d\tilde{z} \right\} + \Omega_{k,0}(1+z)^2 \right] . \quad (6.31)$$

Moreover, in a flat Universe and with a negligible contribution from radiation, we can solve for  $w_{DE}(z)$  and obtain Amendola and Tsujikawa, 2010:

$$w_{DE}(z) = \frac{(1+z)(E^2(z))' - 3E^2(z)}{3[E^2(z) - \Omega_{m,0}(1+z)^3]} . \quad (6.32)$$

Thus, from background expansion observations we can obtain a constrain on  $w_{DE}(z)$ , provided we know from large-scale structure or CMB observations the present value of  $\Omega_m$ . In the fig. 6.10 we compare  $w_{DE}(z)$  obtained from eq.6.32 and  $w_{\nu\phi}(z)$  computed both consistently within the N-body simulation. In the former case, numerical noise in the derivatives of  $E(z)$  create certain scatter in  $w_{DE}(z)$  at late times.



**FIGURE 6.10:** Different  $w(z)$  curves in the case of model M1 computed with the N-body simulation and compared to linear theory. The red dashed lines represent  $w_{DE}$  computed from the Hubble function which is an output of the linear code nuCMB. The solid orange line, representing  $w_{\nu+\phi}$  is computed using the standard pressure and density outputs from the simulation. The blue dots stand for some set of computed values of  $w_{DE}(z)$  obtained from the Hubble function calculated entirely within the N-body simulation. Due to numerical noise in the oscillating derivatives of  $E(z)$ , there is some scatter in the e.o.s. obtained in this case.



# Conclusions

In this thesis we have investigated non-linear structure formation in models of Dark Energy and Modified Gravity which go beyond the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM scenario. We have focused on predicting its impact on parameter constraints and contrasting the difference of the linear and the non-linear calculations on observable properties like Weak Lensing, Galaxy Clustering and the evolution of background quantities.

## Dark Energy and Modified Gravity

In chapter 1 we introduced the theoretical framework of cosmology, which is based on Einstein's General Relativity (GR) and then we proceeded to explain the concordance  $\Lambda$ CDM model and its main properties. We have argued that despite the actual data being well explained by the standard model, there are some unsatisfactory properties with the Cosmological Constant, namely the so-called fine-tuning and coincidence problems, that motivate the extension of General Relativity by an extra dynamical degree of freedom. We have focused on theories of Dark Energy (DE) and Modified Gravity (MG) in which this extra degree of freedom is represented by a dynamical scalar field. The scalar field can not only modify the background cosmological solutions, but in some cases it can also lead to the appearance of an extra "fifth-force" acting between test bodies. In the second half of chapter 1 we have classified the DE and MG models into universally coupled and non-universally coupled. The former are those models in which all matter and radiation species couple in the same way to the scalar field, while the latter are models in which just a specific matter component feels the influence of the field.

General Relativity has been thoroughly tested at laboratory and Solar System scales. It has been found that the coupling to standard matter (baryons) is very well constrained to be negligibly small. Therefore, universally coupled models have to invoke a "screening" mechanism that recovers GR at small scales (see section 1.5). On the other hand, non-universally coupled theories pass the stringent solar system constraints by decoupling the baryons and allowing only for dark sector interactions, involving the scalar field and dark matter or neutrinos, as we discuss in section 1.6.

For universally coupled theories, we focus on Effective Field Theory (EFT) models, Horndeski models and on parameterized Modified Gravity, which are very general descriptions of theories of GR plus a scalar field. EFT includes in the action all possible terms allowed by symmetries at first order in perturbation theory, while Horndeski is the most general theory of GR plus a scalar field, which is second order in the equations of motion and free of ghost instabilities. Both theories can be mapped to each other at the linear order, by using the so-called  $\alpha$ -functions. We explained this more in detail in section 1.5.3. If we want to study general modifications of gravity affecting the gravitational potentials  $\Psi$  and  $\Phi$ , but we do not want to focus on a particular Lagrangian description, we can parameterize the deviations of GR in terms of two general functions of scale and time, namely  $\mu(k, a)$  and  $\eta(k, a)$ . As we explain in section 1.5.4,  $\mu$  expresses the deviations of the relativistic Poisson equation, while  $\eta$  expresses the gravitational anisotropic stress (also

known as gravitational slip), which is the ratio  $\Phi/\Psi$ . Both functions reduce to unity in the standard GR case or if the DE model just modifies the background equations.

For non-universally coupled theories, we focused on two distinct scenarios. The first one called Coupled Dark Energy (CDE) is a model in which there is a dark sector interaction between Dark Matter and the Dark Energy field, see section 1.6.1. This leads to a fifth-force that modifies the growth and the clustering of DM particles and introduces a gravitational bias. We studied this model in the non-linear regime, based on cosmological N-body simulations and we found noticeable differences in the non-linear matter power spectrum depending on the strength of the DM-DE coupling. This was a subject of chapter 4. The second non-universally coupled model we study is Growing Neutrino Quintessence (GNQ) in which the mass of the neutrinos is directly coupled to the scalar field (referred to as “cosmon”). In this model Dark Matter and baryons follow standard gravity, but neutrinos feel an extra force among them, which is very strong (of the order of  $10^2$  times the gravitational force) and leads to the formation of large neutrino lumps. Depending on the parameters of the model, these lumps are stable and grow with time or they present very rapid oscillations, dissolving and forming again. To study the dynamics of these lumps and their backreaction effect on background quantities, we perform specialized N-body simulations, as we detail in chapter 6.

## Statistics and the Fisher Matrix formalism

In order to study the impact of non-linearities onto the determination of cosmological parameters, we need to make use of Bayesian statistical tools, which we review in chapter 2. In the first part we introduce the concepts of Gaussianity, linearity and statistical homogeneity and we conclude that they are intrinsically connected and that therefore non-linear structure formation introduces non-Gaussianities and non-homogeneities into our statistical analysis. Using Bayes’ theorem we can define the likelihood as the probability of obtaining a particular model given the data, therefore we can find which are the set of model parameters that maximize the likelihood function. We then developed the concept of Fisher Matrix, which is a way of approximating the likelihood function at the maximum, assuming that around the peak, the likelihood can be approximated as a Gaussian (see section 2.4). Since the Fisher matrix for the model parameters can be obtained without data, just by knowing the data and noise covariance matrices, we are able to forecast the result of future experiments in a theoretical way.

In this work we have dealt with the predictions for future galaxy surveys: Euclid, SKA1, SKA2 and DESI (for more details see section 2.4.4). These missions will observe approximately  $10^7 \sim 10^9$  galaxy shapes and positions (angles with spectroscopic plus photometric redshifts) at redshifts of  $z \approx 0 - 3$ , giving us valuable information in the linear as well as in the non-linear regime of structure formation. With the galaxy positions and spectroscopic redshifts one can measure what we call Galaxy Clustering (GC). This is a combination of the shape of the power spectrum (the Fourier transform of the galaxy two-point correlation function), its amplitude as a function of time and its particular features like Baryon Acoustic Oscillations and Redshift Space Distortions. What we call Weak Lensing (WL) is the process of using galaxy shapes and photometric redshifts one obtains the cosmic shear power spectrum, which can be related to the matter power spectrum integrated along the line of sight. This provides us with valuable information about the evolution of structures in the Universe. In section 2.5 we explain the implementation of a Fisher Matrix code for GC and WL, which contains different methods to forecast the errors

on cosmological parameters obtained by future surveys. This code, called FISHERTOOLS, integrates very well with other commonly used codes in the community, like Boltzmann codes or emulator codes and has been thoroughly tested within the Inter Science Taskforce and the Theory Working Group of the Euclid collaboration.

### Linear and non-linear forecasts for Modified Gravity with future surveys

In chapter 3 we have used the FISHERTOOLS code to forecast the sensitivity of future surveys to general modifications of gravity given by  $\mu$  (the deviation from the GR Poisson equation) and  $\eta$  (the anisotropic stress) in the linear and in the mildly non-linear regime of structure formation. For the linear power spectrum we use a modified Boltzmann code called MGCAMB ([cite MG CAMB](#)) which is able to compute the linearized Einstein-Boltzmann equations for modified gravity. For the non-linear corrections we test two prescriptions: one based on a rough application of the HALOFIT ([cite Halofit](#)) formalism on top of the linear spectra and a prescription in which we interpolate from an MG non-linear power spectrum to a GR non-linear spectrum at small scales, to emulate a screening mechanism. This is the so-called "Hu-Sawicki" (HS) prescription ([cite Hu Sawicki](#)). In section [section 3.2.2](#) we give more details about our implementation.

In this project, we have tested three different parameterizations of Modified Gravity. In two of them  $\mu(a)$  and  $\eta(a)$  are smooth functions of the scale factor  $a$  and we have neglected possible scale dependence. In the third one, we have not assumed any specific functional form for  $\mu(a)$  and  $\eta(a)$ , but we have binned these functions in 5 redshift bins and we have assumed that  $\mu(z_i)$  and  $\eta(z_i)$  are free parameters at each redshift bin  $z_i$ . To obtain the fiducial parameters for these three cases, we have computed the best fit parameters obtained by performing a Markov-Chain-Monte-Carlo calculation, that computes the likelihood function obtained with recent data from the *Planck* CMB satellite.

In the redshift-binned scenario, we find that the  $\mu(z_i)$  and  $\eta(z_i)$  are quite correlated among each other and with the primordial amplitude of the power spectrum  $A_s$ . We find that including non-linear power spectra and adding a *Planck* covariance matrix as prior, reduces the correlations considerably. Particularly, in the non-linear case, the correlation with the primordial amplitude disappears almost completely. We find that the lower redshift bins are the best constrained by observations. Using non-linear power spectra and Galaxy Clustering only, the parameters in the first bin  $z_1$ , covering from  $z = 0$  to  $z = 0.5$ , are constrained for  $\mu$  at the 7% level and for  $\eta$  at the 20% level; combining GC with Weak Lensing improves the constraints to 2.2% and 3.6%, respectively. If one considers only linear scales in the analysis, the GC+WL combined errors on  $\mu_{11}$  and  $\eta_{11}$  are twice as large, while the individual GC and WL lensing errors are 10 to 20 times larger. This shows the importance of having a proper model of the non-linear power spectrum if one wishes to extract information on the Modified Gravity parameters with future surveys.

We further apply a Zero-phase Component Analysis (ZCA) decorrelation, which in analogy to the commonly used Principal Component Analysis (PCA) gives us a set of decorrelated variables, in which the new covariance matrix is diagonal. With these new set of variables, we can find which are the combinations of MG parameters that can be best constrained with future surveys. We find that for low redshifts, the best constrained parameters are the combination  $2\mu + \eta$ , which will be measured at a precision of better than 1%, if one combines GC+WL and *Planck* priors. The best constraints on the decorrelated parameters are 2 orders of magnitude better for the

linear case and 1 order of magnitude better for the non-linear case, compared to the original parameters.

For the case in which we parameterize  $\mu(a)$  and  $\eta(a)$  with smooth functions of time, we consider two possible behaviors. The first one, is the so-called late-time parameterization in which the modifications of gravity are stronger at late times and are proportional to the fraction of Dark Energy  $\Omega_{DE}$  in the Universe. The second one is the so-called early-time parameterization, which consists of the zeroth and first terms of a Taylor expansion of a general function of  $a$ , around  $a = 1$ . In this parameterization, the modifications with respect to GR can be large at high redshifts. In both cases we find that using non-linearities and combining GC plus WL, we can constrain the modification to the Poisson equation  $\mu$  and the modification to the lensing potential  $\Sigma = (1 + \eta)\mu/2$  at around the 1% level, while if we use only linear scales, the constraints are of the order of 7% and 2%, respectively. An interesting difference between these two parameterizations is that in the late-time parameterization, Galaxy Clustering is only able to constrain the  $\mu$  function, while WL is able to constrain  $\Sigma$ , which is what one expects naively from the subhorizon perturbation equations. Nevertheless, in the early-time parameterization since  $\eta$  and  $\mu$  are not unity at high redshifts, the terms proportional to derivatives of the gravitational potential,  $\dot{\Phi}$  and  $\ddot{\Phi}$ , appearing in the evolution equation for the density perturbations (eq. (3.39)), are not negligible. Therefore, one can observe the effects of  $\eta$  both with the clustering of galaxies and with cosmic shear.

We also tested the effect of our non-linear prescription onto the forecasted constraints in two different ways. The non-linear HS prescription depends on two parameters  $c_{nl}$  and  $s$ , which determine how fast and at which scales the MG power spectrum goes back to the GR case. In principle these parameters have to be adjusted by comparing with N-body simulations. First we tested how much the constraints on  $\mu$ ,  $\eta$  and  $\Sigma$  changed when modifying the fiducial of  $c_{nl}$  and  $s$ . We find that for the most extreme variations of the HS parameters, the  $1\sigma$  error on  $\mu$  gets affected by a factor  $\sigma_\mu \times (1 \pm 0.9)$ , while the constraints on  $\Sigma$  vary around  $\pm 6\%$  (see fig. 3.24 and fig. 3.25). The second test performed, was the inclusion of the HS parameters as nuisance parameters on the forecast. We found that after marginalizing over these nuisance parameters, the results on all cosmological parameters are quite robust and the constraints are just slightly worse, as was expected by the addition of two extra parameters. All the above mentioned constraints refer to the Euclid probe, but we also performed the same forecasts for SKA2, SKA1 and DESI-ELG (which measures GC only). These tables can be found in chapter 3. In order to compare across experiments and across different cases (linear, non-linear, with and without prior) we defined the Figure of Merit (FoM, eq. (2.40)) and the Figure of Correlation (FoC, eq. (2.41)), which are good measures of the constraining power of an experiment and the correlation among the parameters.

### Fitting and forecasting Coupled Dark Energy in the non-linear regime

For the Coupled Dark Energy model, which is a quintessence model in which Dark Matter particles and the scalar field interchange energy and momentum, we used the publicly available CODECS N-body simulations ([cite Codecs Baldi](#)) to find a fit to the non-linear power spectrum and applied them to improve previous forecasts on this model for future galaxy redshift surveys, which had been done taking into account linear scales only ([cite cite Luca; Valeria](#)).

The fitting formulae we found are functions of the DM-DE coupling  $\beta$  and the redshift  $z$ , and are very precise when compared to the full simulations. However, since they were calculated as the correction with respect to the  $\Lambda$ CDM case, we still need to add on top of them a semi-analytic or numeric prescription for the non-linear power spectrum, which can be varied with respect to the standard cosmological parameters. Here we used the Halofit formula and the Coyote Cosmic Emulator as the “fiducial”  $\Lambda$ CDM non-linear power spectrum. We found that the CODECS  $\Lambda$ CDM simulation departs from Halofit at around 5% at scales  $k \lesssim 0.2\text{h/Mpc}$  and as much as 15% at scales of about  $k \approx 1.0\text{h/Mpc}$ , for  $z = 0$ . The Cosmic Emulator performs somehow better, matching the  $\Lambda$ CDM simulations at present time ( $z = 0$ ) at better than 5% for all scales of interest  $k \lesssim 2.0\text{h/Mpc}$ , see fig. 4.3. For this reason, we used the Cosmic Emulator as the baseline  $\Lambda$ CDM non-linear spectrum. We included the error on the fitting functions, the error with respect to the Cosmic Emulator and the sample variance error of the simulation as a source of error  $\sigma_p(k, z)$  into our analysis, see fig. 4.4.

We computed the systematic bias on the parameter constraints (cf. section 2.4.7) and found that the systematic errors due to the ignorance on the correct non-linear matter power spectrum can be as large as the statistical errors (see table 4.4), so that for data analysis it is extremely important to have the correct matter power spectrum under control.

We found that the including non-linear scales from a fit to simulations, improves the previous constraints (which used only linear spectra) on the coupling parameter  $\beta^2$  by more than an order of magnitude. We investigated how the constraints change as a function of the maximum wavenumber  $k_{max}$  included in the GC and WL analysis. It is shown in fig. 4.6 and fig. 4.7 that the errors decrease steadily with increasing  $k_{max}$ , but then after  $k_{max} \gtrsim 1$  the errors remain more or less constant. We also show that using the wrong non-linear prescription, namely applying Halofit directly on top of the CDE linear spectra, gives worse constraints and wrong degeneracy directions of the confidence contours. This is expected, since Halofit cannot account for the changes in structure formation at non-linear scales given by the “fifth-force”. Therefore, we show in this work, that to obtain the correct constraints on a modified gravity parameter, like the DM-DE coupling, it is necessary to calculate the correct non-linear power spectrum within the MG model.

The final constraint we obtain on  $\beta^2$ , which is  $\sigma_{\beta^2} \approx 8 \times 10^{-5}$  (see Casas et al., 2015) is not far from the current best limits reached with Solar System observations on a coupling to baryons Olive et al., 2014, which can be translated in our notation as  $\beta^2 \leq 2 \cdot 10^{-5}$  at  $1-\sigma$ . Hence, we can expect that with future galaxy surveys and a correct modeling of the non-linear power spectrum and its associated systematic errors, the dark sector couplings will be constrained with the same level of precision as we constrain the visible sector within the Solar System nowadays.

## Resummation methods for Horndeski theory

As we have discussed in previous chapters, the estimation of the correct non-linear power spectrum when studying a Modified Gravity model is of uttermost importance. We can use approximated non-linear prescriptions based on the Halo model as we did in chapter 3 to improve considerably the constraints obtained using just linear theory, but we showed in chapter 4 that using the wrong prescription can bias our results and that the more precise approach is to find fitting functions directly from N-body simulations computed specifically for the model in question. However, this is prohibitively expensive, we cannot calculate for each DE and MG

model a set of N-body simulations covering the parameter space. Therefore, while N-body simulations of Dark Energy and Modified Gravity provide the best estimates of the non-linear power spectrum, we cannot use them realistically for a large number of forecasts or future data analysis.

In chapter 5 we took a different approach. The idea here was to use a recently developed resummation formalism in cosmological perturbation theory, called eikonal Renormalized Perturbation Theory (eRPT), to calculate the non-linear corrections to the matter power spectrum at mildly non-linear scales, for a set of Horndeski models. Since these calculations are relatively complex, we focus on Horndeski theory in the quasistatic limit, in which the modifications to the gravitational potentials, which are given by  $\mu$  and  $\eta$ , depend on 5 functions of time, while the scale dependence is fixed, see eq. (5.26) and eq. (5.27).

Standard Perturbation Theory (SPT) in Large Scale Structure (LSS) suffers from the problem that corrections at higher orders (higher loops), are not smaller the more loops one includes in the calculations. Therefore, one has in principle to sum contributions at all orders. Being a resummation method, eRPT does not suffer from this problem, and we can compute the linear part plus 1-loop terms under certain conditions, ensuring that higher orders will not spoil completely the result. In this method we can derive an evolution equation for the non-linear power spectrum (see eq. (5.66)) which depends on the linear power spectrum and the linear propagator (the solution of the differential equation for the growth). This method has been compared to N-body simulations for  $\Lambda$ CDM by ([cite Pietroni](#)) and has been found to be 1–3% accurate at mildly non-linear scales  $k \lesssim 0.4 h/\text{Mpc}$  for redshifts up to  $z = 0$ .

In this project (which corresponds to a publication in preparation) we have computed the necessary terms for the evolution equation for Horndeski models in the quasistatic limit. We have made several approximations on the way, which we specify in section 5.5 and we relax them progressively, to obtain a more realistic result.

Our preliminary results show that modifications of  $\mu$  of around 15% at small scales, compared to the GR case ( $\mu = 1$ ) can affect the power spectrum at around 5% at mildly non-linear scales (see fig. 5.5). As we have shown in previous chapters, such an effect would be observable by future galaxy surveys. Since in these models the growth of perturbations is scale-dependent, the correct calculation of non-linearities can also affect the constraints coming from data on  $f\sigma_8$ , as we show in fig. 5.4.

This eRPT method for Horndeski models still has to be tested against recently developed N-body simulations for Modified Gravity and we have to study more in detail the effect of the approximations we have taken.

## Dynamics of lumps in Growing Neutrino Quintessence

In chapter 6 we studied a model in which the neutrino mass is coupled to the scalar “cosmon” field. This model can be motivated by considering the “cosmon” field as a Goldstone mode coming from the breaking of scale invariance and by considering the neutrino mass generation in the seesaw mechanism (see Wetterich, [2007](#)).

The coupling between neutrinos and the scalar field  $\beta(\phi)$  needs to be very high in order to respect constraints on early Dark Energy and on the evolution of the equation of state. This strong coupling leads to the formation of large neutrino structures known as “neutrino lumps”, which have been observed using specialized non-Newtonian N-body simulations as in Ayaita, Weber, and Wetterich, [2012](#).

Previous studies had found that for a constant coupling  $\beta$ , there is no way of obtaining a realistic cosmology (see Führer and Wetterich, 2015), due to the strong backreaction effects caused by the large and stable lumps.

In the publication by Casas, Pettorino, and Wetterich, (2016) we studied, using N-body simulations, the dynamics of neutrino lumps for different masses of the neutrino at present time,  $m_{\nu,0}$ . We found that there are two regimes: for large masses, above  $m_{\nu,0} \gtrsim 0.5\text{eV}$ , the neutrino lumps become stable and grow increasingly with time, forming larger and larger structures; for small masses (below  $m_{\nu,0} \lesssim 0.5\text{eV}$ ) the neutrino lumps form and dissolve in time, causing oscillations in the neutrino equation of state and in smaller measure also in the energy fraction of Dark Energy, and the total equation of state of  $w_{\phi+\nu}$  due to the strong coupling (see fig. 6.3 and fig. 6.4). This mass-divide of the phenomenology of lumps can be visualized clearly in fig. 6.1.

In the case of stable and growing lumps, the backreaction is strong and we cannot obtain any realistic cosmological evolution. For very high neutrino masses our N-body code is not able to resolve anymore the highly non-linear equations. In these extreme cases all neutrinos cluster into one single structure in the simulation box.

In the case of oscillating lumps, we find an interesting phenomenology. Neutrinos start as relativistic particles in the early Universe, but then due to the “cosmon” coupling and the expanding Universe, their masses increase and they become non-relativistic. This leads to an effective potential with a minimum, that stops the cosmon from rolling down its exponential potential, giving rise to the onset of Dark Energy domination. This minimum causes oscillations in the perturbations of the scalar field, which in turn causes oscillations in the perturbations of the neutrino energy density. When neutrinos are non-relativistic, they tend to attract each other and form large structures, however their acceleration towards the lumps and the oscillations of the cosmon field, turn them again into relativistic particles, which can escape from the newly formed structures. Despite this complicated non-linear interaction between the cosmon and the neutrinos, we find in this regime of small masses, a cosmology compatible with present observations. The total Dark Energy equation of state  $w_{\phi+\nu}$  is very close to  $-1$  and the energy fractions of DE, DM and neutrinos, are compatible with recent observations by the *Planck* satellite Ade et al., 2015 and by lower limits on the neutrino mass given by laboratory experiments (**cite neutrino mass lab**). We also find that the total gravitational potentials in the small  $m_{\nu,0}$  mass regime are not significantly affected by the neutrino lumps. The neutrino contribution to the gravitational potential  $\Phi$  is two to three orders of magnitude smaller than the one coming from Cold Dark Matter particles. Therefore, present constraints on modified gravity coming from the Integrated Sachs-Wolfe effect (**cite Gianantonnio**), can still be respected.

Furthermore, we found a very interesting effect on the neutrino fluid. The acceleration and deceleration towards the neutrino lumps, causes a net increase in the neutrinos kinetic energy, which translates into a shift of the mean of their momentum distribution. Since the neutrino distribution can be well fitted by a Fermi-Dirac distribution, this amounts to an increasing of the neutrino temperature. This effect can be well visualized in fig. 6.6. It could have interesting implications for observations in the far future which plan to put constraints on the Cosmic Neutrino Background (**cite some Cnub paper?**).

This is a good example of a Dark Energy model that cannot be solved using linear theory. The Klein-Gordon equation for the scalar field (eq. (1.83)) is highly

non-linear and the rapid growth of  $\delta_\nu$ , cannot be approximated by linear perturbations. Present Boltzmann codes that are able to solve the GNQ model, start failing already at redshifts of about  $z \approx 10$ , since they cannot follow anymore the oscillations of the neutrino equation of state and the large non-homogeneous values of  $\delta_\nu$ . A previous N-body simulation trying to solve this model (see Baldi et al., 2011), based on Newtonian codes, was also not capable of evolving the neutrino evolution until present time. Therefore in this project we used an N-body code created in our research group Ayaita et al., 2016, which includes both gravitational potentials  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$ , allows for the possibility of having relativistic velocities, takes into account backreaction effects and solves for the “cosmon” field  $\phi$  on a grid, using a multigrid Newton-Gauß-Seidel solver. All these effects come at the cost of a computationally demanding implementation, which is very difficult to parallelize in an optimal way.

## Summary and Outlook

In this thesis we have shown how important it is for future cosmological observations to take into account the effects of non-linear structure formation. This is especially the case if one wishes to discriminate between competing cosmological models in Dark Energy and Modified Gravity, which resemble very closely the evolution of the standard  $\Lambda$ CDM scenario at the background level, but offer quite distinctive features at the level of large scale structure formation.

We have tackled this issue from different angles: semi-analytic prescriptions based on the Halo model (chapter 3), fitting formulae based on simulations (chapter 4), resummation methods for higher-order cosmological perturbation theory (chapter 5) and directly computing, computationally demanding, non-Newtonian N-body simulations in chapter 6.

In all these cases we have seen that taking into account non-linearities yields observable effects that will be measured with high precision in future galaxy surveys. Using only linear theory and limiting the analysis to linear scales, not only worsens the forecasted constraints by more than one order of magnitude (see chapter 3), but can also bias the result (see chapter 4). Even more dramatically, for certain models of Modified Gravity, involving strong “fifth-forces”, the predictions of the model cannot be calculated properly using linear theory, and one is forced to compute all observables, even the background quantities, with the help of specialized N-body simulations (see chapter 6).

In chapter 2 we detail the Fisher matrix method and the code we created to forecast the constraining power of future surveys, using Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing observables. We concentrated on the missions: Euclid, SKA1, SKA2 and DESI. All of them will be started in the next 2 to 10 years. We also explained how we introduce non-linearities into the Fisher matrix formalism and how we deal with the unknown estimation of the power spectrum and the involved sources of noise and errors.

The field of non-linear structure formation and its application to the analysis of cosmological observations is a field which is advancing very rapidly, due to the urgent necessity of understanding this problem in order to gain as much information as possible from future data.

In the near future we would still need to explore several open questions in this field. For example, how degenerate are the Modified Gravity predictions at non-linear scales, with other effects like the neutrino mass, baryonic feedback and the

unknown properties of bias and primordial non-Gaussianities. Especially the effect of baryonic physics at small scales, is of great concern, since it can affect and wash away most cosmological information above a certain wavenumber. This is an open issue that has to be resolved in such a way, that allows future observational cosmologists to discard as little information as possible from small scales.

Another issue we need to solve is how to parameterize optimally the effects of Modified Gravity models. As we have seen in chapter 3, the most parameterization independent way of doing this, is to *pixelize* the evolution of  $\mu(a)$  and  $\eta(a)$  in redshift bins. However, it is not clear how many bins need to be used, which priors can be imposed on these binned parameters and if in general, parameterizing  $\mu$  and  $\eta$  as we have done in chapter 3, is still a valid approach once non-linear corrections are taken consistently into account.

All this can only be investigated once a semi-analytic method (like the resummation method of chapter 5) for computing non-linearities in Modified Gravity theories is mature enough to yield consistent results for a large range of models and parameters. Exploring the model and parameter space will not be feasible in the near future by computing for each model a separate N-body simulation.

In terms of Fisher forecasts, we have shown at the end of chapter 2 how we can go beyond the Gaussian approximation for the likelihood. However, for a proper analysis of non-linear structure formation, we still would need to take into account non-diagonal covariance matrices, cross-correlations among Galaxy Clustering and Weak Lensing and small scale effects modifying our formulas for the Baryon Acoustic Oscillations and Redshift Space Distortions. This will be the subject of future work on the FISHERTOOLS code.

In this thesis we have dealt almost exclusively with the non-linear matter power spectrum. But we know that at highly non-linear scales, this statistical measure cannot give us the full picture. The cosmic web, consisting of voids, sheets and filaments, is not well described by the two-point correlation function. Going to the three-point correlation function (called the bispectrum in Fourier space) can yield already some extra information, although its calculation is quite demanding. However, this will not be enough, and for future data, we will need to find some other statistical measures that can give us clear information of what is happening at the smallest scales. Possible options could be Minkowski functionals, position dependent power spectra, large deviation statistics and massive galaxy clusters, just for naming a few.

Definitely, the next decade of the precision era of cosmology, will be an era of rapid technological advances, impressive developments in theory and statistical tools and many surprising discoveries.



# **Appendix A**

## **To Do Appendix**

## To do...

- 1 (p. iii): Add list of papers
- 2 (p. xxi): write something
- 3 (p. 1): Implement Valerias comments
- 4 (p. 8): Review this according to Javi
- 5 (p. 9): add the  $dx$   $dx$
- 6 (p. 13): change this  $g$  hat thing and rewrite the formalism
- 7 (p. 24): add the m-nu argument  $w=-1+12$  ev
- 8 (p. 31): check units of delta
- 9 (p. 32): add Kevins comments
- 10 (p. 44): Maybe Add derivation of this equation
- 11 (p. 55): Add footnote here and in other chapters about published papers
- 12 (p. 55): check that this intro does not overlap too much with previous chaps
- 13 (p. 58): Check that there is not too much repetition
- 14 (p. 78): Maybe maybe add the correlation matrices for these models
- 15 (p. 81): fix these eqns alignment
- 16 (p. 85): check alignmenent of figs
- 17 (p. 85): fix this
- 18 (p. 92): Add EFT plot
- 19 (p. 94): check for repetitions with other chaps
- 20 (p. 95): check for repetitions
- 21 (p. 100): remove fitting functions part
- 22 (p. 110): correct table size or move to appendix
- 23 (p. 112): check for repetitions and maybe remove some unneeded plots
- 24 (p. 115): Implement Florians comments
- 25 (p. 128): add short derivation, Florians comments, Schwinger Dyson, SPT, explain 1-loop terms shortly
- 26 (p. 132): Valerias comments, comment on data
- 27 (p. 132): Improve labels and legs of figs

- 28 (p. 137): maybe maybe an image
- 29 (p. 139): check for repetition and remove or merge
- 30 (p. 154): check for repetitions and shorten
- 31 (p. 155): think what to do with these appendices
- 32 (p. 159): finish conclusions



# Bibliography

- [1] Ade, P.A.R. et al. "Planck 2015 results. XIII. Cosmological parameters". In: (2015) (cit. on pp. 97, 165).
- [2] Agarwal, Shankar et al. "PkANN - I. Non-linear matter power spectrum interpolation through artificial neural networks". In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 424.2 (Aug. 2012), pp. 1409–1418. ISSN: 00358711. DOI: [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2012.21326.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2012.21326.x). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1203.1695> (cit. on p. 95).
- [3] Agarwal, Shankar et al. "PkANN - II. A non-linear matter power spectrum interpolator developed using artificial neural networks". In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 439.2 (Mar. 2014), pp. 2102–2121. ISSN: 0035-8711, 1365-2966. DOI: [10.1093/mnras/stu090](https://doi.org/10.1093/mnras/stu090). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1312.2101> (cit. on p. 95).
- [4] Alcock, Charles and Paczyński, Bohdan. "An evolution free test for non-zero cosmological constant". en. In: *Nature* 281.5730 (Oct. 1979), pp. 358–359. DOI: [10.1038/281358a0](https://doi.org/10.1038/281358a0). URL: <http://www.nature.com/nature/journal/v281/n5730/abs/281358a0.html> (cit. on pp. 38, 50).
- [5] Alonso, David et al. "The Observational Future of Cosmological Scalar-Tensor Theories". In: *arXiv:1610.09290 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc, physics:hep-th]* (Oct. 2016). arXiv: 1610.09290. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1610.09290> (cit. on pp. 20, 55, 56).
- [6] Amendola, Luca. "Coupled quintessence". In: *Phys. Rev.* D62 (2000), p. 043511. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.62.043511](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.62.043511) (cit. on pp. 15, 96, 97).
- [7] Amendola, Luca. "Linear and non-linear perturbations in dark energy models". In: *Phys. Rev.* D69 (2004), p. 103524. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.69.103524](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.69.103524) (cit. on pp. 23, 96, 97).
- [8] Amendola, Luca, Baldi, Marco, and Wetterich, Christof. "Growing Matter". In: *Physical Review D* 78.2 (July 2008). ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.78.023015](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.78.023015). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/0706.3064> (cit. on p. 24).
- [9] Amendola, Luca and others. "Cosmology and fundamental physics with the Euclid satellite". In: *Living Reviews in Relativity* 16 (2013). ISSN: 1433-8351. DOI: [10.12942/lrr-2013-6](https://doi.org/10.12942/lrr-2013-6). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1206.1225> (cit. on pp. 40, 41, 55).
- [10] Amendola, Luca and Quercellini, Claudia. "Skewness as a test of the equivalence principle". In: *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 92 (2004), p. 181102. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.92.181102](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.92.181102) (cit. on p. 96).
- [11] Amendola, Luca and Tsujikawa, Shinji. *Dark Energy: Theory and Observations*. en. Cambridge University Press, June 2010. ISBN: 978-1-139-48857-0 (cit. on pp. 7, 15–17, 156).

- [12] Amendola, Luca et al. "Cosmology and fundamental physics with the Euclid satellite". In: *arXiv:1206.1225 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc, physics:hep-ph]* (June 2012). arXiv: 1206.1225. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1206.1225> (cit. on pp. 96, 105, 107, 108).
- [13] Amendola, Luca et al. "Observables and unobservables in dark energy cosmologies". In: *Physical Review D* 87 (Jan. 2013), p. 023501. ISSN: 0556-2821. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.87.023501](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.87.023501). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1210.0439> (cit. on p. 19).
- [14] Amendola, Luca et al. "Testing coupled dark energy with next-generation large-scale observations". In: *Physical Review D* 85.10 (May 2012). ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.85.103008](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.85.103008). URL: <http://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevD.85.103008> (cit. on p. 96).
- [15] Amendola, Luca et al. "Testing coupled dark energy with next-generation large-scale observations". In: *Physical Review D* 85.10 (May 2012). ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.85.103008](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.85.103008). URL: <http://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevD.85.103008> (cit. on p. 106).
- [16] Anselmi, Stefano and Pietroni, Massimo. "Nonlinear power spectrum from resummed perturbation theory: a leap beyond the BAO scale". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2012.12 (2012), p. 013. URL: <http://iopscience.iop.org/1475-7516/2012/12/013> (cit. on pp. 115, 123, 128, 130, 133).
- [17] Anselmi, Stefano and Pietroni, Massimo. "Nonlinear power spectrum from resummed perturbation theory: a leap beyond the BAO scale". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2012.12 (2012), p. 013. URL: <http://iopscience.iop.org/1475-7516/2012/12/013> (cit. on p. 96).
- [18] Audren, Benjamin et al. "Neutrino masses and cosmological parameters from a Euclid-like survey: Markov Chain Monte Carlo forecasts including theoretical errors". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2013.01 (Jan. 2013), pp. 026–026. ISSN: 1475-7516. DOI: [10.1088/1475-7516/2013/01/026](https://doi.org/10.1088/1475-7516/2013/01/026). URL: <http://stacks.iop.org/1475-7516/2013/i=01/a=026?key=crossref.0594fc507c5faa23a2ba7c9ccb91b7e1> (cit. on p. 95).
- [19] Ayaita, Youness, Weber, Maik, and Wetterich, Christof. "Neutrino lump fluid in growing neutrino quintessence". In: *Physical Review D* 87.4 (Feb. 2013), p. 043519 (cit. on pp. 24, 140, 144).
- [20] Ayaita, Youness, Weber, Maik, and Wetterich, Christof. "Structure formation and backreaction in growing neutrino quintessence". In: *Physical Review D* 85.12 (2012), p. 123010. URL: <http://prd.aps.org/abstract/PRD/v85/i12/e123010> (cit. on pp. 24, 26, 140, 143, 144, 146, 164).
- [21] Ayaita, Youness et al. "Nonlinear growing neutrino cosmology". In: *Physical Review D* 93.6 (Mar. 2016), p. 063511 (cit. on pp. 24, 26, 27, 140, 141, 143, 166).
- [22] Bailoni, Alberto, Spurio Mancini, Alessio, and Amendola, Luca. "Improving Fisher matrix forecasts for galaxy surveys: window function, bin cross-correlation, and bin redshift uncertainty". In: *ArXiv e-prints* 1608 (Aug. 2016), arXiv:1608.00458. URL: <http://adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/2016arXiv160800458B> (cit. on p. 36).

- [23] Baker, Tessa and Bull, Philip. "Observational signatures of modified gravity on ultra-large scales". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 811.2 (Sept. 2015), p. 116. ISSN: 1538-4357. DOI: [10.1088/0004-637X/811/2/116](https://doi.org/10.1088/0004-637X/811/2/116). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1506.00641> (cit. on pp. 55, 85).
- [24] Baldi, Marco. "Clarifying the effects of interacting dark energy on linear and non-linear structure formation processes". en. In: *MNRAS* 414.1 (June 2011), pp. 116–128. ISSN: 0035-8711, 1365-2966. DOI: [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2011.18263.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2011.18263.x). URL: <http://mnras.oxfordjournals.org/content/414/1/116> (cit. on pp. 23, 96).
- [25] Baldi, Marco. "Dark Energy Simulations". In: *Phys.Dark Univ.* 1 (2012), pp. 162–193. DOI: [10.1016/j.dark.2012.10.004](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dark.2012.10.004) (cit. on p. 96).
- [26] Baldi, Marco. "The codecs project: a publicly available suite of cosmological N-body simulations for interacting dark energy models". en. In: *MNRAS* 422.2 (May 2012), pp. 1028–1044. ISSN: 0035-8711, 1365-2966. DOI: [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2012.20675.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2012.20675.x). URL: <http://mnras.oxfordjournals.org/content/422/2/1028> (cit. on pp. 23, 96–98, 100, 112).
- [27] Baldi, Marco. "Time-dependent couplings in the dark sector: from background evolution to non-linear structure formation". In: *MNRAS* 411 (Feb. 2011), pp. 1077–1103. DOI: [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2010.17758.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2010.17758.x) (cit. on p. 23).
- [28] Baldi, Marco, Lee, Joung-hun, and Maccio, Andrea V. "The effect of coupled dark energy on the alignment between dark matter and galaxy distributions in clusters". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 732.2 (2011), p. 112. URL: <http://iopscience.iop.org/0004-637X/732/2/112> (cit. on p. 96).
- [29] Baldi, Marco et al. "Hydrodynamical N-body simulations of coupled dark energy cosmologies". In: *MNRAS* 403 (Apr. 2010), pp. 1684–1702. DOI: [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2009.15987.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2009.15987.x) (cit. on pp. 23, 96, 97).
- [30] Baldi, Marco et al. "Hydrodynamical N-body simulations of coupled dark energy cosmologies". In: *\textbackslash textbackslash textbackslash mnras* 403 (Apr. 2010), pp. 1684–1702. DOI: [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2009.15987.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2009.15987.x) (cit. on pp. 26, 146).
- [31] Baldi, Marco et al. "Oscillating non-linear large-scale structures in growing neutrino quintessence". en. In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 418.1 (2011), pp. 214–229. ISSN: 1365-2966. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1106.2161> (cit. on pp. 24, 25, 143, 144, 166).
- [32] Ballinger, W. E., Peacock, J. A., and Heavens, A. F. "Measuring the cosmological constant with redshift surveys". In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 282 (Oct. 1996), p. 877. ISSN: 0035-8711. DOI: [10.1093/mnras/282.3.877](https://doi.org/10.1093/mnras/282.3.877). URL: <http://adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/1996MNRAS.282..877B> (cit. on p. 38).
- [33] Baumann, Daniel et al. "Cosmological Non-Linearities as an Effective Fluid". In: *arXiv:1004.2488 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc, physics:hep-th]* (Apr. 2010). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1004.2488> (cit. on p. 96).
- [34] Baumann, Daniel et al. "Cosmological non-linearities as an effective fluid". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2012.07 (2012), p. 051. URL: <http://iopscience.iop.org/1475-7516/2012/07/051> (cit. on p. 123).

- [35] Baumann, Daniel et al. "Cosmological non-linearities as an effective fluid". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2012.07 (2012), p. 051. URL: <http://iopscience.iop.org/1475-7516/2012/07/051> (cit. on p. 101).
- [36] Bell, Anthony J. and Sejnowski, Terrence J. "The "independent components" of natural scenes are edge filters". In: *Vision Research* 37.23 (1997), pp. 3327–3338. ISSN: 0042-6989. DOI: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0042-6989\(97\)00121-1](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0042-6989(97)00121-1). URL: <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0042698997001211> (cit. on pp. 66, 74).
- [37] Bellini, Emilio and Sawicki, Ignacy. "Maximal freedom at minimum cost: linear large-scale structure in general modifications of gravity". In: *arXiv:1404.3713 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc]* (Apr. 2014). arXiv: 1404.3713. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1404.3713> (cit. on p. 56).
- [38] Bellini, Emilio et al. "Constraints on deviations from  $\Lambda$ CDM within Horndeski gravity". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2016.02 (Feb. 2016). arXiv: 1509.07816, pp. 053–053. ISSN: 1475-7516. DOI: <10.1088/1475-7516/2016/02/053>. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1509.07816> (cit. on p. 56).
- [39] Berges, J., Borsanyi, S., and Wetterich, C. "Prethermalization". In: *Physical Review Letters* 93.14 (Sept. 2004). arXiv: hep-ph/0403234. ISSN: 0031-9007, 1079-7114. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/hep-ph/0403234> (cit. on p. 150).
- [40] Bernardeau, F. et al. "Large-Scale Structure of the Universe and Cosmological Perturbation Theory". In: *arXiv:astro-ph/0112551* (Dec. 2001). DOI: [10.1016/S0370-1573\(02\)00135-7](10.1016/S0370-1573(02)00135-7). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0112551> (cit. on pp. 119, 121).
- [41] Bernardeau, Francis. "The evolution of the large-scale structure of the universe: beyond the linear regime". In: *arXiv:1311.2724 [astro-ph]* (Nov. 2013). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1311.2724> (cit. on p. 123).
- [42] Bertotti, B., Iess, L., and Tortora, P. "A test of general relativity using radio links with the Cassini spacecraft". In: *Nature* 425 (2003), p. 374. DOI: <10.1038/nature01997> (cit. on p. 22).
- [43] Bi, Xiao-Jun et al. "Cosmological Evolution of Interacting Dark Energy Models with Mass Varying Neutrinos". In: *Physical Review D* 72.12 (Dec. 2005). arXiv: hep-ph/0412002. ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/hep-ph/0412002> (cit. on p. 24).
- [44] Bielefeld, Jannis, Huterer, Dragan, and Linder, Eric V. "Cosmological Lever-age from the Matter Power Spectrum in the Presence of Baryon and Non-linear Effects". In: *SciRate* (Nov. 2014). URL: <https://scirate.com/arxiv/1411.3725> (cit. on pp. 55, 95).
- [45] Bird, Simeon, Viel, Matteo, and Haehnelt, Martin G. "Massive Neutrinos and the Non-linear Matter Power Spectrum". In: *arXiv:1109.4416* (Sept. 2011). DOI: <10.1111/j.1365-2966.2011.20222.x>. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1109.4416> (cit. on pp. 58, 95).

- [46] Blas, Diego et al. "Time-sliced perturbation theory II: baryon acoustic oscillations and infrared resummation". en. In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2016.07 (2016), p. 028. ISSN: 1475-7516. DOI: [10.1088/1475-7516/2016/07/028](https://doi.org/10.1088/1475-7516/2016/07/028). URL: <http://stacks.iop.org/1475-7516/2016/i=07/a=028>.
- [47] Brookfield, A. W. et al. "Cosmology of Mass-Varying Neutrinos Driven by Quintessence: Theory and Observations". In: *Physical Review D* 76.4 (Aug. 2007). arXiv: astro-ph/0512367. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0512367> (cit. on pp. 24, 139, 146, 155).
- [48] Brouzakis, N. et al. "Nonlinear matter spectra in growing neutrino quintessence". In: *JCAP* 1103 (2011), p. 049. DOI: [10.1088/1475-7516/2011/03/049](https://doi.org/10.1088/1475-7516/2011/03/049) (cit. on pp. 24, 58, 151).
- [49] Bull, Philip. "Extending cosmological tests of General Relativity with the Square Kilometre Array". In: *arXiv:1509.07562 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc]* (Sept. 2015). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1509.07562> (cit. on pp. 20, 55, 85).
- [50] Bull, Philip et al. "Measuring baryon acoustic oscillations with future SKA surveys". In: *arXiv:1501.04088 [astro-ph]* (Jan. 2015). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1501.04088> (cit. on p. 41).
- [51] Carlesi, E. et al. "Hydrodynamical simulations of coupled and uncoupled quintessence models - I. Halo properties and the cosmic web". In: *MNRAS* 439 (Apr. 2014), pp. 2943–2957. DOI: [10.1093/mnras/stu150](https://doi.org/10.1093/mnras/stu150) (cit. on p. 23).
- [52] Carlesi, E. et al. "Hydrodynamical simulations of coupled and uncoupled quintessence models - I. Halo properties and the cosmic web". In: *\textbackslash textbackslash mnras* 439 (Apr. 2014), pp. 2943–2957. DOI: [10.1093/mnras/stu150](https://doi.org/10.1093/mnras/stu150) (cit. on p. 96).
- [53] Carrasco, John Joseph M., Hertzberg, Mark P., and Senatore, Leonardo. "The effective field theory of cosmological large scale structures". In: *Journal of High Energy Physics* 2012.9 (2012), pp. 1–40. URL: [http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/JHEP09\(2012\)082](http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/JHEP09(2012)082) (cit. on p. 123).
- [54] Casas, Santiago, Pettorino, Valeria, and Wetterich, Christof. "Dynamics of neutrino lumps in growing neutrino quintessence". In: *arXiv:1608.02358 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc, physics:hep-ph]* (Aug. 2016). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1608.02358> (cit. on p. 165).
- [55] Casas, Santiago et al. "Fitting and forecasting non-linear coupled dark energy". In: *arXiv:1508.07208 [astro-ph]* (Aug. 2015). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1508.07208> (cit. on pp. 40, 44, 55, 58, 163).
- [56] Collaboration, Planck. "Planck 2015 results. XIV. Dark energy and modified gravity". In: *arXiv:1502.01590 [astro-ph]* (Feb. 2015). arXiv: 1502.01590. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1502.01590> (cit. on pp. 96, 107).
- [57] Colombi, Stéphane et al. "Accurate estimators of power spectra in  $N$ -body simulations". In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 393.2 (Feb. 2009), pp. 511–526. ISSN: 00358711, 13652966. DOI: [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2008.14176.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2008.14176.x). URL: <http://mnras.oxfordjournals.org/cgi/doi/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2008.14176.x> (cit. on pp. 98, 106).

- [58] Creminelli, Paolo et al. "Single-Field Consistency Relations of Large Scale Structure. Part III: Test of the Equivalence Principle". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2014.06 (June 2014), pp. 009–009. ISSN: 1475-7516. DOI: [10.1088/1475-7516/2014/06/009](https://doi.org/10.1088/1475-7516/2014/06/009). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1312.6074> (cit. on p. 96).
- [59] Crocce, Martín and Scoccimarro, Román. "Memory of initial conditions in gravitational clustering". In: *Physical Review D* 73.6 (Mar. 2006). ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.73.063520](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.73.063520). URL: <http://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevD.73.063520> (cit. on p. 101).
- [60] Crocce, Martín and Scoccimarro, Román. "Renormalized cosmological perturbation theory". In: *Physical Review D* 73.6 (Mar. 2006), p. 063519. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.73.063519](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.73.063519). URL: <http://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevD.73.063519> (cit. on pp. 96, 130).
- [61] Cui, Weiguang, Baldi, Marco, and Borgani, Stefano. "The halo mass function in interacting Dark Energy models". In: *arXiv:1201.3568* (Jan. 2012). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1201.3568> (cit. on p. 96).
- [62] Cui, Weiguang et al. "An ideal mass assignment scheme for measuring the Power Spectrum with FFTs". In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:0804.0070* (2008). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/0804.0070> (cit. on p. 98).
- [63] Das, Subinoy, Corasaniti, Pier Stefano, and Khouri, Justin. "Super-acceleration as Signature of Dark Sector Interaction". In: *Physical Review D* 73.8 (Apr. 2006). arXiv: astro-ph/0510628. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0510628> (cit. on pp. 146, 155).
- [64] DESI Collaboration, Aghamousa, Amir, and others. "The DESI Experiment Part I: Science, Targeting, and Survey Design". In: *arXiv:1611.00036 [astro-ph]* (Oct. 2016). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1611.00036> (cit. on pp. 41, 42).
- [65] DESI Collaboration, Aghamousa, Amir, and others. "The DESI Experiment Part II: Instrument Design". In: *arXiv:1611.00037 [astro-ph]* (Oct. 2016). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1611.00037> (cit. on p. 41).
- [66] Fardon, Rob, Nelson, Ann E., and Weiner, Neal. "Dark Energy from Mass Varying Neutrinos". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2004.10 (Oct. 2004). arXiv: astro-ph/0309800, pp. 005–005. ISSN: 1475-7516. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0309800> (cit. on p. 24).
- [67] Feldman, Hume A., Kaiser, Nick, and Peacock, John A. "Power Spectrum Analysis of Three-Dimensional Redshift Surveys". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 426 (May 1994), p. 23. ISSN: 0004-637X, 1538-4357. DOI: [10.1086/174036](https://doi.org/10.1086/174036). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/9304022> (cit. on pp. 38, 103).
- [68] Fosalba, P. et al. "The MICE Grand Challenge Lightcone Simulation I: Dark matter clustering". In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1312.1707* (2013). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1312.1707> (cit. on pp. 58, 103).
- [69] Fosalba, P. et al. "The MICE Grand Challenge Lightcone Simulation I: Dark matter clustering". In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1312.1707* (2013). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1312.1707> (cit. on p. 106).

- [70] Friedman, Jerome H. "Exploratory Projection Pursuit". In: *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 82.397 (1987), pp. 249–266. DOI: [10.1080/01621459.1987.10478427](https://doi.org/10.1080/01621459.1987.10478427). eprint: <http://amstat.tandfonline.com/doi/pdf/10.1080/01621459.1987.10478427>. URL: <http://amstat.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/01621459.1987.10478427> (cit. on p. 75).
- [71] Führer, Florian and Wetterich, Christof. "Backreaction in growing neutrino quintessence". In: *Physical Review D* 91 (June 2015), p. 123542. URL: <http://adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/2015PhRvD..9113542F> (cit. on pp. 24, 27, 140, 154, 165).
- [72] Gleyzes, Jérôme et al. "Effective Theory of Dark Energy at Redshift Survey Scales". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2016.02 (Feb. 2016). arXiv: 1509.02191, pp. 056–056. ISSN: 1475-7516. DOI: [10.1088/1475-7516/2016/02/056](https://doi.org/10.1088/1475-7516/2016/02/056). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1509.02191> (cit. on pp. 18, 20, 55, 56).
- [73] Gubitosi, Giulia, Piazza, Federico, and Vernizzi, Filippo. "The Effective Field Theory of Dark Energy". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2013.02 (Feb. 2013). arXiv: 1210.0201, pp. 032–032. ISSN: 1475-7516. DOI: [10.1088/1475-7516/2013/02/032](https://doi.org/10.1088/1475-7516/2013/02/032). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1210.0201> (cit. on pp. 17, 56).
- [74] Hamilton, P. et al. "Atom-interferometry constraints on dark energy". In: *ArXiv e-prints* (Feb. 2015) (cit. on p. 22).
- [75] Hamilton, Paul et al. "Atom-interferometry constraints on dark energy". In: (2015) (cit. on p. 96).
- [76] Harrison, Ian et al. "SKA Weak Lensing I: Cosmological Forecasts and the Power of Radio-Optical Cross-Correlations". In: *arXiv:1601.03947 [astro-ph]* (Jan. 2016). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1601.03947> (cit. on p. 41).
- [77] Heitmann, Katrin et al. "The Coyote Universe Extended: Precision Emulation of the Matter Power Spectrum". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 780.1 (2014), p. 111. URL: <http://iopscience.iop.org/0004-637X/780/1/111> (cit. on pp. 46, 58, 95, 102, 105, 112).
- [78] Heitmann, Katrin et al. "The Coyote Universe. I. Precision determination of the nonlinear matter power spectrum". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 715.1 (2010), p. 104. URL: <http://iopscience.iop.org/0004-637X/715/1/104> (cit. on pp. 46, 95).
- [79] Heymans, Catherine and others. "CFHTLenS tomographic weak lensing cosmological parameter constraints: Mitigating the impact of intrinsic galaxy alignments". In: *Mon. Not. Roy. Astron. Soc.* 432 (2013), p. 2433. DOI: [10.1093/mnras/stt601](https://doi.org/10.1093/mnras/stt601) (cit. on p. 58).
- [80] Hojjati, Alireza, Pogosian, Levon, and Zhao, Gong-Bo. "Testing gravity with CAMB and CosmoMC". In: *JCAP* 1108 (2011), p. 005. DOI: [10.1088/1475-7516/2011/08/005](https://doi.org/10.1088/1475-7516/2011/08/005) (cit. on pp. 55, 57, 79, 84).
- [81] Hojjati, Alireza et al. "Cosmological tests of General Relativity: a principal component analysis". In: *Phys. Rev. D* 85 (2012), p. 043508. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.85.043508](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.85.043508). URL: <https://arxiv.org/abs/1111.3960> (cit. on pp. 55, 58).

- [82] Hu, Bin et al. "EFTCAMB/EFTCosmoMC: massive neutrinos in dark cosmologies". In: *arXiv:1410.5807 [astro-ph]* (Oct. 2014). arXiv: 1410.5807. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1410.5807> (cit. on p. 134).
- [83] Hu, Wayne and Sawicki, Ignacy. "A Parameterized Post-Friedmann Framework for Modified Gravity". In: *Phys.Rev.* D76 (2007), p. 104043. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.76.104043](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.76.104043) (cit. on pp. 55, 60, 61).
- [84] Hu, Wayne and Sugiyama, Naoshi. "Small Scale Cosmological Perturbations: An Analytic Approach". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 471.2 (Nov. 1996), pp. 542–570. ISSN: 0004-637X, 1538-4357. DOI: [10.1086/177989](https://doi.org/10.1086/177989). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/9510117> (cit. on p. 61).
- [85] Jenkins, Adrian et al. "Galaxy clustering determined from numerical cosmological simulations". In: *arXiv:astro-ph/9906039* (June 1999). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/9906039> (cit. on p. 98).
- [86] Kaiser, Nick. "Clustering in real space and in redshift space". In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 227 (July 1987), pp. 1–21. ISSN: 0035-8711. URL: <http://adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/1987MNRAS.227...1K> (cit. on pp. 38, 106).
- [87] Kaplan, David B., Nelson, Ann E., and Weiner, Neal. "Neutrino Oscillations as a Probe of Dark Energy". In: *Physical Review Letters* 93.9 (Aug. 2004). arXiv: hep-ph/0401099. ISSN: 0031-9007, 1079-7114. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/hep-ph/0401099> (cit. on p. 24).
- [88] Kessy, Agnan, Lewin, Alex, and Strimmer, Korbinian. "Optimal whitening and decorrelation". In: *arXiv:1512.00809 [stat]* (Dec. 2015). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1512.00809> (cit. on pp. 66, 75, 76).
- [89] Kitching, T. D. and others. "3D Cosmic Shear: Cosmology from CFHTLenS". In: *Mon. Not. Roy. Astron. Soc.* 442.2 (2014), pp. 1326–1349. DOI: [10.1093/mnras/stu934](https://doi.org/10.1093/mnras/stu934) (cit. on p. 58).
- [90] Komatsu, E. et al. "Seven-Year Wilkinson Microwave Anisotropy Probe (WMAP) Observations: Cosmological Interpretation". In: *arXiv:1001.4538* (Jan. 2010). DOI: [10.1088/0067-0049/192/2/18](https://doi.org/10.1088/0067-0049/192/2/18). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1001.4538> (cit. on p. 97).
- [91] Koyama, Kazuya, Taruya, Atsushi, and Hiramatsu, Takashi. "Non-linear Evolution of Matter Power Spectrum in Modified Theory of Gravity". In: *Physical Review D* 79.12 (June 2009). ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.79.123512](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.79.123512). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/0902.0618> (cit. on pp. 60, 89).
- [92] Kullback, S. and Leibler, R. A. "On Information and Sufficiency". EN. In: *The Annals of Mathematical Statistics* 22.1 (Mar. 1951), pp. 79–86. ISSN: 0003-4851, 2168-8990. DOI: [10.1214/aoms/1177729694](https://doi.org/10.1214/aoms/1177729694). URL: <http://projecteuclid.org/euclid.aoms/1177729694> (cit. on p. 43).
- [93] Kunz, M. et al. "Constraining topology in harmonic space". In: *Physical Review D* 73.2 (Jan. 2006). ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.73.023511](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.73.023511). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0510164> (cit. on p. 43).
- [94] Kunz, Martin. "The phenomenological approach to modeling the dark energy". In: *Comptes Rendus Physique* 13.6-7 (July 2012), pp. 539–565. ISSN: 16310705. DOI: [10.1016/j.crhy.2012.04.007](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.crhy.2012.04.007). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1204.5482> (cit. on p. 19).

- [95] La Vacca, Giuseppe and Mota, David F. "Mass-varying neutrino in light of cosmic microwave background and weak lensing". In: *Astronomy & Astrophysics* 560 (Dec. 2013). arXiv: 1205.6059, A53. ISSN: 0004-6361, 1432-0746. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1205.6059> (cit. on p. 24).
- [96] Lacasa, Fabien and Rosenfeld, Rogerio. "Combining cluster number counts and galaxy clustering". In: *JCAP* 1608 (Mar. 2016), p. 005. DOI: [10.1088/1475-7516/2016/08/005](https://doi.org/10.1088/1475-7516/2016/08/005). URL: <https://arxiv.org/abs/1603.00918> (cit. on p. 72).
- [97] Laureijs, R. and others. "Euclid Definition Study Report". In: *arXiv:1110.3193 [astro-ph]* (Oct. 2011). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1110.3193> (cit. on pp. 40, 41, 78, 96, 107).
- [98] Lawrence, Earl et al. "The coyote universe. III. simulation suite and precision emulator for the nonlinear matter power spectrum". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 713.2 (2010), p. 1322. URL: <http://iopscience.iop.org/0004-637X/713/2/1322> (cit. on pp. 58, 95).
- [99] Lesgourges, Julien et al. "Non-linear power spectrum including massive neutrinos: the time-RG flow approach". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astroparticle Physics* 2009.06 (2009), p. 017. URL: <http://iopscience.iop.org/1475-7516/2009/06/017> (cit. on p. 96).
- [100] Levi, Michael et al. "The DESI Experiment, a whitepaper for Snowmass 2013". In: *arXiv:1308.0847 [astro-ph]* (Aug. 2013). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1308.0847> (cit. on p. 41).
- [101] Lewis, Antony. "Efficient sampling of fast and slow cosmological parameters". In: *Phys. Rev.* D87.10 (2013), p. 103529. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.87.103529](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.87.103529) (cit. on p. 60).
- [102] Lewis, Antony and Bridle, Sarah. "Cosmological parameters from CMB and other data: A Monte Carlo approach". In: *Phys. Rev.* D66 (2002), p. 103511. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.66.103511](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.66.103511) (cit. on p. 60).
- [103] Lewis, Antony, Challinor, Anthony, and Lasenby, Anthony. "Efficient Computation of CMB anisotropies in closed FRW models". In: *arXiv:astro-ph/9911177* (Nov. 1999). *Astrophys.J.*538:473-476,2000. DOI: [10.1086/309179](https://doi.org/10.1086/309179). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/9911177> (cit. on p. 102).
- [104] Lewis, Antony, Challinor, Anthony, and Lasenby, Anthony. "Efficient Computation of CMB anisotropies in closed FRW models". In: *Astrophys. J.* 538 (2000), pp. 473–476. DOI: [10.1086/309179](https://doi.org/10.1086/309179) (cit. on pp. 18, 46, 57, 132, 139).
- [105] Li, Baojiu and Barrow, John D. "N-Body Simulations for Coupled Scalar Field Cosmology". In: *Phys. Rev.* D83 (2011), p. 024007. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.83.024007](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.83.024007) (cit. on pp. 23, 96).
- [106] Lucchin, F. and Matarrese, S. "Power Law Inflation". In: *Phys. Rev.* D32 (1985), p. 1316. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.32.1316](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.32.1316) (cit. on p. 23).
- [107] Macciò, Andrea V. et al. "N-body simulations for coupled dark energy: halo mass function and density profiles". In: *Phys. Rev.* D69 (2004), p. 123516. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.69.123516](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.69.123516) (cit. on p. 23).
- [108] Maccio, A.V. et al. "Coupled dark energy: Parameter constraints from N-body simulations". In: *Physical Review D* 69.12 (June 2004), p. 123516. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.69.123516](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.69.123516). URL: <http://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevD.69.123516> (cit. on p. 96).

- [109] Macciò, Andrea V., Dutton, Aaron A., and Bosch, Frank C. van den. “Concentration, spin and shape of dark matter haloes as a function of the cosmological model: WMAP 1, WMAP 3 and WMAP 5 results”. en. In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 391.4 (Dec. 2008), pp. 1940–1954. ISSN: 00358711, 13652966. DOI: [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2008.14029.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2008.14029.x). URL: <http://mnras.oxfordjournals.org/cgi/doi/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2008.14029.x> (cit. on p. 96).
- [110] Mainini, Roberto and Bonometto, Silvio. “Mass functions in coupled Dark Energy models”. In: *arXiv:astro-ph/0605621* (May 2006). DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.74.043504](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.74.043504). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0605621> (cit. on p. 96).
- [111] Manzotti, Alessandro et al. “A coarse grained perturbation theory for the Large Scale Structure, with cosmology and time independence in the UV”. In: *arXiv:1407.1342 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc, physics:hep-th]* (July 2014). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1407.1342> (cit. on p. 123).
- [112] Manzotti, Alessandro et al. “A coarse grained perturbation theory for the Large Scale Structure, with cosmology and time independence in the UV”. In: *arXiv:1407.1342 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc, physics:hep-th]* (July 2014). arXiv: 1407.1342. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1407.1342> (cit. on p. 101).
- [113] Mohammed, Irshad and Seljak, Uros. “Analytic model for the matter power spectrum, its covariance matrix, and baryonic effects”. In: *Mon.Not.Roy.Astron.Soc.* 445 (Dec. 2014), pp. 3382–3400. DOI: [10.1093/mnras/stu1972](https://doi.org/10.1093/mnras/stu1972) (cit. on p. 95).
- [114] Morris, Sophie C. F. and Green, Anne M. “Cosmic microwave background constraints on coupled dark matter”. In: *Phys.Lett. B* 741 (Dec. 2014), pp. 51–54. DOI: [10.1016/j.physletb.2014.12.025](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.physletb.2014.12.025) (cit. on p. 96).
- [115] Mota, D. F. et al. “Neutrino clustering in growing neutrino quintessence”. In: *Physics Letters B* 663.3 (May 2008), pp. 160–164 (cit. on pp. 24, 26, 139).
- [116] Olive, K. A. et al. “Review of Particle Physics”. In: *Chin. Phys. C* 38 (2014), p. 090001. DOI: [10.1088/1674-1137/38/9/090001](https://doi.org/10.1088/1674-1137/38/9/090001) (cit. on pp. 17, 22, 114, 163).
- [117] Orsi, Alvaro et al. “Probing dark energy with future redshift surveys: A comparison of emission line and broad band selection in the near infrared”. In: *Mon.Not.Roy.Astron.Soc.* 405 (2010), p. 1006. DOI: [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2010.16585.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2010.16585.x) (cit. on p. 107).
- [118] Pace, F., Waizmann, J. C., and Bartelmann, M. “Spherical collapse model in dark energy cosmologies”. In: *arXiv:1005.0233* (2010) (cit. on p. 23).
- [119] Penzo, C. et al. “Effects of Coupled Dark Energy on the Milky Way and its Satellites”. In: *ArXiv e-prints* (Apr. 2015) (cit. on p. 96).
- [120] Perrotta, Francesca and Baccigalupi, Carlo. “On the dark energy clustering properties”. In: *Physical Review D* 65.12 (May 2002). arXiv: astro-ph/0201335. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0201335> (cit. on pp. 146, 155).
- [121] Perrotta, Francesca, Baccigalupi, Carlo, and Matarrese, Sabino. “Extended Quintessence”. In: *Physical Review D* 61.2 (Dec. 1999). arXiv: astro-ph/9906066. ISSN: 0556-2821, 1089-4918. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/9906066> (cit. on pp. 146, 155).

- [122] Pettorino, Valeria. "Testing modified gravity with Planck: the case of coupled dark energy". In: *Phys. Rev. D* 88, 063519 (2013) (cit. on pp. 96, 106, 107).
- [123] Pettorino, Valeria and Baccigalupi, Carlo. "Coupled and Extended Quintessence: theoretical differences and structure formation". In: *Phys. Rev.* D77 (2008), p. 103003. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.77.103003](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.77.103003) (cit. on pp. 23, 96, 97).
- [124] Pettorino, Valeria et al. "Constraints on coupled dark energy using CMB data from WMAP and SPT". In: *Phys. Rev.* D86 (2012), p. 103507. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.86.103507](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.86.103507) (cit. on p. 96).
- [125] Pettorino, Valeria et al. "Neutrino lumps and the cosmic microwave background". In: *Physical Review D* 82.12 (2010), p. 123001. URL: <http://prd.aps.org/abstract/PRD/v82/i12/e123001> (cit. on pp. 24–26, 139, 147, 151, 154).
- [126] Pietroni, Massimo. "Flowing with Time: a New Approach to Nonlinear Cosmological Perturbations". In: *JCAP* 0810 (2008), p. 036. DOI: [10.1088/1475-7516/2008/10/036](https://doi.org/10.1088/1475-7516/2008/10/036) (cit. on pp. 58, 119, 121, 124).
- [127] Pietroni, Massimo. "Flowing with Time: a New Approach to Nonlinear Cosmological Perturbations". In: *JCAP* 0810 (2008), p. 036. DOI: [10.1088/1475-7516/2008/10/036](https://doi.org/10.1088/1475-7516/2008/10/036) (cit. on p. 96).
- [128] Pietroni, Massimo et al. "Coarse-Grained Cosmological Perturbation Theory". In: *arXiv:1108.5203 [astro-ph, physics:hep-th]* (Aug. 2011). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1108.5203> (cit. on pp. 101, 123).
- [129] Planck Collaboration, Ade, P. A. R., and others. "Planck 2015 results. XIII. Cosmological parameters". In: *Astronomy and Astrophysics* 594 (Sept. 2016), A13. ISSN: 0004-6361. DOI: [10.1051/0004-6361/201525830](https://doi.org/10.1051/0004-6361/201525830). URL: <http://adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/2016A&A...594A..13P> (cit. on p. 6).
- [130] Planck Collaboration, Ade, P. A. R., and others. "Planck 2015 results. XIV. Dark energy and modified gravity". In: *Astronomy and Astrophysics* 594 (Sept. 2016), A14. DOI: [10.1051/0004-6361/201525814](https://doi.org/10.1051/0004-6361/201525814). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1502.01590> (cit. on pp. 18–20, 55, 56, 58, 60, 73, 77, 93).
- [131] Pogosian, L. et al. "How to optimally parametrize deviations from general relativity in the evolution of cosmological perturbations". In: *Phys. Rev.* D81.10, 104023 (May 2010), p. 104023. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.81.104023](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.81.104023). arXiv: [1002.2382 \[astro-ph.CO\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1002.2382) (cit. on p. 20).
- [132] Puchwein, Ewald, Baldi, Marco, and Springel, Volker. "Modified-Gravity-gadget: a new code for cosmological hydrodynamical simulations of modified gravity models". en. In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 436.1 (Nov. 2013), pp. 348–360. ISSN: 0035-8711, 1365-2966. URL: <http://mnras.oxfordjournals.org/content/436/1/348> (cit. on p. 141).
- [133] Raccanelli, Alvise et al. "Measuring redshift-space distortions with future SKA surveys". In: (2015) (cit. on p. 41).
- [134] Raveri, Marco et al. "CosmicFish Implementation Notes V1.0". In: *arXiv:1606.06268 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc]* (June 2016). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1606.06268> (cit. on p. 43).

- [135] Saltas, Ippocratis D. et al. "Anisotropic Stress as a Signature of Nonstandard Propagation of Gravitational Waves". In: *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 113.19 (2014), p. 191101. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevLett.113.191101](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.113.191101) (cit. on p. 19).
- [136] Santos, Mario G. et al. "HI galaxy simulations for the SKA: number counts and bias". In: *arXiv:1501.03990 [astro-ph]* (Jan. 2015). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1501.03990> (cit. on pp. 41, 42).
- [137] Saracco, F. et al. "Non-linear Matter Spectra in Coupled Quintessence". In: *Physical Review D* 82.2 (July 2010). ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.82.023528](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.82.023528). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/0911.5396> (cit. on pp. 58, 96).
- [138] Saracco, F. et al. "Non-linear Matter Spectra in Coupled Quintessence". In: *Phys. Rev. D* 82 (2010), p. 023528. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.82.023528](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.82.023528) (cit. on pp. 23, 96).
- [139] Sawicki, Ignacy et al. "Non-standard gravitational waves imply gravitational slip: on the difficulty of partially hiding new gravitational degrees of freedom". In: (2016) (cit. on p. 19).
- [140] Schneider, Aurel et al. "Matter power spectrum and the challenge of percent accuracy". In: *Journal of Cosmology and Astro-Particle Physics* 04 (Apr. 2016), p. 047. ISSN: 1475-7516. URL: <http://adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/2016JCAP...04..047S> (cit. on p. 142).
- [141] Scoccimarro, Román. "Redshift-space distortions, pairwise velocities, and nonlinearities". In: *Phys. Rev. D* 70.8 (Oct. 2004), p. 083007. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.70.083007](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.70.083007). URL: <http://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevD.70.083007> (cit. on p. 106).
- [142] Seehars, Sebastian et al. "Information Gains from Cosmic Microwave Background Experiments". In: *Physical Review D* 90.2 (July 2014). ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.90.023533](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.90.023533). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1402.3593> (cit. on p. 43).
- [143] Sellentin, Elena, Quartin, Miguel, and Amendola, Luca. "Breaking the spell of Gaussianity: forecasting with higher order Fisher matrices". In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 441.2 (May 2014), pp. 1831–1840. ISSN: 0035-8711, 1365-2966. DOI: [10.1093/mnras/stu689](https://doi.org/10.1093/mnras/stu689). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1401.6892> (cit. on pp. 36, 52).
- [144] Seo, Hee-Jong and Eisenstein, Daniel J. "Baryonic acoustic oscillations in simulated galaxy redshift surveys". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 633.2 (Nov. 2005), pp. 575–588. ISSN: 0004-637X, 1538-4357. DOI: [10.1086/491599](https://doi.org/10.1086/491599). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0507338> (cit. on p. 36).
- [145] Seo, Hee-Jong and Eisenstein, Daniel J. "Improved forecasts for the baryon acoustic oscillations and cosmological distance scale". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 665.1 (Aug. 2007), pp. 14–24. ISSN: 0004-637X, 1538-4357. DOI: [10.1086/519549](https://doi.org/10.1086/519549). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0701079> (cit. on pp. 37, 49).
- [146] Seo, Hee-Jong and Eisenstein, Daniel J. "Improved forecasts for the baryon acoustic oscillations and cosmological distance scale". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 665.1 (Aug. 2007). arXiv: astro-ph/0701079, pp. 14–24. ISSN: 0004-637X, 1538-4357. DOI: [10.1086/519549](https://doi.org/10.1086/519549). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0701079> (cit. on p. 106).

- [147] Seo, Hee-Jong et al. "Nonlinear structure formation and the acoustic scale". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 686.1 (2008), p. 13. URL: <http://iopscience.iop.org/0004-637X/686/1/13> (cit. on p. 106).
- [148] Simpson, Fergus et al. "Dark energy from the motions of neutrinos". In: *arXiv:1607.02515 [astro-ph, physics:gr-qc, physics:hep-ph, physics:hep-th]* (July 2016). arXiv: 1607.02515. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1607.02515> (cit. on p. 24).
- [149] Smith, R. E. et al. "Stable clustering, the halo model and non-linear cosmological power spectra". en. In: *MNRAS* 341.4 (June 2003), pp. 1311–1332. ISSN: 0035-8711, 1365-2966. DOI: [10.1046/j.1365-8711.2003.06503.x](https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365-8711.2003.06503.x). URL: <http://mnras.oxfordjournals.org/content/341/4/1311> (cit. on pp. 55, 58, 95).
- [150] Spitzer, Christopher. "Stability in MaVaN Models". In: *arXiv:astro-ph/0606034* (June 2006). arXiv: astro-ph/0606034. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0606034> (cit. on p. 24).
- [151] Springel, Volker. "The cosmological simulation code GADGET-2". In: *Mon. Not. Roy. Astron. Soc.* 364 (2005), pp. 1105–1134 (cit. on pp. 58, 97, 137).
- [152] Sutter, P. M. et al. "On the observability of coupled dark energy with cosmic voids". In: *arXiv:1406.0511 [astro-ph]* (June 2014). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1406.0511> (cit. on p. 96).
- [153] Takahashi, Ryo and Tanimoto, Morimitsu. "Speed of Sound in the Mass Varying Neutrinos Scenario". In: *Journal of High Energy Physics* 2006.05 (May 2006). arXiv: astro-ph/0601119, pp. 021–021. ISSN: 1029-8479. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0601119> (cit. on p. 24).
- [154] Takahashi, Ryuichi et al. "Non-Gaussian Error Contribution to Likelihood Analysis of the Matter Power Spectrum". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 726.1 (Jan. 2011), p. 7. ISSN: 0004-637X, 1538-4357. DOI: [10.1088/0004-637X/726/1/7](https://doi.org/10.1088/0004-637X/726/1/7). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/0912.1381> (cit. on p. 101).
- [155] Takahashi, Ryuichi et al. "Revising the Halofit Model for the Nonlinear Matter Power Spectrum". In: *arXiv:1208.2701* (Aug. 2012). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1208.2701> (cit. on pp. 55, 58, 95, 102, 107, 112).
- [156] Taruya, Atsushi and Hiramatsu, Takashi. "A Closure Theory for Non-linear Evolution of Cosmological Power Spectra". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 674.2 (Feb. 2008), pp. 617–635. ISSN: 0004-637X, 1538-4357. DOI: [10.1086/526515](https://doi.org/10.1086/526515). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/0708.1367> (cit. on p. 58).
- [157] Taruya, Atsushi, Nishimichi, Takahiro, and Saito, Shun. "Baryon acoustic oscillations in 2D: Modeling redshift-space power spectrum from perturbation theory". In: *Phys. Rev. D* 82.6 (Sept. 2010), p. 063522. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.82.063522](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.82.063522). URL: <http://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevD.82.063522> (cit. on p. 106).
- [158] Taruya, Atsushi et al. "Regularized cosmological power spectrum and correlation function in modified gravity models". In: *Physical Review D* 90.12 (Dec. 2014). ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.90.123515](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.90.123515). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1408.4232> (cit. on p. 58).

- [159] Taylor, A. N. et al. "Probing dark energy with the shear-ratio geometric test". en. In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 374.4 (Feb. 2007), pp. 1377–1403. ISSN: 0035-8711, 1365-2966. DOI: [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2006.11257.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2006.11257.x). URL: <http://mnras.oxfordjournals.org/content/374/4/1377> (cit. on p. 44).
- [160] Tegmark, Max et al. "Measuring the galaxy power spectrum with future redshift surveys". In: *The Astrophysical Journal* 499.2 (June 1998), pp. 555–576. ISSN: 0004-637X, 1538-4357. DOI: [10.1086/305663](https://doi.org/10.1086/305663). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/9708020> (cit. on pp. 36, 40).
- [161] Torre, Sylvain de la and Guzzo, Luigi. "Modelling non-linear redshift-space distortions in the galaxy clustering pattern: systematic errors on the growth rate parameter". In: *arXiv:1202.5559 [astro-ph]* (Feb. 2012). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1202.5559> (cit. on pp. 38, 106).
- [162] Verde, Licia, Protopapas, Pavlos, and Jimenez, Raul. "Planck and the local Universe: Quantifying the tension". In: *Physics of the Dark Universe* 2.3 (Sept. 2013), pp. 166–175. ISSN: 2212-6864. DOI: [10.1016/j.dark.2013.09.002](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dark.2013.09.002). URL: <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S2212686413000319> (cit. on p. 43).
- [163] Vollmer, Adrian, Amendola, Luca, and Catena, Riccardo. "Efficient implementation of the Time Renormalization Group". In: *arXiv:1412.1650 [astro-ph, physics:physics]* (Dec. 2014). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1412.1650> (cit. on p. 58).
- [164] Wang, Yun, Chuang, Chia-Hsun, and Hirata, Christopher M. "Toward More Realistic Forecasting of Dark Energy Constraints from Galaxy Redshift Surveys". In: *arXiv:1211.0532 [astro-ph]* (Nov. 2012). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1211.0532> (cit. on p. 106).
- [165] Weisstein, Eric W. *Correlation Coefficient*. en. URL: <http://mathworld.wolfram.com/CorrelationCoefficient.html> (cit. on p. 100).
- [166] Weisstein, Eric W. *Least Squares Fitting*. en. URL: <http://mathworld.wolfram.com/LeastSquaresFitting.html> (cit. on p. 100).
- [167] Wetterich, C. "Cosmology and the Fate of Dilatation Symmetry". In: *Nucl. Phys.* B302 (1988), p. 668. DOI: [10.1016/0550-3213\(88\)90193-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/0550-3213(88)90193-9) (cit. on p. 23).
- [168] Wetterich, C. "Growing neutrinos and cosmological selection". In: *Physics Letters B* 655.5-6 (Nov. 2007). arXiv: 0706.4427, pp. 201–208. ISSN: 03702693. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/0706.4427> (cit. on pp. 24, 25, 164).
- [169] Wetterich, Christof. "The Cosmon model for an asymptotically vanishing time dependent cosmological 'constant'". In: *Astron. Astrophys.* 301 (1995), pp. 321–328 (cit. on p. 96).
- [170] Will, Clifford M. "The Confrontation between general relativity and experiment". In: *Living Rev.Rel.* 9 (2005), p. 3 (cit. on p. 22).
- [171] Wintergerst, Nico and Pettorino, Valeria. "Clarifying spherical collapse in coupled dark energy cosmologies". In: *Phys. Rev.* D82 (2010), p. 103516. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.82.103516](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.82.103516) (cit. on pp. 24, 96).

- [172] Wintergerst, Nico et al. "Very large scale structures in growing neutrino quintessence". In: *Physical Review D* 81.6 (Mar. 2010). arXiv: 0910.4985. ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/0910.4985> (cit. on pp. 24, 139).
- [173] Xia, Jun-Qing. "Constraint on coupled dark energy models from observations". In: *Phys. Rev.* D80 (2009), p. 103514. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.80.103514](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.80.103514) (cit. on p. 96).
- [174] Yahya, S. et al. "Cosmological performance of SKA HI galaxy surveys". In: *Monthly Notices of the Royal Astronomical Society* 450.3 (May 2015), pp. 2251–2260. ISSN: 0035-8711, 1365-2966. DOI: [10.1093/mnras/stv695](https://doi.org/10.1093/mnras/stv695). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1412.4700> (cit. on p. 41).
- [175] Zhao, Gong-Bo. "Modeling the nonlinear clustering in modified gravity models I: A fitting formula for matter power spectrum of f(R) gravity". In: *The Astrophysical Journal Supplement Series* 211.2 (Apr. 2014), p. 23. ISSN: 0067-0049, 1538-4365. DOI: [10.1088/0067-0049/211/2/23](https://doi.org/10.1088/0067-0049/211/2/23). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1312.1291> (cit. on pp. 58, 60, 89).
- [176] Zhao, Gong-Bo, Li, Baojiu, and Koyama, Kazuya. "N-body Simulations for f(R) Gravity using a Self-adaptive Particle-Mesh Code". In: *Physical Review D* 83.4 (Feb. 2011). ISSN: 1550-7998, 1550-2368. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.83.044007](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.83.044007). URL: <http://arxiv.org/abs/1011.1257> (cit. on pp. 60, 61, 89).
- [177] Zhao, Gong-Bo et al. "Searching for modified growth patterns with tomographic surveys". In: *Phys. Rev.* D79 (2009), p. 083513. DOI: [10.1103/PhysRevD.79.083513](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.79.083513) (cit. on p. 57).
- [178] Zhao, Gong-Bo et al. "The clustering of galaxies in the completed SDSS-III Baryon Oscillation Spectroscopic Survey: Examining the observational evidence for dynamical dark energy". In: (2017) (cit. on p. 43).